

## **Department for Transport**



*NPTG - Nation Public Transport Gazetteer  
&  
NaPTAN - National Public Transport Access Node  
database*

<http://www.dft.gov.uk/naptan>

***NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide.***

*NaPTAN & NPTG v2.5*

**Version History**

Schema	Version	Date		Audience
2.0a	0.1 Preliminary Draft	03 04 2004	RM	Internal
2.0c	0.24 Revise Bay	30 08 2004	NJSK	Review
2.0	0.31 Corrections to csv & modification attributes	10 03 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.0	0.33 Errata NPTG Disco, clarify common name guidance	16 05 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.0	0.35 Tram as MET, Character set use, errata	01 07 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.0	0.36 Clarify use of NPTG Locality & Stop Areas, versions	04 08 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.1	0.37 Make street & Landmark optional. Cover 2.1	05 09 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.1	0.38 Support AnnotatedCoachRef on -street stops	08 09 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.1	0.39 Update UML Diagrams	18 09 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.1	0.40 Clarify Use of Ampersand	10 10 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.1	0.41 Update Trunk Localities, Met process	10 10 2005	NJSK	Issued
2.1	0.42 Correct Errata in tables	26 01 2006	NJSK	Issued
2.1	0.43 Add notes on change detection. Add ITSO use of NaPTAN, corrections. Correct Stop area rename	15.11.2006, 10.07.2007	NJSK	Issued
2.2	Add archived status	29.08.2007	NJSK	Review
2.4a	0.48 Revise diagrams and other 2.4 changes	10.02.2010	NJSK	Review
2.4a	0.48-2 Revise XML diagrams and other TXC 2.4 changes	19.03.2010	NJSK	Review
2.4a	0.48-3 Textual review and some other changes	22.03.2010	RS	Review
2.4a	0.48-4 Corrections and add Northern Ireland	25.03.2010	NJSK	NJSK
2.4a	0.49 Corrections	25.04.2010	NJSK	Consult
2.4b	0.50 Corrections	15.06.2010	NJSK	Consult
2.4b	0.52 Update private stop description to use flag (drop BCP)	16.09.2010	NJSK	Issued
2.4b	0.53 Add extra stop types for Cable car etc	19.10.2010	NJSK	Issued
2.4b	0.54 Clarify bearing, Fix typos	30.11.2010	NJSK	Review
2.4	0.56 Update Diagrams, Issue as 2.4	30.12.2010	NJSK	Issued
2.4	0.57 Clarify guidance on stations refs	04.01.2012	NJSK	Issued
2.5a	0.58 Support for Eire and Stop Accessibility	14.03.2013	NJSK	Consult
2.5a	0.63 Support for Eire and Stop Accessibility -revised	22.04.2013	NJSK	Consult
2.5b	0.64 Add public holiday to day time, add POI Venue. Corrections, revise UML diagrams.	22.04.2013	NJSK	Consult
2.5b	0.65 Correct spelling of Principal timing point in diagrams	05.09.2013	NJSK	Consult
2.5	0.66 Minor corrections to diagrams.	05.09.2013	NJSK	Review
2.5	0.67 Minor corrections	08.01.2014	NJSK	Issued

**Prepared By:**

Nicholas Knowles

Email: [schemer@naptan.org.uk](mailto:schemer@naptan.org.uk)

**Prepared For:**



Transport Direct, Department for Transport

2/17 Great Minster House,  
33 Horseferry Road,  
London, SW1P 4DR

© Crown Copyright 2000-2014

The content in this document may be reproduced free of charge in any format or media without requiring specific permission, subject to the [NaPTAN Terms & Conditions of use](#), viewable at <http://www.naptan.org.uk>. This is subject to the material not being used in a derogatory manner or in a misleading context. The source of the material must be acknowledged as Crown Copyright and the title of the content must be included when being reproduced as part of another publication or service.

## CONTENTS

Section	Page
---------	------

<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>14</b>
1.1 NPTG Components	14
1.2 NaPTAN Components	14
1.3 NPTG and NaPTAN Users	14
1.4 Motivation	15
1.5 Antecedents	15
1.6 Document Structure	16
1.7 Intellectual Property Rights	17
1.7.1 <i>NPTG and NaPTAN Schema</i>	17
1.7.2 <i>NPTG Database</i>	17
1.7.3 <i>NaPTAN Database</i>	17
1.8 Versioning	17
1.9 Changes in Releases	17
1.9.1 Standardisation 2.0	17
1.9.2 Functional Enhancements 2.0	18
1.9.3 Name Changes in Release 2.0	18
1.9.4 Changes in Release 2.1	18
1.9.5 Changes in Release 2.2	19
1.9.6 Changes in Release 2.3	19
1.9.7 Changes in Release 2.4	19
1.9.8 Changes in Release 2.5	19
1.10 Content Not Covered by NaPTAN	19
1.11 Naming Conventions	20
1.12 Presentation Conventions	20
1.12.1 XML Elements in Text	20
1.12.2 UML Diagrams	20
1.12.3 XML Structure Diagrams	20
1.13 Related Transport Information Standards	22
1.14 Acknowledgments	23
<b>2 INTRODUCTION TO NAPTAN AND THE NPTG</b>	<b>25</b>
2.1 The Purpose of the National Public Transport Gazetteer	25
2.1.1 The NPTG Database	25
2.1.2 The NPTG XML Schemas	25
2.1.3 The NPTG CSV Exchange Format	25
2.2 The Purpose of NaPTAN	25
2.2.1 NaPTAN Identifiers	25
2.2.2 The NaPTAN Database	26
2.2.3 The NaPTAN XML Schema	26
2.2.4 The NaPTAN CSV Exchange Format	26
2.2.5 NaPTAN Process	26
2.3 How are NPTG and NaPTAN used?	27
2.3.1 Scenario #1: Compilation and Distribution of <i>NPTG</i> Data	27
2.3.2 Scenario #2: Gathering and Distribution of <i>NaPTAN</i> Stop Data	27
2.3.3 Scenario #3: Exchange of <i>NaPTAN</i> Data within <i>TransXChange</i>	28
2.3.4 Scenario #4: Using NPTG and NaPTAN Data in a Place Finder	28
2.3.5 Scenario #5: Using NPTG and NaPTAN Data in a Stop Finder	29
2.3.6 Scenario #6: Using NaPTAN Data for real-time departures	29
2.4 Document Validation	29

### **3 SHORT TOUR OF THE NPTG AND NAPTAN REFERENCE MODELS**

<b>3.1</b>	<b>The National Gazetteer Model</b>	<b>31</b>
3.1.1	Topographical Elements	31
3.1.2	Administrative Elements	34
3.1.3	NPTG Element Hierarchies	37
<b>3.2</b>	<b>Populating the National Gazetteer</b>	<b>42</b>
3.2.1	Choosing Administrative Areas	42
3.2.2	Choosing NPTG Districts	42
3.2.3	Choosing & Grouping NPTG Localities	42
3.2.4	Naming NPTG Localities	43
3.2.5	Geocoding NPTG Localities - Locations	46
<b>3.3</b>	<b>The NaPTAN Model</b>	<b>47</b>
3.3.1	Overview of NaPTAN Model	47
3.3.2	NaPTAN Stop Point & Stop Area Types	51
3.3.3	NaPTAN Stop Accessibility	56
3.3.4	NaPTAN Networks and Tariff Zones	57
3.3.1	NaPTAN Points Of Interest	58
3.3.2	NaPTAN Point Of Interest details	58
<b>3.4</b>	<b>NaPTAN Element Hierarchies</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>3.5</b>	<b>Populating the NaPTAN Database</b>	<b>63</b>
3.5.1	Choosing NaPTAN Points	63
3.5.2	Allocating an AtcoCode for a NaPTAN Stop Point	65
3.5.3	Allocating NaPTAN (SMS) Codes for NaPTAN Stop Points	65
3.5.4	Choosing NaPTAN Stop Areas	66
3.5.5	The Naming of Stop Points and Stop Areas	67
3.5.6	Bus Stop Naming Styles	69
3.5.7	Naming Of Particular Types of Stop	72
3.5.8	Naming of Stop Areas	72
3.5.9	The Classifying of Bus Stops and Other PTANs	73
3.5.10	Associating Stop Points and Stop Areas with NPTG Localities	73
3.5.11	Geocoding of Stop Points - Location	73
3.5.12	Populating Accessibility data	76
<b>3.6</b>	<b>NPTG Discovery Model</b>	<b>79</b>
3.6.1	Overview of NPTG Discovery Model	79
3.6.2	Informational Service Elements	79
3.6.3	Service Discovery	82
<b>3.7</b>	<b>Summary of NPTG and NaPTAN Entities and Identifiers</b>	<b>84</b>
3.7.1	Private codes	84

### **4 SCHEMAS**

<b>5</b>	<b>NPTG SCHEMA, STRUCTURE AND ELEMENTS</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>NationalPublicTransportGazetteer Root Element</b>	<b>86</b>
5.1.1	NationalPublicTransportGazetteer Element Attributes	86
5.1.2	NationalPublicTransportGazetteer Child Elements	86
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Region Element</b>	<b>88</b>
<b>5.3</b>	<b>AdministrativeArea Element</b>	<b>88</b>
<b>5.4</b>	<b>NPTG Locality Element</b>	<b>91</b>
5.4.1	Identification	91
5.4.2	Associations	91
5.4.3	Other classifications	91

Preamble

Contents

<b>5.5</b>	<b>NPTG Locality / Descriptor Element</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>5.6</b>	<b>NPTG District Element</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>5.7</b>	<b>PlusbusZone Element</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>NAPTAN SCHEMA, STRUCTURE AND ELEMENTS</b>	<b>95</b>
<b>6.1</b>	<b>NaPTAN Root Element</b>	<b>95</b>
6.1.1	NaPTAN Element Attributes	95
6.1.2	NaPTAN Child Elements	96
<b>6.2</b>	<b>StopPoint Element</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>6.3</b>	<b>Identifying the Stop – StopIdentifierGroup</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>6.4</b>	<b>Descriptors of a Stop – SiteDescriptionGroup</b>	<b>99</b>
6.4.1	Descriptor Element	99
6.4.2	Additional Descriptors	100
6.4.3	Place Element	100
<b>6.5</b>	<b>Associations of a Stop – StopReferencesGroup</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>6.6</b>	<b>Other Information – StopFurtherDetailsGroup</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>6.7</b>	<b>StopClassification Element</b>	<b>103</b>
	<b>StopClassification / On-Street Elements</b>	<b>104</b>
6.7.1	StopPoint / StopClassification / On-Street Bus Element	104
6.7.2	On-Street Taxi Element	107
6.7.3	On-Street Car Element (+NaPT v2.4)	107
<b>6.8</b>	<b>StopClassification / Off-Street Elements</b>	<b>107</b>
6.8.1	Off-Street Air Element	107
6.8.2	Off-Street Ferry Element	108
6.8.3	Off-Street Rail Element	109
6.8.4	Off-Street Metro Element	110
6.8.5	Off-Street BusAndCoach Element	111
6.8.6	Off-Street Telecabine (Lift & Cable Car) Element (+NaPT v2.4)	112
<b>6.9</b>	<b>StopAvailability Element</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>6.10</b>	<b>StopAccessibility Element (V2.5)</b>	<b>114</b>
6.10.1	SiteAccessibility Group (V2.5)	115
6.10.1	StopAccessibility Group (V2.5)	116
6.10.2	AccessVehicle Element	117
6.10.3	DayType Element	118
6.10.4	BankHolidays Element	119
<b>6.11</b>	<b>StopArea Element</b>	<b>120</b>
<b>6.12</b>	<b>Network Element (+NaPT v2.5)</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>6.13</b>	<b>TariffZone Element (+NaPT v2.5)</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>6.14</b>	<b>PointOfInterest Element (+NaPT v2.5)</b>	<b>124</b>
<b>6.15</b>	<b>PointOfInterestClassification / Off-Street Elements</b>	<b>125</b>
6.15.1	PointOfInterestClassification Element (+NaPT V2.5)	125
<b>7</b>	<b>NPTG DISCOVERY SCHEMA, STRUCTURE AND ELEMENTS</b>	<b>126</b>
<b>7.1</b>	<b>NptgDiscovery Root Element</b>	<b>126</b>
7.1.1	NptgDiscovery Element Attributes	126
7.1.2	NptgDiscovery Child Elements	127
<b>7.2</b>	<b>WebApplication Element</b>	<b>128</b>
7.2.1	UsedBy Element	129
<b>7.3</b>	<b>TrustedServer Element</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>7.4</b>	<b>AdjacentRegionPoint Element</b>	<b>131</b>
<b>7.5</b>	<b>CallCentre Element</b>	<b>131</b>
7.5.1	Availability Element	132

Preamble	Contents
7.5.2 Day Types Element	133
7.5.3 Holiday Types Element	134
7.5.4 OpeningHours Element	135
7.5.5 TelephoneContactStructure Element	136
<b>7.6 TrunkLocality Element</b>	<b>136</b>
<b>8 COMMON SCHEMA ELEMENTS</b>	<b>137</b>
<b>8.1 Duration Simple Type</b>	<b>137</b>
<b>8.2 Location Element</b>	<b>137</b>
8.2.1 Translation Element	138
<b>8.3 Bearing Element</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>9 NAPTAN EXAMPLES</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>9.1 Example 1: Poles Both Sides of the Road with One Landmark</b>	<b>141</b>
9.1.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definition: Example 1	142
9.1.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 1	142
9.1.3 Names in Context	142
<b>9.2 Example 2: Poles Both Sides with Different Common Names and Landmarks</b>	<b>143</b>
9.2.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 2	144
9.2.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 2	144
9.2.3 Names in Context	145
<b>9.3 Example 3: Pole One Side Only with Landmark</b>	<b>146</b>
9.3.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 3	147
9.3.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 3	147
9.3.3 Names in Context	148
<b>9.4 Example 4: Unmarked Bus Stop on One Side of a Road with No Landmark</b>	<b>149</b>
9.4.1 NaPTAN StopPoint Definition: Example 4	150
9.4.2 Names in Context	150
<b>9.5 Example 5: Bus Interchange</b>	<b>151</b>
9.5.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definition: Example 5	152
9.5.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 5	152
9.5.3 Names in Context	152
<b>9.6 Example 6: Hail &amp; Ride Stop Sections</b>	<b>153</b>
9.6.1 NaPTAN StopPoint Definition: Example 6	154
9.6.2 Names in Context	154
<b>9.7 Example 7: Flexible Service Stop Zones</b>	<b>155</b>
9.7.1 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 7	156
9.7.2 Names in Context	156
<b>9.8 Example 8: Railway Station with Bus and Taxi</b>	<b>158</b>
9.8.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 8	160
9.8.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 8	160
9.8.3 Names in Context	161
<b>9.9 Example 9: Metro Station with Bus &amp; Light Rail</b>	<b>164</b>
9.9.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 9	167
9.9.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 9	167
9.9.3 Names in Context	168
<b>9.10 Example 10: Bus Station with Bays</b>	<b>169</b>
9.10.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 10	171
9.10.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 10	171
9.10.3 Names in Context	172
<b>9.11 Example 11: Major Airport</b>	<b>173</b>

<b>10 NAMING &amp; CODING CONVENTIONS</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>10.1 Naming of Elements</b>	<b>176</b>
10.1.1 Use of Camel Case	176
10.1.2 Use of Standard Name Suffixes	176
10.1.3 Meaningful Names	176
10.1.4 Standardised Terminology	177
10.1.5 Semantically Significant Order	177
<b>10.2 Typing of Elements</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>10.3 Element Constraints</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>10.4 Use of Attributes</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>10.5 Implementation of Model Relationships</b>	<b>178</b>
<b>10.6 Data Rights attribute</b>	<b>178</b>
<b>11 VERSIONING</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>11.1 Version Numbering Convention</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>11.2 Resource Versions</b>	<b>179</b>
11.2.1 Schema URI version	179
11.2.2 Namespace URI version	179
11.2.3 Schema Version	179
11.2.4 Package Versions	180
11.2.5 Data Element Version	180
11.2.6 Use of the Status Attribute	182
11.2.7 Detecting Changes on Different systems - The NaPTAN Distributed Data process	185
11.2.8 Summary of Use of Data Version Attributes	187
11.2.9 Referential Integrity of references	187
<b>11.3 Packages</b>	<b>189</b>
11.3.1 NPTG Package & Model Dependencies	189
11.3.2 NPTG Discovery Package & Model Dependencies	190
11.3.3 NaPTAN Package & Model Dependencies	191
<b>12 RELATION TO OTHER STANDARDS</b>	<b>194</b>
<b>12.1 Transmodel Compliance</b>	<b>194</b>
12.1.1 Transmodel Terminology	194
<b>12.2 ITSO Interoperability</b>	<b>194</b>
<b>13 NATIONAL LANGUAGE SUPPORT</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>13.1 Text Content Types</b>	<b>195</b>
13.1.1 Use of Structured Text	195
13.1.2 Use of Free Text	195
13.1.3 Use of Aliased Free Text	195
<b>14 INTEGRITY RULES</b>	<b>197</b>
<b>14.1 NPTG Integrity Rules</b>	<b>197</b>
14.1.1 Syntactic Integrity Rules	197
14.1.2 Semantic Integrity Rules	198
<b>14.2 NPTG Discovery Integrity Rules</b>	<b>198</b>
14.2.1 Syntactic Integrity Rules	198
14.2.2 Semantic Integrity Rules	198
<b>14.3 NaPTAN Integrity Rules</b>	<b>199</b>

Preamble

Contents

14.3.1 Syntactic Integrity Rules	199
14.3.2 Semantic Integrity Rules	200
<b>15 APPENDICES</b>	
<b>203</b>	
<b>15.1 2.0 Changes Since 1.1</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>15.2 2.1 Changes Since 2.0</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>15.3 References</b>	<b>204</b>
15.3.2 JourneyWeb	204
<b>15.4 Standard Abbreviations for Topographical Features</b>	<b>207</b>
15.4.1 Terms for Relationship	207
15.4.2 Topographical Features	207
15.4.3 Common Acronyms	207
15.4.4 Common Adjectives	207
<b>15.5 NPTG CSV Exchange Formats</b>	<b>208</b>
15.5.1 NPTG CSV 1.2 CSV Format Overview [Deprecated]	209
15.5.2 NPTG CSV 2.1 CSV Format Overview	210
15.5.3 NPTG Discovery CSV 2.1 CSV Format Overview	211
<b>15.6 NPTG: CSV Files</b>	<b>211</b>
15.6.1 NPTG: Regions CSV table	212
15.6.2 NPTG: AdminAreas CSV table	212
15.6.3 NPTG: District CSV table	212
15.6.4 NPTG: Locality CSV table*	213
15.6.5 NPTG: LocalityAlternativeNames CSV table*	213
15.6.6 NPTG: LocalityHierarchy CSV table*	214
15.6.7 NPTG: AdjacentLocalities CSV table+	214
15.6.8 NPTG Plusbuszones CSV table+	214
15.6.9 NPTG PlusbuszonesMapping CSV table+	214
<b>15.7 NPTG Discovery: CSV Files</b>	<b>214</b>
15.7.1 NPTG Discovery: AdjacentRegionPoints CSV table+	214
15.7.2 NPTG Discovery: CallCentres CSV table+	215
15.7.3 NPTG Discovery: CallCentresAreas CSV table+	215
15.7.4 NPTG Discovery: TrustedServer CSV table +	215
15.7.5 NPTG Discovery: WebApplications CSV table +	216
15.7.6 NPTG Discovery: WebAppCapabilities CSV table +	216
15.7.7 NPTG Discovery: RegionApplications CSV table +	216
15.7.8 NPTG Discovery: AdminAreaApplications CSV table +	216
15.7.9 NPTG Discovery: LocalityApplications CSV table +	216
15.7.10 NPTG Discovery: StopPointApplications CSV table +	217
<b>15.8 NAPTAN CSV Format</b>	<b>217</b>
15.8.1 NaPTAN 1.1 CSV Exchange Format Overview	218
15.8.2 NaPTAN 2.1 CSV Exchange Format Overview	219
<b>15.9 NaPTAN: CSV Files</b>	<b>220</b>
15.9.1 NaPTAN: StopPoint CSV table	220
15.9.2 NaPTAN: Hail & Ride CSV Table	221
15.9.3 NaPTAN: Flexible CSV Table	221
15.9.4 NaPTAN: AlternativeDescriptor Table	221
15.9.5 NaPTAN: StopLocalities Table	222
15.9.6 NaPTAN: StopAvailabilities Table	222
15.9.7 NaPTAN: StopsInStopArea Table	222
15.9.8 NaPTAN: AirReferences Table	223
15.9.9 NaPTAN: RailReferences Table	223
15.9.10 NaPTAN: FerryReferences Table	223
15.9.11 NaPTAN: MetroReferences Table	223

Preamble

Contents

15.9.12 NaPTAN: CoachReferences Table	224
15.9.13 NaPTAN: LocalityMainAccessPoints Table	224
15.9.14 NaPTAN: StopPlusBusZones Table	224
15.9.15 NaPTAN: StopAreas (Groups Table)	224
15.9.16 NaPTAN: StopAreaHierarchy Table	225
<b>15.10 Common CSV Types</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>15.11 ATCO &amp; AdministrativeArea Codes</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>15.12 Index</b>	<b>229</b>

## List of Figures

Figure 1-1 – Name changes in NaPTAN 2.0 .....	18
Figure 1-2 – XML Spy Diagram: Sequence .....	21
Figure 1-3 – XML Spy Diagram: Choice .....	21
Figure 1-4 – XML Spy Diagram: Multiplicity .....	22
Figure 3-1 – UML Diagram of NPTG Model: Introduction.....	31
Figure 3-2 – UML Diagram of NPTG Locality Model .....	33
Figure 3-3 – UML Diagram of NPTG Administrative Model: Overview.....	34
Figure 3-4 – UML Diagram of Main NPTG Model: Further elements .....	35
Figure 3-5 – UML Diagram of Main NPTG Model: Detail .....	36
Figure 3-6 – UML Diagram of NPTG Locality Element Hierarchy .....	37
Figure 3-7 – UML Diagram of Administrative Element Hierarchy .....	37
Figure 3-8 – UML Diagram of Locality Data types .....	38
Figure 3-9 – UML Diagram of Administrative Data types .....	39
Figure 3-10 – UML Diagram of Location Data Types .....	40
Figure 3-11 – UML Diagram of NaPT Utility Data Types .....	40
Figure 3-12 – UML Diagram of APD Address Data Types .....	41
Figure 3-13 – Example: Locality Hierarchy .....	43
Figure 3-14 – UML Diagram of primary NaPTAN elements .....	47
Figure 3-15 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Model: Overview .....	49
Figure 3-16 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Model: Detail .....	50
Figure 3-17 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Stop Types .....	52
Figure 3-18 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Off-Street Stop Point Types .....	54
Figure 3-19 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN On-Street Stop Point Types .....	55
Figure 3-20 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN StopAccessibility .....	56
Figure 3-21 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN TariffZones - Overview.....	57
Figure 3-22 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN TariffZones – Details.....	57
Figure 3-23 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN PointOfInterest - Overview.....	58
Figure 3-24 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN PointOfInterest - Details.....	59
Figure 3-25 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Stop Hierarchy .....	60
Figure 3-26 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN TariffZone Hierarchy .....	60
Figure 3-27 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN PointOfInterest Hierarchy.....	61
Figure 3-28 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Datatypes .....	62
Figure 3-29 – Example of Stop Names in a List .....	75
Figure 3-30 – Example of Ambiguous Place Names .....	75
Figure 3-31 – UML Diagram of Discovery Model: Overview.....	80
Figure 3-32 – UML Diagram of Discovery Model: Detail .....	81
Figure 3-33 – UML Diagram of Coverage Model.....	82
Figure 3-34 – UML Diagram of NPTG Discovery Hierarchy .....	83
Figure 5-1 – NPTG Schema Overview .....	87
Figure 5-3 – Region Element .....	88
Figure 5-4 – AdministrativeArea Element .....	90
Figure 5-5 – NptgLocality Element.....	92
Figure 5-6 – Locality / Descriptor Element.....	93

Preamble

Contents

Figure 5-7 – NptgDistrict Element .....	93
Figure 5-8 – PlusbusZone Element .....	94
Figure 6-1 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Schema .....	95
Figure 6-2 – NaPTAN Root Element .....	96
Figure 6-3 – StopPoint Element .....	97
Figure 6-4 – StopIdentifierGroup Group .....	98
Figure 6-5 – SiteDescriptionGroup Group .....	99
Figure 6-6 – Descriptor Element .....	100
Figure 6-7 – Place Element .....	101
Figure 6-8 – StopReferencesGroup Group .....	102
Figure 6-9 – StopFurtherDetailsGroup Group .....	102
Figure 6-10 – StopClassification Element .....	104
Figure 6-11 – OnStreet / Bus Element .....	105
Figure 6-12 – OnStreet / Bus / MarkedPoint Element .....	106
Figure 6-13 – OnStreet / Bus / UnmarkedPoint Element .....	106
Figure 6-14 – OnStreet / Bus / HailAndRideSection Element .....	106
Figure 6-15 – OnStreet / Bus / FlexibleZone Element .....	107
Figure 6-16 – OnStreet / Taxi Element .....	107
Figure 6-17 – OnStreet / Taxi Element .....	107
Figure 6-18 – OffStreet / Air Element .....	108
Figure 6-19 – OffStreet / Ferry Element .....	109
Figure 6-20 – RailExchange Element .....	110
Figure 6-21 – OffStreet / Metro Element .....	111
Figure 6-22 – OffStreet / Coach Element .....	112
Figure 6-23 – OffStreet / Telecabine Element .....	113
Figure 6-24 – Stop Availability Element .....	114
Figure 6-25 – StopAccessibility Element .....	114
Figure 6-26 – SiteAccessibilityGroup Group .....	116
Figure 6-27 – StopAccessibilityGroup Group .....	117
Figure 6-28 – AccessVehicle Element .....	118
Figure 6-29 – DayType Element .....	119
Figure 6-30 – BankHolidays Element .....	120
Figure 6-31 – StopArea Element .....	122
Figure 6-32 – Network Element .....	123
Figure 6-33 – TariffZone Element .....	123
Figure 6-34 – PointOfInterest Element .....	124
Figure 6-35 – PointOfInterestClassification Element .....	125
Figure 7-1 – UML Diagram of the NPTG Discovery Schema .....	127
Figure 7-2 – NptgDiscovery Root Element .....	128
Figure 7-3 – WebApplication Element .....	129
Figure 7-4 – UsedBy Element .....	130
Figure 7-5 – TrustedServer Element .....	130
Figure 7-6 – AdjacentRegionPoint Element .....	131
Figure 7-7 – CallCentre Element .....	132
Figure 7-8 – CallCentre / Availability Element .....	133
Figure 7-9 – DayTypes Element .....	133
Figure 7-10 – HolidayTypes Element .....	135
Figure 7-11 – OpeningHours Element .....	136
Figure 7-12 – PrimaryTelephoneNumber Element .....	136
Figure 7-13 – TrunkLocality Element .....	137
Figure 8-1 – Location Element .....	138
Figure 8-2 – Translation Element .....	139
Figure 8-3 – Bearing Element .....	139
Figure 9-1 – Example 1: Poles Both Sides of the Road with One Landmark .....	141

Figure 9-2 – Example 1: Stop Hierarchy for Cosham Health Centre.....	141
Figure 9-3 – Example 2: Poles Both Sides with Different Common Names .....	143
Figure 9-4 – Example 2: Street Names in Central Cosham.....	144
Figure 9-5 – Example 2: Stop Hierarchy for Cosham Fire & Police Stations .....	144
Figure 9-6 – Example 3: Pole, One Side Only with Landmark .....	146
Figure 9-7 – Example 3: Blacko Village map .....	147
Figure 9-8 – Example 3: Stop Hierarchy for Blacko Rising Sun .....	147
Figure 9-9 – Example 4: Bus Stop on One Side of a Road with No Landmark .....	149
Figure 9-10 – Example 4: Stop Hierarchy for Tilmore Gardens.....	149
Figure 9-11 – Example 5: Bus Interchange .....	151
Figure 9-12 – Example 5: Stop Hierarchy for Brighton Old Steine .....	152
Figure 9-13 – Example 6: Hail & Ride.....	153
Figure 9-14 – Example 6: Stop Hierarchy for Newhaven Hail & Ride .....	153
Figure 9-15 – Example 7: Flexible Zones .....	155
Figure 9-16 – Example 5: Stop Hierarchy for Lincoln Flexible Service .....	156
Figure 9-17 – Example 8: Railway Station Interchange.....	158
Figure 9-18 – Example 9: Stop Hierarchy for Farnham Station.....	159
Figure 9-19 – Example 9: Bank Tube Lines.....	164
Figure 9-20 – Example 9: Bank Station Street Area.....	164
Figure 9-21 – Example 9: Stop Hierarchy for Bank Underground Station .....	166
Figure 9-22 – Example 9: Bank Underground Station – Stops in Area .....	166
Figure 9-23 – Example 10: Aylesbury Bus Station .....	169
Figure 9-24 – Example 10: Stop Hierarchy for Aylesbury Bus Station .....	170
Figure 9-25 – Example 11a: Partial Stop Hierarchy for Heathrow Airport Terminals 123 .....	174
Figure 9-26 – Example 11b: Partial Stop Hierarchy for Heathrow Terminal 4.....	175
Figure 11-1 – UML Model of Element Versions .....	181
Figure 11-2 – <i>Status</i> element: State Transitions.....	183
Figure 11-3 – <i>Modification</i> element State Transitions .....	183
Figure 11-4 – StopValidity State Transitions.....	184
Figure 11-5 – NPTG Packages .....	189
Figure 11-6 – NPTG Models .....	189
Figure 11-7 – NPTG Discovery Packages .....	190
Figure 11-8 – NPTG Discovery Models .....	191
Figure 11-9 – NaPTAN Packages .....	191
Figure 11-10 – NaPTAN Model Dependencies .....	192
Figure 15-1 – Diagram of National Gazetteer 1.2 CSV Tables.....	209
Figure 15-2 – Diagram of National Gazetteer 2.1 CSV Tables.....	210
Figure 15-3 – Diagram NPTG Discovery CSV 2.1 CSV Tables .....	211
Figure 15-4 – Diagram of NaPTAN 1.1 CSV Tables .....	218
Figure 15-5 – Diagram of NaPTAN 2.1 CSV Tables .....	219

## List of Tables

Table 3-1 – Example of Qualified Locality Names .....	43
Table 3-2 – Characters that are invalid in NPTG & NaPTAN Place and Common Names .....	44
Table 3-3 – Characters Not To Be Used in NPTG & NaPTAN Place and Common Names.....	44
Table 3-4 – English Locality Names without any Preposition that are Hyphenated .....	45
Table 3-5 – Hyphenation of Prepositions & Articles in NPTG Locality Names .....	45
Table 3-6 – Combining Stop Point & Stop Area Classifications .....	53
Table 3-7 – Rules for SMS codes .....	66
Table 3-8 – Precedence of StopArea Types .....	67
Table 3-9 – Examples of Preferred Stop Names .....	68
Table 3-10 – Example Preferred Form for Rail Station Names .....	69

Preamble

Contents

Table 3-11 – Example Name Elements .....	69
Table 3-12 – Ways of Deriving Names from Descriptors.....	69
Table 3-13 – Preferred Phrases to Use in Indicator .....	72
Table 3-14 – Stop Point Location Types.....	74
Table 3-15 – Populating on-street stops .....	77
Table 3-16 – Populating off-street stops .....	78
Table 3-17 – Main Entities of the NPTG & NaPTAN Models .....	84
Table 5-1 – Allowed Values for Country .....	88
Table 5-2 – Allowed Values for <i>SourceLocalityType</i> .....	91
Table 5-3 – Allowed Values for <i>LocalityClassification</i> .....	91
Table 5-4 – Allowed Values for Plusbus zones .....	93
Table 6-1 – Allowed Values for <i>StopType</i> .....	103
Table 6-2 – Allowed Values for <i>BusStopType</i> .....	104
Table 6-3 – Allowed Values for <i>TimingStatus</i> .....	105
Table 6-4 – Allowed Values for <i>LimitationStatus</i> .....	115
Table 6-5 – Accessibility defaults by mode .....	115
Table 6-6 – Allowed Values for <i>AssistanceServiceAvailability</i> .....	115
Table 6-7 – Allowed Values for <i>MobilityNeed</i> .....	117
Table 6-8 – Allowed Values for <i>AssistanceNeeded</i> .....	117
Table 6-9 – Allowed Values for <i>AssistedBoardingLocation</i> .....	118
Table 6-10 – Allowed Values for <i>StopArea Classification</i> .....	121
Table 7-1 – Allowed Values for <i>WebApplicationClassification</i> .....	128
Table 8-1 – Allowed Values for <i>StopPoint / Descriptor /Bearing</i> .....	139
Table 9-1 – Example 10: Stop Notes for Aylesbury Bus Station .....	170
Table 10-1 – NaPTAN Attributes .....	178
Table 11-1 – NPTG and NaPTAN Document Version Attributes.....	180
Table 11-2 – Entity Change Tracking & Status Attributes .....	182
Table 11-3 – Tracked Data Elements .....	185
Table 11-4 – Change Attribute Groups .....	185
Table 11-5 – Data Element Change Versioning Principles.....	187
Table 11-6 – NaPTAN 2.0 Module Names .....	193
Table 12-1 – Comparison of Key Transmodel Terms .....	194
Table 13-1 – Elements That May Contain Natural Language Free Text .....	196
Table 14-1 – Severity Codes for Semantic Integrity Rules .....	197
Table 14-2 – NPTG Syntactic Integrity Rules .....	198
Table 14-3 – NPTG Semantic Integrity Rules .....	198
Table 14-4 – NPTG Discovery Syntactic Integrity Rules .....	198
Table 14-5 – NPTG Discovery Semantic Integrity Rules .....	199
Table 14-6 – NaPTAN Syntactic Integrity Rules .....	200
Table 14-7 – NaPTAN Semantic Integrity Rules.....	201
Table 15-1 – NPTG CSV files .....	212
Table 15-2 – NPTG: Region.csv Content .....	212
Table 15-3 – NPTG: Admin.csv Content.....	212
Table 15-4 – NPTG: District.csv Content.....	213
Table 15-5 – NPTG: Localities.csv Content .....	213
Table 15-6 – NPTG: LocalityAlternativeNames.csv Content .....	213
Table 15-7 – NPTG: LocalityHierarchy.csv Content .....	214
Table 15-8 – NPTG: AdjacentLocalities.csv Content.....	214
Table 15-9 – NPTG: PlusbusZones.csv Content .....	214
Table 15-10 – NPTG: PlusbusMappings.csv Content .....	214
Table 15-11 – NPTG: AdjacentRegionPoints.csv Content .....	215
Table 15-12 – NPTG: CallCentres.csv Content .....	215
Table 15-13 – NPTG: CallCentres.csv Content .....	215
Table 15-14 – NPTG: TrustedServer.csv Content .....	216

Preamble

Contents

Table 15-15 – NPTG: WebApplications.csv Content.....	216
Table 15-16 – NPTG: WebAppCapabilities.csv Content .....	216
Table 15-17 – NPTG: RegionApplications.csv Content.....	216
Table 15-18 – NPTG: AdminAreaApplications.csv Content .....	216
Table 15-19 – NPTG: LocalityApplications.csv Content .....	217
Table 15-20 – NPTG: StopPointApplications.csv Content.....	217
Table 15-21 – NaPTAN CSV files .....	220
Table 15-22 – NaPTAN: Stops.csv Content .....	221
Table 15-23 – NaPTAN: HailRide.csv Content .....	221
Table 15-24 – NaPTAN: Flexible.csv Content .....	221
Table 15-25 – NaPTAN: AlternativeDescriptor.csv Content.....	222
Table 15-26 – NaPTAN: StopLocalities.csv Content .....	222
Table 15-27 – NaPTAN: StopAvailabilities.csv Content .....	222
Table 15-28 – NaPTAN: StopsInStopArea.csv Content .....	222
Table 15-29 – NaPTAN: AirReferences.csv Content.....	223
Table 15-30 – NaPTAN: RailReferences.csv Content.....	223
Table 15-31 – NaPTAN: FerryReferences.csv Content.....	223
Table 15-32 – NaPTAN: MetroReferences.csv Content.....	224
Table 15-33 – NaPTAN: CoachReferences.csv Content.....	224
Table 15-34 – NaPTAN: LocalityMainAccessPoints.csv Content.....	224
Table 15-35 – NaPTAN: StopPlusBusZones.csv Content.....	224
Table 15-36 – NaPTAN: StopAreas.csv Content.....	225
Table 15-37 – NaPTAN: StopAreaHierarchy.csv Content .....	225
Table 15-38 – Common NPTG and NaPTAN CSV Data Types .....	226

## 1 INTRODUCTION

The National Public Transport Access Nodes (*NaPTAN*) database is a UK nationwide system for uniquely identifying all the points of access to public transport in the UK. *NaPTAN* seeks to provide a comprehensive data set of all of the stopping places used by public transport services.

The National Public Transport Gazetteer (*NPTG*) provides a topographic database of towns and settlements in the UK, and is used by the *NaPTAN* dataset to associate Public Transport Access Nodes (PTANS) with localities.

*NPTG* and *NaPTAN* together enable computerised public transport information systems to provide stop finding and referencing capabilities using consistent, meaningful names for places and stops. The points of the *NaPTAN* system provide a coherent national framework of reference for integrating all kinds of public transport data including journey planning and real-time information.

Both *NaPTAN* and the *NPTG* can be exchanged as XML documents; this document is a guide to the *NaPTAN* and *NPTG* XML schemas which describe those documents. The schemas are available at a website at <http://www.naptan.org.uk>, which also provides additional information and resources.

This is a revised version of the Schema Guide covering *NaPTAN* & *NPTG* 2.5, released in 2013 to coincide with release 2.5 of TransXChange. For a summary of modifications see Section 1.9.6 below.

### 1.1 NPTG Components

The *NPTG* consists of the following elements:

1. A standard set of names for UK places and settlements, together with a method for assigning topographic names so as to be suitable for journey planning and other computer based information services.
2. A division of the UK into administrative areas to manage public transport access node and other data, and the identification of services supporting it.
3. A pair of XML Schemas for describing the *NPTG* & *NPTG Discovery* data when it is exchanged as XML documents.
4. An alternative exchange format for exchanging *NPTG* data as CSV files.
5. A database of all the settlements in the UK, compiled to the standard that can be exported into the prescribed formats.

### 1.2 NaPTAN Components

*NaPTAN* consists of the following elements:

1. A standard method for identifying and describing access points to public transport.
2. An XML Schema for describing the *NaPTAN* data when it is exchanged as XML documents.
3. An alternative exchange format for exchanging stop data as CSV files.
4. A process for gathering information about changes to stop data and compiling it into the central database.
5. A database of all the access points in the UK, compiled to the standard that can be exported into the prescribed formats.

The *NaPTAN* database is maintained centrally under contract to the Department for Transport.

### 1.3 NPTG and NaPTAN Users

*NPTG* and *NaPTAN* data users include:

- Traveline – the National Passenger Transport Information System.

- Transport Direct Portal.
- Bus Service Operators.
- Traffic Area Offices.
- Local Authorities.
- Passenger Transport Executives.
- Scheduling System Suppliers.
- Journey Planning System Suppliers.
- Real Time Information Systems Suppliers.
- Electronic Fare management systems and Smartcards (ITSO)
- Mapping and Map-information Information System Suppliers.
- Point of interest databases.
- Tourism Industry.
- Estate Agents.

The *NaPTAN* stop database is fundamental for *TransXChange*, the UK system for recording schedules as XML documents for electronic registration of bus services.

*NaPTAN* is also fundamental to *JourneyWeb*, the UK national distributed journey planning protocol. Note that the appropriate naming of localities and stops is an important consideration for providing effective place and stop finding in on-line journey planners, and some guidance on this subject is included in this document.

#### 1.4 Motivation

This *NPTG and NaPTAN XML Schema Guide* is intended to provide a technical overview and reference manual to the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* Schemas for system developers, data providers and other users of *NaPTAN* and the *NPTG*.

It includes guidelines on the naming of stops and stop areas so that data is effectively labelled for use in journey planning engines. The guide provides, in particular, a description of the *NaPTAN* and *NPTG* XML schemas, both of which are encoded as W3C XML xsd schemas. Note that detailed documentation of individual schema elements is provided as annotations within the schemas. Software tools such as XML SPY can be used to explore the structure and details of the schema.

#### 1.5 Antecedents

Version 1.0 of *NaPTAN* was originally developed by WSAtkins for Transport Direct under contract to the UK Department for Transport. It built on earlier stop numbering systems used by the Association of Transport Coordinating Officers (ATCO).

A subsequent update 1.1 in October 2003, also managed by WSAtkins, comprised a revision to the coding of stations to simplify the use of *NaPTAN* codes by journey planners.

*NaPTAN* version 2.0, a revision in 2004 of the standard, managed by Carl Bro with technical development by Kizoom, had as its main functional change the harmonisation of *NaPTAN* with other public transport schemas and government standards for XML schemas. *NaPTAN* 2.0 included a new documentation set, including this guide, drawing on the *NaPTAN* specification v1.0 produced by WSAtkins on behalf of the Department for Transport (see 15.3), and the '*Creation of National Public Transport Gazetteer (NPTG) Guidance Notes – Version 6* (1 June 2002)'. A slightly revised version of the 1.1 schema was introduced as 1.3 to ease migration to 2.0. The term '1.x' is used to refer collectively to the 1.0 and other prior versions

*NaPTAN* version 2.1 was a very minor update to version 2.0 to relax the requirement to provide **Landmark** and **Street** elements for all descriptors. 2.1 should be fully backwards compatible with 2.1 in all other respects. It is accompanied by a 1.4 version of the earlier 1.x schema.

NaPTAN version 2.2 was a minor update to version 2.1 to add an archive status for element change management. V2.2 should be fully backwards compatible with 2.1 in all other respects. Version 2.3 added a new stop type for bus/coach stops in private locations.

NaPTAN & NPTG version 2.4 was a minor update to version 2.2 to add some stop type and relax some constraints on certain data types and support for private stops. It coincided with release 2.4 of TransXChange. It was also internally restructured into smaller component packages to facilitate maintenance and correspondence with Transmodel/NeTEx. .

NaPTAN & NPTG version 2.5 is a minor update to version 2.4 to add support for Eire stops, fare zones and some basic accessibility tagging. It coincides with release 2.5 of TransXChange. V2.5 of NaPTAN & NPTG are fully backwards compatible with 2.4. For the London 2012 Olympics JourneyWeb was enhanced to allow planning to venues and other points of interest. NaPTAN 2.5 also includes elements to show how NaPTAN point identifiers can be used to describe sites other than stop points. Note however that point of interest data is not supplied.

The term '2.x' is used to refer collectively to the 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 and 2.5 versions.

The *NPTG and NaPTAN 2.x* XML schemas reference common GovTalk XML type definitions, in particular those shared by other UK Public Transport XML schema that use *NaPTAN*, such as *JourneyWeb* and *TransXChange*.

## 1.6 Document Structure

The *NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide* is organised as follows:

### Part I – Overview.

The chapters in Part I are intended to give a summary of the basic concepts and purpose of *NPTG and NaPTAN*.

- *NPTG and NaPTAN* Overview.
- *NPTG and NaPTAN* Models.

### Part II – Schema Elements

The chapters in Part II provide a detailed account of the schema elements:

- *NPTG* Schema.
- *NaPTAN* Schema.

### Part III – NPTG and NaPTAN Examples

The chapters in Part III provide some examples for creating correct *NaPTAN* stop definitions.

### Part IV – Technical Annexes

The chapters in Part IV provide technical details on various aspects of *NPTG and NaPTAN* documents and technology.

- Technical Annexes.
  - Versioning.
  - National Language Support.
- Reference Appendixes.
- Reference Annexes.
  - *NaPTAN* CSV exchange format.

## 1.7 Intellectual Property Rights

### 1.7.1 NPTG and NaPTAN Schema

The *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* Schemas are Crown Copyright, managed by the UK Department for Transport. The schemas may be used without charge.

The *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* Schemas may reference other Schemas that are also Crown Copyright, or that are owned by Associate Members of the UK Government GovTalk initiative.

Anyone who wishes to reproduce the Schemas in any format must acknowledge the source and state that the Schemas are the copyright of the named Associate Member or Crown Copyright, as appropriate. The permission to reproduce does not extend to any Schema or parts of Schema which are specifically identified as being the copyright of anyone who is not a Member or Associate Member. Permission to reproduce these Schema or parts of these Schemas must be obtained from the identified copyright holders.

The designated owner of the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* schemas for GovTalk is:

NaPTAN, Transport Direct Team,  
Department for Transport,  
2/17 Great Minster House  
33 Horseferry Road  
London, SW1P 4DR

### 1.7.2 NPTG Database

Rights in the *NPTG* database are separate from rights in the *NPTG* Schema.

The *NPTG* Database is Crown Copyright. Use of the *NPTG* data is free, but subject to UK Open Government Licence (OGL). <http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/>

### 1.7.3 NaPTAN Database

Rights in the *NaPTAN* database are separate from rights in the *NaPTAN* Schema.

The *NaPTAN* Database is Crown Copyright. Use of the *NaPTAN* data is free, but subject to UK Open Government Licence (OGL). <http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/>

Anyone who wishes to use the *NaPTAN* data must acknowledge the source and state that the data is Crown Copyright in accordance with the licence conditions.

## 1.8 Versioning

A strict versioning system is used for the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* schemas, following e-Gif principles. This has been made explicit since Version 2.0 of *NaPTAN*, and is explained in Section 11.1.

## 1.9 Changes in Releases

The primary objective of release 2.0 of *NaPTAN* was to systemise the XML schema and model so as to facilitate the interoperability of *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* with other UK standards.

### 1.9.1 Standardisation 2.0

Harmonising changes included:

- Adding coverage of *NPTG* entities in an additional, interoperating XML schema.
- Harmonising with NaPT types and with GovTalk standard types.
- Applying e-GIF and XML best practice principles.
- Support for WGS84 coordinates.
- Systemising National Language support.
- Harmonising entity modification version numbers and timestamps.
- Adding support for flexible zone stops.

#### 1.9.2 Functional Enhancements 2.0

In addition a number of changes were included to address issues arising from experience with version 1.1. These included:

- Introduction of explicit name qualifiers so that locality and stop names can be made unique as required within different scopes. A short name to use as a qualifier was added to administrative area.
- An explicit relationship between NPTG district and administrative area.
- Restrictions on the allowed character set for name elements.
- Further guidance on naming styles so as to obtain unique names.
- Addition of an explicit delete pending status.
- Addition of a short common name to stop point, with maximum length set by administrative area.
- Extension of alternative stop name element to become an alternative descriptor element that includes indicator, street and landmark.
- Addition of an availability element including both validity periods for stops, and a transfer relationship to allow for the moving of stops.
- Separation of concept of locality centre and main or central stop for locality.
- Addition of an optional adjacency relationship for localities.

#### 1.9.3 Name Changes in Release 2.0

One of the consequences of harmonisation was that a number of fundamental *NaPTAN* elements are renamed to bring them in line with *Transmodel* and/or the other UK Public Transport schemas.

We summarise the main name changes here:

	Name v1.1	Name in v2.0
NPTG, NaPTAN	<i>Area</i>	<i>AdministrativeArea</i>
NPTG, NaPTAN	<i>NatGaz /Id</i>	<i>NptgLocalityCode</i>
NaPTAN	<i>Stop</i>	<i>StopPoint</i>
NaPTAN	<i>StopGroup</i>	<i>StopArea</i>
NaPTAN	<i>ATCOCode</i>	<i>AtcoCode</i>
NaPTAN	<i>SMSNumber</i>	<i>NaptanCode</i>
NaPTAN	<i>Direction</i>	<i>Bearing</i>
NaPTAN	<i>BusStopType</i>	<i>StopClassification/Bus/</i>
NaPTAN	<i>BusRegistrationStatus</i>	<i>TimingStatus</i>
NPTG	<i>ExchangePointGroup</i>	<i>MainPoint</i>
NPTG	<i>AirExchangePoint</i>	<i>AnnotatedAirRef</i>
NPTG	<i>CoachExchangePoint</i>	<i>AnnotatedCoachRef</i>
NPTG	<i>RailExchangePoint</i>	<i>AnnotatedRailRef</i>
NPTG Discovery	<i>AREP</i>	<i>AdjacentRegionPoint</i>

Figure 1-1 – Name changes in NaPTAN 2.0

#### 1.9.4 Changes in Release 2.1

- In release 2.1 the **Landmark** and **Street** elements were made optional.
- **AnnotatedCoachRef** was added to all types of on street bus and coach stop.
- **AnnotatedCoachRef** may also include an operator code.

**Part I****Introduction and Overview****1.9.5 Changes in Release 2.2**

- Allowed an additional "archived" status.
- - [NPTG Discovery] Added **TrunkLocality**.
- - [NPTG Discovery] Corrected version No.

**1.9.6 Changes in Release 2.3**

- Diagrams revised and more detail added.
- NaPT\_stop-V2.1 added new Public flag on stops (replacing previous proposition for a *BCP* stop type).

**1.9.7 Changes in Release 2.4**

Changes in 2.4 are limited to syntactic changes. No database changes are required.

- Functional
  - PTIC-008 NaPT\_stop-v2.4 Constraints on NPTG NaPTAN code AlphaPrefix relaxed to allow 1 for London and to relax constraints on codes for use in London and Yorkshire.
  - NaPT\_types-v2.1 Constraints on PrivateCode relaxed from NMOKEN to string.
  - PTIC-075 NPTG updates: Add Northern Ireland & Eire to country enumerations. NPTG Discovery: Support multiple regions per call centre. Add SIRI & other service types.
  - Stop types added for Cable Lifts & Car setDown to enable London 2012 Olympics.
- Technical
  - All UML diagrams converted to EA format and revised, Correction to the data.
  - All XML diagrams updated to show types.
  - All Example diagrams corrected and updated.
  - Internally restructuring to small modular packages corresponding to the Transmodel / NeTEx structure. This facilitates mapping between standards and further evolution of NaPTAN. Should not have an effect on the resulting aggregated document.

**1.9.8 Changes in Release 2.5**

- Functional
  - PTIC-083 Support for Eire locations:
    - ITM (Irish Transverse Mercator) allowed as grid type.
    - Multiple Grid translations allowed.
  - PTIC-087 Accessible Booking info added
  - PTIC-086 StopAccessibility added to StopPoint.
  - PTIC-088 Basic Tariff Zones added. Sufficient to tag stops with the Zones for which they are eligible.
  - Add Location to AnnotatedAirRef for consistency.
  - PTIC086 Alignment with JourneyWeb. Venue types added with PointOfInterest. This also serves to clarify the general modelling of sites and to support accessibility.
- Technical.
  - The version number attribute on a NaPTAN document was previously a fixed value (e.g. 2.1, 2.4, etc). It is now a variable that defaults to the current value (e.g. 2.5). This makes it easier for implementers to use a single schema binding with documents that conform to earlier releases.

**1.10 Content Not Covered by NaPTAN**

NaPTAN focuses on PTAN information and does not currently cover interchange times, or interchange paths. This can be exchanged using the CEN NeTEx schema, into which NaPTAN data can be mapped.

### 1.11 Naming Conventions

Systematic Naming conventions are used for schema elements. These are described in Section 11.

### 1.12 Presentation Conventions

Consistent conventions are used throughout this Guide to present software artefacts.

#### 1.12.1 XML Elements in Text

*NaPTAN* and *NPTG* use the XML Schema Language (See <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0/>, <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/> and <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/>), and its terminology, such as “element”, “attribute”, “sequence” and “choice” to formally describe its data structures.

Throughout this *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* Schema Guide:

- XML elements are shown in bold italic type, for example the ***StopPoint*** element.
- XML attributes are shown in bold, for example **MappingSystem**.
- Containment of a subelement by another element is shown by a forward slash, for example ***StopPoint / AtcoCode***.

#### 1.12.2 UML Diagrams

Unified Modelling Language (UML) notation is used for class and instance diagrams to show the formal structure of the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* conceptual models; the diagrams express structure in terms of classes, connected by association, aggregation and inheritance relationships, corresponding to the semantics available in XML’s built-in reference and extension mechanisms.

UML notation uses well known conventions for showing the navigability, multiplicity, and optionality of model elements and relationships.

For *NPTG* and *NaPTAN*, we refine the standard UML conventions by the systematic use of colour, in particular:

- Network topology elements are shown in diagrams in *green* (for example, ***StopPoint***, ***StopArea***).
- Administrative related elements are shown in *pink* (for example, ***AdministrativeArea***, Region).
- Topographical elements are shown in *olive*, for example (for example, ***NptgLocality***, ***NptgDistrict***).

Different levels of detail are shown in the UML diagrams; introductory diagrams omit details and provide a high level overview; model diagrams show detailed attributes including physical attributes used to implement relationships; hierarchical views show the supertypes of objects; supporting diagrams show the low level data types used in the model diagrams.

Since we are depicting a physical model, in detailed diagrams we also indicate the attributes used to implement relationships.

#### 1.12.3 XML Structure Diagrams

XML Spy (from Altova GmbH) structure diagrams are used extensively in the detailed schema description to illustrate the containment structure of XML schema fragments. Each XML element is shown as a solid box. Use of a complex data type is shown by a dashed box.

The presence of attributes is indicated by a '+'. Since a common set of metadata attributes is used for first class objects, we do not generally show the attributes, though they may be listed in the accompanying documentation, using a convention of including the attribute name in the element comment prefixed by an 'at' sign ('@'), for example '@*lang*'.

##### 1.12.3.1 Element Structure – Sequence

The hexagonal symbol with the horizontal line of three dots indicates “sequence of.” For example, Figure 1-2 says the element ***ValidityPeriod*** consists of the sequence of ***StartTime*** followed by ***EndTime***. Both elements are defined in the namespace whose prefix is “txc”. The adornment of a

small series of horizontal lines in their upper left box corners indicates that **StartTime** and **EndTime** have a simple type. Types are normally shown in the bottom half of the box.

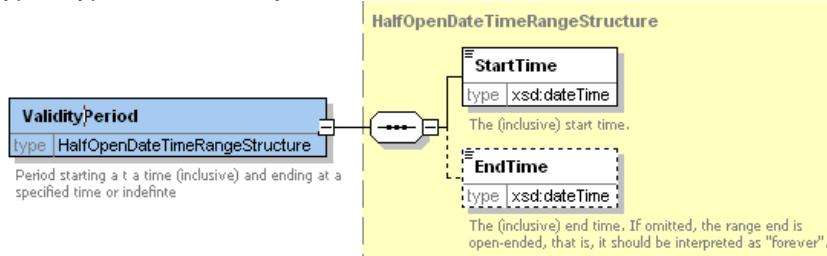


Figure 1-2 – XML Spy Diagram: Sequence

#### 1.12.3.2 Element Structure – Choice

The hexagonal symbol with the switch-like icon indicates a choice. For example in *Figure 1-3* there is a choice between the elements **NoSubsidy**, and **Subsidy**. **Subsidy** has a further substructure, indicated by a “+” in at the right-hand end. **NoSubsidy** is simple type.

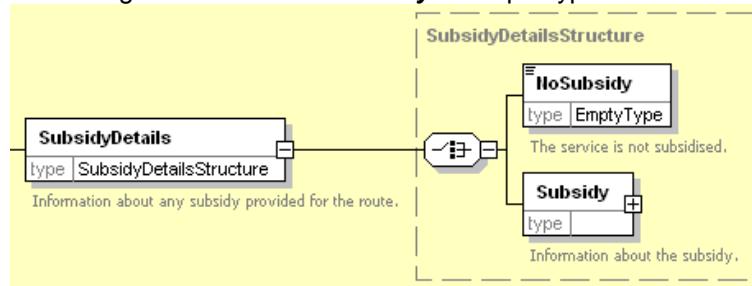
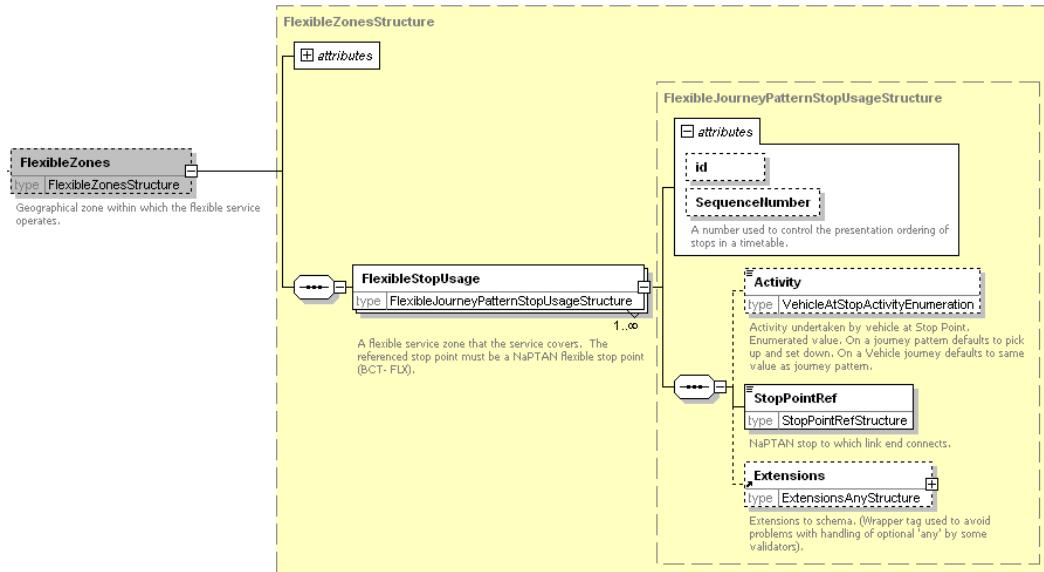


Figure 1-3 – XML Spy Diagram: Choice

#### 1.12.3.3 Multiplicity and Optionality

Whether elements are required or optional, and the multiplicity (cardinality) of elements is indicated by adornments as follows:

- A *fine dashed line* on the connecting line and surrounding box indicates an element is optional. For example, in *Figure 1-4*; **FlexibleZones** and **Description**.
- A *solid line* indicates a mandatory element. For example, in *Figure 1-4*; **StopPointRef**.
- A *number adornment* indicates a multiplicity other than one. ‘Many’ is indicated by an infinity sign  $\infty$ . Thus, for example in *Figure 1-4*, there may be zero or one **Activity instances** per **StopUsage**, but there can be between one and many **StopUsages** per **FlexibleZone**.



**Figure 1-4 – XML Spy Diagram: Multiplicity**

### 1.13 Related Transport Information Standards

*NPTG* and *NaPTAN* are XML based standards and are compatible with the following standards for public transport information:

- **ATCO-CIF: (UK)** ATCO-CIF is a general purpose interchange format for common elements of timetable information. *NaPTAN* is an evolution of the stop identification system from ATCO.
- **TransXChange: (UK)** *TransXChange* is a UK national data standard for the interchange of bus route and timetable information, intended as a successor to ATCO-CIF. The standard is sponsored by the UK Department for Transport, and is mandated by the Traffic Area Network (TAN) for the electronic registration of UK bus services with Traffic Area Offices (TAO) within the Vehicle and Operator Services Agency (VOSA), and Local Authorities. *TransXChange* 2.x is harmonised with *NaPTAN* 2.x.
- **Transmodel: (CEN)** *Transmodel* is an abstract reference model of the data of interest to organisations providing transport related information systems. It has resulted from several European Commission sponsored projects. *NaPTAN* can be related to Transmodel concepts and terminology for stops. Since the development of *NaPTAN* Transmodel has been further evolved by the addition of a detailed stop model IFOPT (Identification of Fixed Objects) drawing on *NaPTAN* and the experience of other European nations.
- **NeTEx: (CEN)** *Network Exchange* is a reference model and XML schema for exchanging network, timetable and fare data for public transport information systems, developed from Transmodel and IFOPT. It includes a stop place model and administrative model derived from *NaPTAN* and *NPTG*. It provides design input for many further aspects of public transport. *NaPTAN* data can be mapped into a *NeTEx* schema and augmented. Enhancements to *NaPTAN* are usually done in a manner intended to be compatible with *NeTEx*.
- **JourneyWeb: (UK)** *JourneyWeb* is an XML protocol allowing distributed journey planning. The protocol is a UK national *de facto* standard sponsored by the UK Department for Transport and is being used in the Transport Direct Portal to provide contiguous distributed journey planning across the whole of Great Britain.

- **SIRI:** (CEN) The *Service Interface for Real-time Information* is a standard for the exchange of real time bus information between systems which was developed by TC278 WG3 of CEN with UK participation sponsored by the DfT, originally through the UK Real Time Interest Group, and now PTIC. SIRI services that reference stops, such as the SIRI Stop Monitoring Service (SIRI-SM), can reference NaPTAN stop points.
- **UK Geocoding** References: For geospatial references the *NaPTAN* data set hold OSGR Grid references – the Easting and Northing, with support for both UK Mainland and Irish grids. In release 2.x the schema supports the exchange of WGS84 coordinates as an alternative. For release 2.5 ITM (Irish Transverse Mercator) grid is also supported.

#### 1.14 Acknowledgments

The original Schema Guide for version 2.0 of NaPTAN was prepared by the Kizoom (Nick Knowles, Tom White) and Carlbro (Richard Mejia, Paul Robinson) teams under direction of Roger Slevin of the Department for Transport. It included revised examples and appendixes from the original *NaPTAN* specification prepared by WSAtkins, and examples from '*Modelling stops – Usage of NPTG and NaPTAN in the South East Enquiry Management System*', a paper produced by MDV gmbh. Schema, introduction, modelling and technical sections were provided by Kizoom. We thank Dr Hans-Joachim Mentz of MDV for his examples, comments and material on stop naming. Thanks also to John Gallagher (Thales), Dean Garraghty (Trandata), Kieren Holmes (Cap Gemini), Paul Houghton (Trandata), Peter Miller (ACIS), Mike Ness (WSAtkins), John Prince (SYPT), Richard Shaw (WSAtkins), Dr Martin Siczkowski (WYPTE), Roger Dennis (Trapsoft) and other ATCO and RTIG members for their comments, corrections and other feedback.

Version 2.1 of NaPTAN accompanied version 2.1 of *TransXChange* and was prepared to by the Kizoom (Nick Knowles, Tom White) and Carlbro (Richard Mejia, Paul Robinson) teams under direction of Roger Slevin of the Department for Transport.

Version 2.4 accompanied version 2.4 of *TransXChange* and was prepared by the Kizoom (Nick Knowles) and Centaur (Mark Cartwright) teams with guidance from Roger Slevin and Chris Gibbard of the Department for Transport.

Version 2.5 accompanied version 2.5 of *TransXChange* and was prepared by Nick Knowles with guidance from Chris Gibbard and Helen Pattington of the Department for Transport. with input from Jonathan Shewell Cooper of ATOS.



## 2 INTRODUCTION TO NAPTAN AND THE NPTG

### 2.1 The Purpose of the National Public Transport Gazetteer

NaPTAN depends closely on the *National Public Transport Gazetteer* (NPTG). The NPTG provides a model of all UK cities, towns and settlements to which people might wish to travel, or which they might wish to use to describe the places to which they wish to travel. Every NaPTAN stop is assigned to a NPTG locality. This association has two main purposes:

1. It allows stops to be related to the topographical area in which they lie, so that a wide variety of user search functions can be supported to find travel destinations and travel access points.
2. It allows stops to be related to the computer systems which provide coverage for the stop, for example for journey planning or real time information, so that services can be provisioned automatically.

Not all NPTG localities, however, have stops associated with them. The Gazetteer seeks to present a comprehensive list of UK localities as known to the public, regardless of whether transport services are available within a given locality.

#### 2.1.1 The NPTG Database

The NPTG database holds a current data set of all UK towns and settlements, organised within a topographical hierarchy. The NPTG database is maintained centrally by Landmark Information Group under contract to the Department for Transport.

#### 2.1.2 The NPTG XML Schemas

NPTG data is described by two related *XML schemas*. (i) The main NPTG Schema, (ii) The NPTG Discovery schema, relating NPTG entities to available services. The schemas can be used to describe NPTG data when exchanging it between systems as XML documents. The schemas can be used with software tools to check that documents are correctly formatted and contain the required content.

#### 2.1.3 The NPTG CSV Exchange Format

NPTG data can also be distributed to systems in Comma Separated Variable (CSV) format, as well as XML documents. The NPTG CSV exchange format uses a format, recorded in Appendix 15.5.

### 2.2 The Purpose of NaPTAN

NaPTAN seeks to assemble and maintain a single source of information on the location and naming of bus stops and other public transport access nodes. NaPTAN includes the following main elements:

#### 2.2.1 NaPTAN Identifiers

NaPTAN stop point identifiers are a systematic way of identifying all UK points of access to public transport. Stops are submitted by administrative area authorities to a central service which consolidates the stops and distributes them back to users.

- Every UK station, coach terminus, airport, ferry terminal, bus stop, etc is allocated at least one unique NaPTAN stop point with its own identifier.
- For large interchanges and termini, NaPTAN points identify the entrances from the public thoroughfare – one identifier is distinguished as the main entrance. A second point may be used to designate the ‘transport side’ – airside, berth or platform area.

For every NaPTAN stop there are two associated NaPTAN identifiers, each unique within the UK:

- The **AtcoCode**: A twelve character NaPTAN identifier intended for use in computer systems.
- The **NaptanCode**: A short (seven or eight digit) identifier suitable for displaying on stops and referring to the stop in public facing systems. This has been designed to be suitable for use

in SMS and other delivery channels requiring direct reference to a stop identifier by the public. In most areas it uses a character set optimised for a mobile device keypad.

#### 2.2.2 The NaPTAN Database

The *NaPTAN* database holds a current copy of all UK stops and their descriptions. Stops are submitted by Public Transport Authorities (Metropolitan, County and Unitary) to a central authority which validates and aggregates the stop point data and returns it back to consumer systems. The *NaPTAN* database is maintained centrally by Landmark Information Group under contract to the Department for Transport.

#### 2.2.3 The NaPTAN XML Schema

*NaPTAN* data is described by a *NaPTAN XML Schema*. The schema can be used to describe *NaPTAN* data when exchanging it between systems as XML documents. The schema describes the content model: not only the elements and Data types, but also the rules for combining them. The schema can be used with software tools to check that documents are correctly formatted and have the required content.

The XML documents themselves can be exchanged by different transport mechanisms, for example, FTP, email or http.

It should be emphasised that the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* schemas are a standard format for data exchange, and not a specific software program or a dynamic protocol. *NaPTAN* is intended to enable local and national user communities to build systems that can share information correctly, cheaply and efficiently, but does not prescribe detailed error handling or other data processing details.

#### 2.2.4 The NaPTAN CSV Exchange Format

*NaPTAN* data can also be distributed to systems in CSV format, as well as XML documents. The *NaPTAN* CSV exchange format uses a format recorded in Appendix 15.8.

#### 2.2.5 NaPTAN Process

Gathering, collating and maintaining a large, volatile data set such as that of UK PTANS requires an agreed workflow and process for a large number of different bodies to work together, in both the public and private sectors. *NaPTAN* includes an overall workflow and tools, with specific organisations being charged with specific roles in the overall process.

*NaPTAN* also prescribes a set of rules for describing stops when populating the *NaPTAN* textual descriptions elements.

## 2.3 How are NPTG and NaPTAN used?

The most common use of *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* data – to support the exchange of bus timetables – may involve the exchange of three different data sets:

- Exchange of the *NPTG* Gazetteer data.
- Exchange of the *NaPTAN* stops which reference *NPTG* data.
- Exchange of TransXChange documents which reference *NaPTAN* stops and *NPTG* localities, and which may also contain interim local definitions of *NaPTAN* stops.

A further common use of *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* data is to provide place and stop finding functions in journey planners and other on-line enquiry services.

Typical scenarios for the use of *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* are as follows:

### 2.3.1 Scenario #1: Compilation and Distribution of *NPTG* Data

#### 1. Compilation

The *NPTG* database has been compiled centrally by the Department for Transport, from the input of local editors who use the on-line *NPTG* editor to submit locality definitions. It is updated and reissued continually to the Transport Authorities and other users as an XML file (and also as csv tables). Some data elements may be added centrally – for example Plusbus Zones. *NPTG* documents must validate against a stated version of the *NPTG* schema. If necessary, the same content could be exported and distributed in multiple versions at different schema version levels at the same time.

#### 2. Distribution

The XML document of the *NPTG* content (& or csv files) are distributed. The documents are available to authorised users to download from Landmark Information Group at <http://www.dft.gov.uk/public-transportdatamanagement>. Users may specify the format (XML or CSV) and the version level (e.g. 1.1 or 2.1) that they wish to download.

#### 3. Use

Each authority or other user imports the *NPTG* document into their system, using the version number to determine the appropriate schema level to use. The import application updates the user's version of the *NPTG* data with the changes in the update. Note that individual entities such as localities have version numbers, so it is possible to hold multiple versions of data for the same entity in a client database if desired.

### 2.3.2 Scenario #2: Gathering and Distribution of *NaPTAN* Stop Data

#### 1. Data Preparation

The responsible party for preparing *NaPTAN* stop data for a given administrative area prepares an updated version of the stop data for that area. Stop points reference *NPTG* localities.

#### 2. Data Export

The *NaPTAN* stop data set for the whole administrative area is exported as an XML document (formerly as a csv file) following a named version of the *NaPTAN* schema. Each administrative area should only export nodes contained within its administrative area boundaries, ignoring nodes outside its boundaries that are 'owned' by another authority. Only the latest revision of each entity should be exported.

#### 3. Data Transmission

The XML document is sent to the central organisation responsible for concentrating *NaPTAN* data (Landmark Information Group).

#### 4. Data Concentration

The stop data is imported into the *NaPTAN* database, using the schema level indicated in the document to interpret the content. Note that records are never removed from the database, simple flagged as deleted or suspended if out of use. When a replacement set of stops for a whole area is imported, an error report will be produced detailing any nodes that were in the database previously but are not in the imported file. This error report will be sent back to the supplier of the data so that they can discover where the records have gone. The 'lost' nodes will be kept in the *NaPTAN* database with a 'pending' delete **Status**.

### 5. Data Export

*NaPTAN* data for the country is exported as an XML document conforming to the *NaPTAN* schema. The data is also available as csv files. There are separate files:

- For the whole country.
- For each administrative area. As of March 2010 there are currently 146 administrative areas (including 5 which are national mode-based areas).

The files are available from Landmark Information Group at <http://www.dft.gov.uk/public-transportdatamanagement/>. Users may specify (i) the area (all or area code(s)), (ii) the format (XML or CSV) and (iii) the version level (e.g. 1.1 or 2.1) that they wish to download.

### 6. Data Import

Each authority or other user downloads and imports the *NaPTAN* document into their system, using the version number to determine the appropriate schema level to use.

#### 2.3.3 Scenario #3: Exchange of *NaPTAN* Data within *TransXChange*

##### 1. Data Preparation

Users prepare bus schedules including, if necessary, any stop definitions for new *NaPTAN* stop points that are required. An **AtcoCode** is obtained for each new stop from the relevant local Transport Authority.

##### 2. Data Export

The bus schedules are exported as XML documents in *TransXChange* format, and may include (i) local definitions of new *NaPTAN* stop points and stop areas, as well as (ii) references to existing *NaPTAN* stop points and stop areas. The schedules may be published using the *TransXChange* publisher; *NaPTAN* stop names will be used to identify the stops. The *NPTG* Administrative Areas and *NPTG* Localities referenced by any new local stop definitions must exist in the *NPTG*.

##### 3. Data Use

The importing application imports the *TransXChange* documents, and resolves the stops against its *NaPTAN* database. Stops are reconciled according to their *NaPTAN* **AtcoCode** identifiers, and the interim definitions used for any new stops that are not yet defined in the application's current copy of the distributed *NaPTAN* database. For most applications (for example schedule registration with a Traffic Area Office), any reference to an existing stop that is not found in the *NaPTAN* database is an error.

#### 2.3.4 Scenario #4: Using *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* Data in a Place Finder

One of the common uses that a public transport information system, such as a journey planner, will wish to make of data is to provide users with a means to find origin destination places by a variety of different strategies. For example:

- By *NPTG* locality name.
- By *NPTG* locality name &/or transport mode.
- By *NPTG* locality name & *NPTG* sub locality.
- By Map location (or post code).

Journey planning engines will use the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* data sets to build a place model. It is therefore important to have names that are authoritative and descriptive, and in particular that are comprised of content that can be used to distinguish a target place from other places that are similar in name and/or location. It is also important to geocode stops with their correct spatial location, as well as to annotate PTANs and localities by semantic relationships, so that powerful ‘fuzzy’ search functions can be provided, and so that the engines can aggregate very similar stops in a locality into a single ‘place’ within the user interface. The role of *NaPTAN* is to provide data that can be transformed correctly and unambiguously into the different presentations of stop names needed by software user interfaces, but not to prescribe or preclude specific presentation formats. The requirements to fulfil this role are discussed further later on.

### 2.3.5 Scenario #5: Using NPTG and NaPTAN Data in a Stop Finder

Another common use that public transport information systems, in particular Automatic Vehicle Location (AVL) systems, may wish to make of *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* data is to provide users a means to find stop points by a variety of different strategies. In this case the ability to discriminate every individual stop is important: (as opposed to aggregating a number of stops into a ‘place’).

- By name, and/or transport mode.
- By name and *NPTG* locality and /or transport mode.
- By *NaPTAN* identifier.
- By *NPTG* locality and /or transport mode.
- By *NPTG* locality and *NPTG* sub locality.
- By address.
- By map location (or post code).

It is therefore important to have stop names that are descriptive, and in particular that distinguish them from similar instances in a locality. The requirements to do this are discussed later.

### 2.3.6 Scenario #6: Using NaPTAN Data for real-time departures

Stop Identifiers may be used to provide a common reference framework for exchanging data between Automatic Vehicle Location (AVL) systems and web, mobile and sign distribution channels. The stop point identifier can be used to identify individual points.

## 2.4 Document Validation

To be valid *NPTG* or *NaPTAN* data, XML documents must satisfy two levels of validity criteria:

1. **Well-formedness and validity:** Documents must parse and validate against the *NPTG* or *NaPTAN* schemas, including all the integrity constraints coded within the schema, such as for key uniqueness and reference and for conformance of values to data types. Validation is typically done by the built-in capabilities of standard software tools using the specification provided by the schema and does not require additional programming.
2. **Correctness:** Documents must satisfy additional processing rules and constraints that are not enforceable in the XML of the schema, but which can be applied by an application importing the data. A number of data integrity rules are specified in this document in sections 14.2.2 and 14.3.2., and are also mentioned as annotations in the schema. Typically these rules cover additional complex processing or uniqueness constraints that cannot readily be expressed using XML’s built-in mechanisms.



### 3 SHORT TOUR OF THE NPTG AND NAPTAN REFERENCE MODELS

In this chapter we provide a summary of the physical data models underlying (i) the *NPTG* and (ii) the *NaPTAN* schemas. Both are relatively simple models with a small number of entities.

The physical model is presented as UML diagrams, with different levels of details

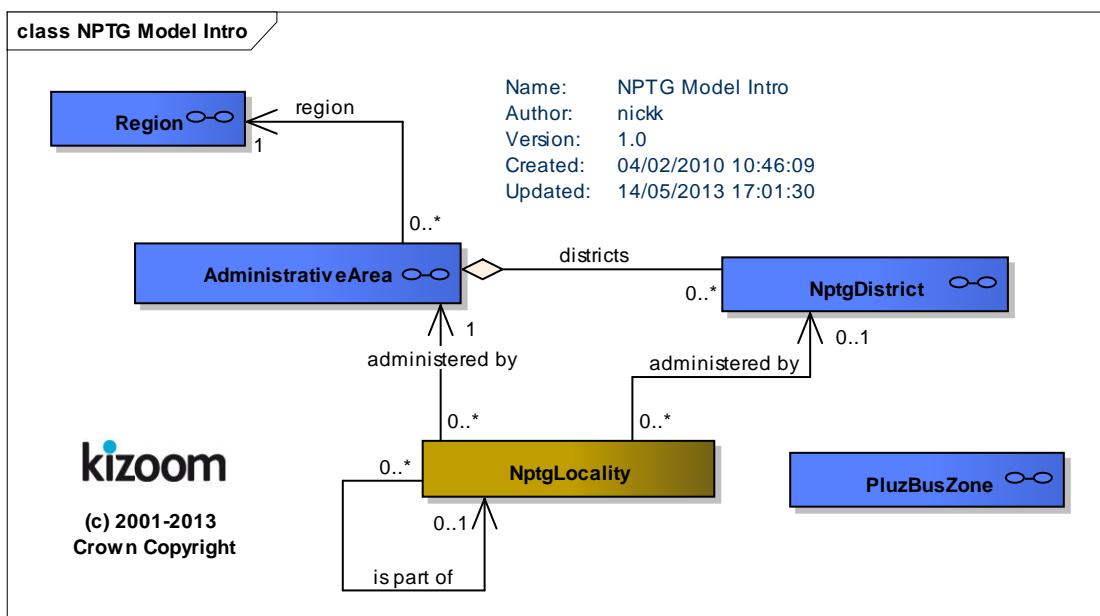
- Top level elements
- Detailed elements with attributes

The diagrams are intended to show how relations and composite objects are serialised as XML: the model therefore includes the attributes used to implement relationships by reference and by containment.

#### 3.1 The National Gazetteer Model

Figure 3-1 introduces, in UML class diagram notation, the fundamental elements of the *NPTG* schema. The elements of the *NPTG* model fall into two main groups:

- *Topographical*.
- *Administrative*.



**Figure 3-1 – UML Diagram of NPTG Model: Introduction**

##### 3.1.1 Topographical Elements

The fundamental entity of the *NPTG* is the ***NptgLocality***, which represents a UK city, suburb, district, village, town or other settlement, for example, ‘*Holborn*’, ‘*Cardiff*’, ‘*North Wootton, Somerset*’ or ‘*Barnsbury, Islington*’.

- Localities can be organised into hierarchies using an ‘*is part of*’ relationship.
  - The ‘*is part of*’ relationship implies that the contained element is inside its parent element.
  - An arbitrary number of levels may be used, though currently at most three levels are used in practice. Parent references should not be cyclic, that is a locality should not be part of itself, directly or indirectly. ,

- A parent element will not necessarily be uniformly divided into children: typically there may be additional children covering town centres and areas significant for travel. Other areas may be more sparsely covered.
- Localities may overlap. Localities may be used to describe geographically fuzzy areas like 'The West End' or 'South Bank'.
- Each **NptgLocality** has a **Location**, specifying the geospatial coordinates, ideally at 1m precision, of a central point for the locality.
- Each **NptgLocality** has a name and an optional short name which can be used to qualify other names. Each **NptgLocality** may have multiple **AlternativeDescriptor** instances, each specifying alternative names for the locality. For example, 'Swansea' has an alternative common name of 'Abertawe' where the alternative name is being used for a bilingual (Welsh) variant of its name.
- Each **NptgLocality** is associated with a single **AdministrativeArea**, representing a Metropolitan PTE, a Shire County or a Shire Unitary Authority (the authority with transport responsibilities).
- Each **NptgLocality** can also be associated with an **NptgDistrict**, a subdivision of **AdministrativeArea**.
  - The district specifies the Local Authority to which the **NptgLocality** belongs. A district will correspond to governmental district, thus be a Borough, District or Metropolitan Borough of the UK.
  - For each **AdministrativeArea** that is a Shire or Metropolitan County, there is an **NptgDistrict** for each subdivision of the administrative area.

Figure 3-2 elaborates, in UML class diagram notation, the elements of the NPTG Locality Model to show attributes and ancillary elements.

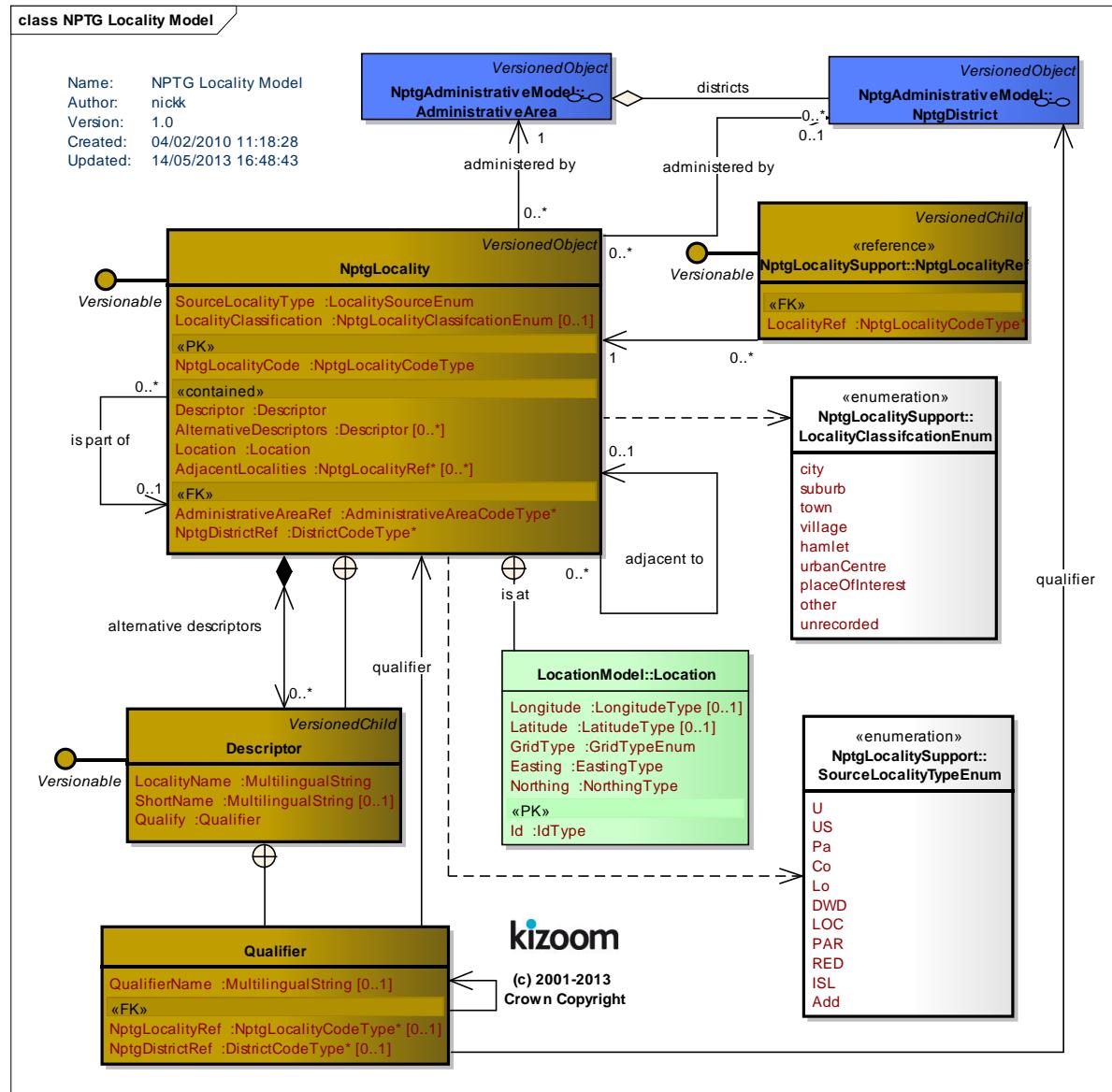


Figure 3-2 – UML Diagram of NPTG Locality Model

### 3.1.2 Administrative Elements

Figure 3-3 introduces, in UML class diagram notation, the elements of the *NPTG* Administrative Model, which assign responsibility for managing locality data:

- Great Britain is divided into Traveline **Region** instances.
- Every **Region** contains a number of **AdministrativeArea** instances.
- Each **NptgLocality** and **NptgDistrict** belongs to a specific **AdministrativeArea**.
- Great Britain also contains a number of **PlusbusZone** instances. These are Tariff zones for the Plusbus scheme.

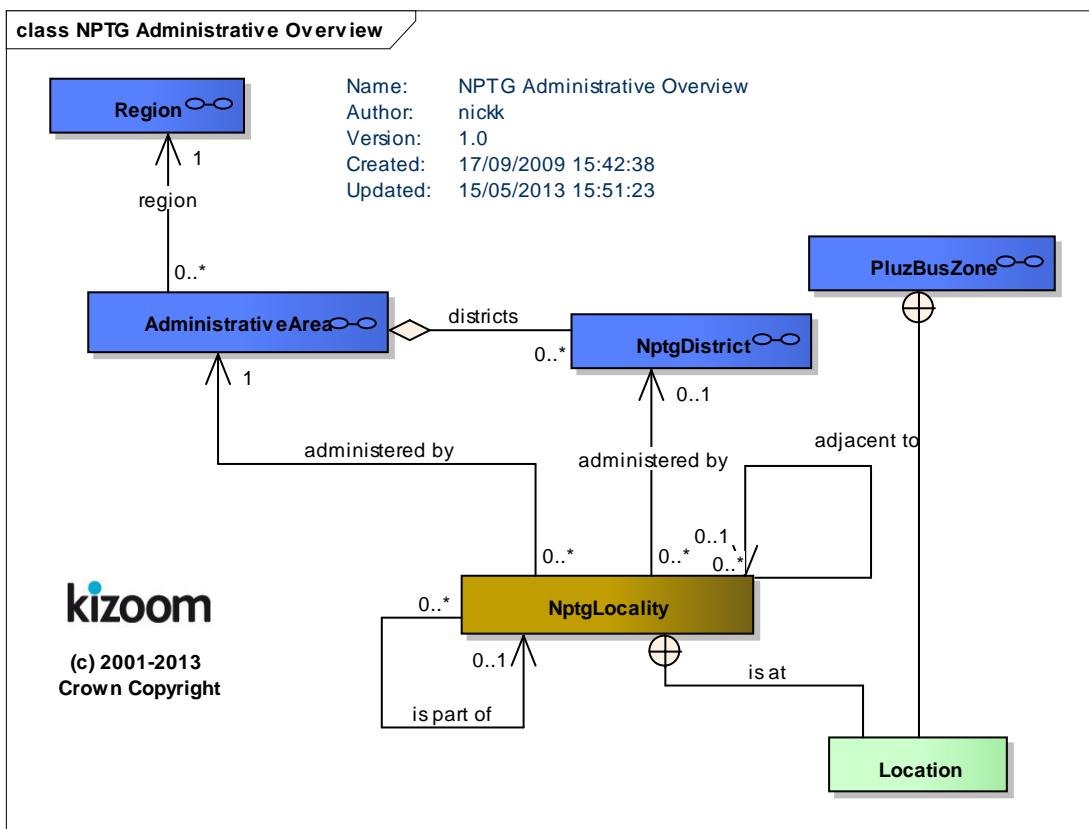


Figure 3-3 – UML Diagram of NPTG Administrative Model: Overview

Figure 3-4 elaborates the same elements as in Figure 3-3 with some further detail showing additional child elements of AdministrativeArea.

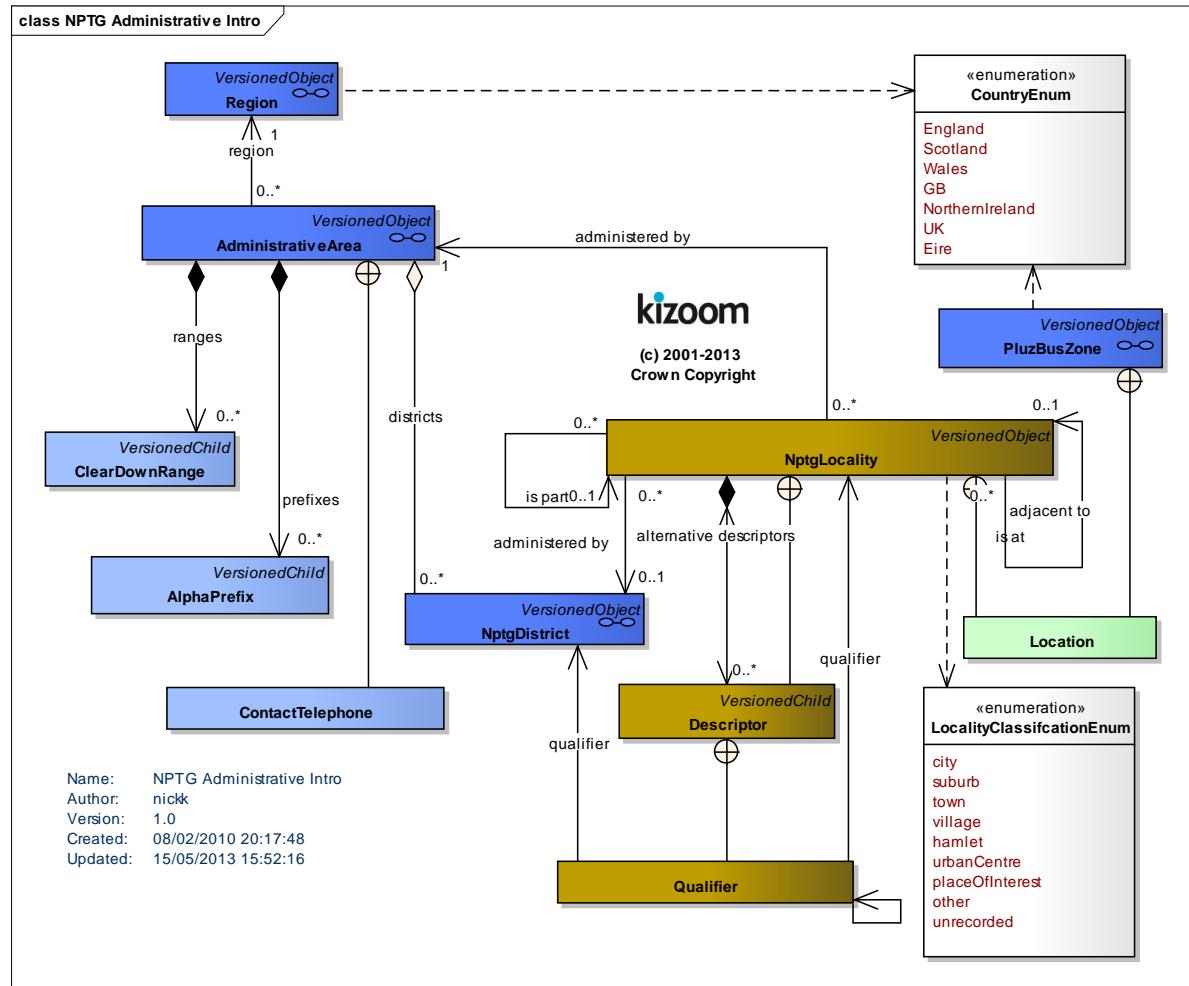
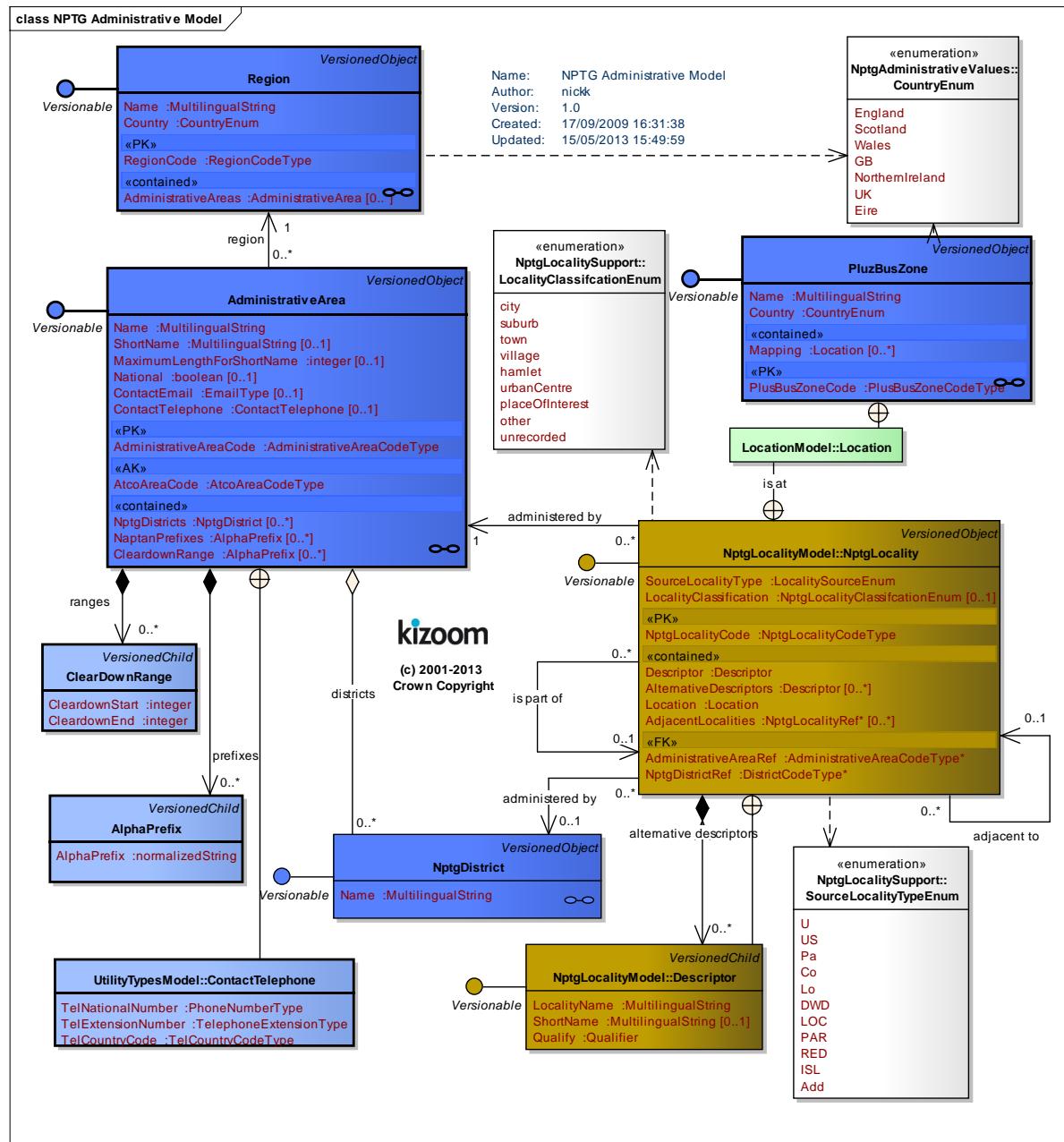


Figure 3-4 – UML Diagram of Main NPTG Model: Further elements

Figure 3-5 shows the same elements as in *Figure 3-4* with further detail as to the properties of individual entities.



**Figure 3-5 – UML Diagram of Main NPTG Model: Detail**

### 3.1.3 NPTG Element Hierarchies

#### 3.1.3.1 NPTG Locality Element Hierarchy

Figure 3-6 shows the Class Hierarchy for the NPTG Locality Elements. **NptgLocality** is a versioned element. **NptgLocalityRef** & **Descriptor** are child elements.

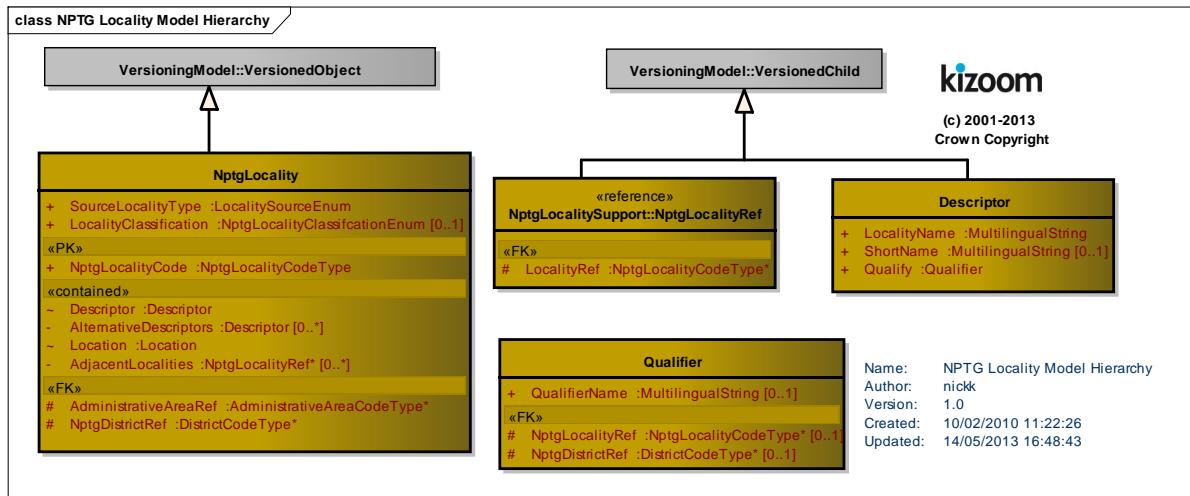


Figure 3-6 – UML Diagram of NPTG Locality Element Hierarchy

#### 3.1.3.2 NPTG Administrative Element Hierarchy

Figure 3-7 shows the Class Hierarchy for the NPTG Administrative Elements. **Region**, **AdministrativeArea**, **NptgDistrict** and **PlusBusZone** are versioned elements. **CleardownRange** & **AlphaPrefix** are child elements.

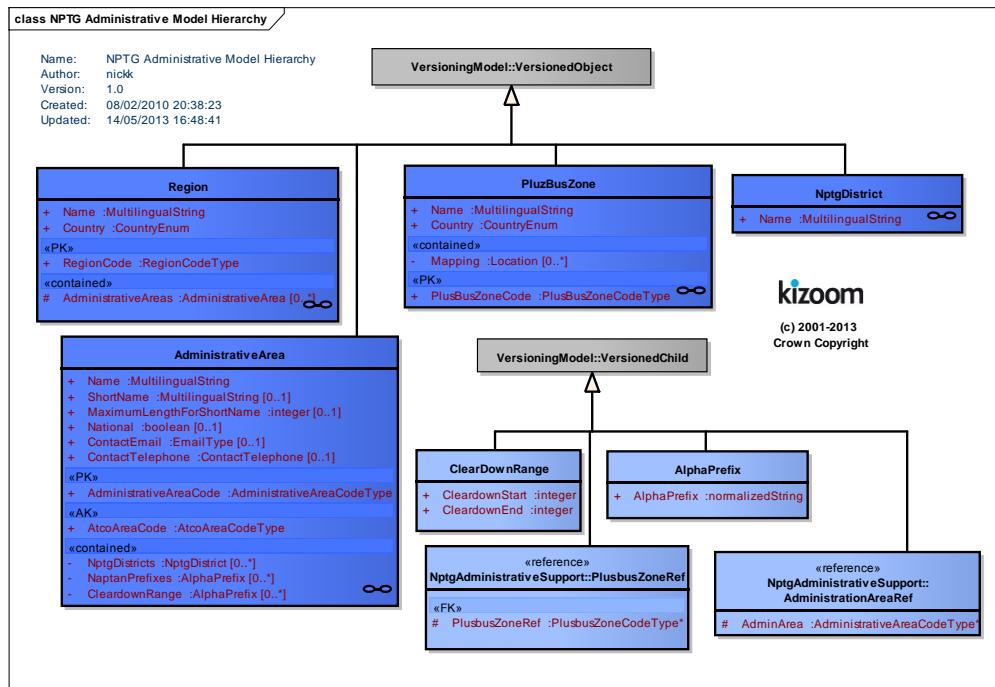
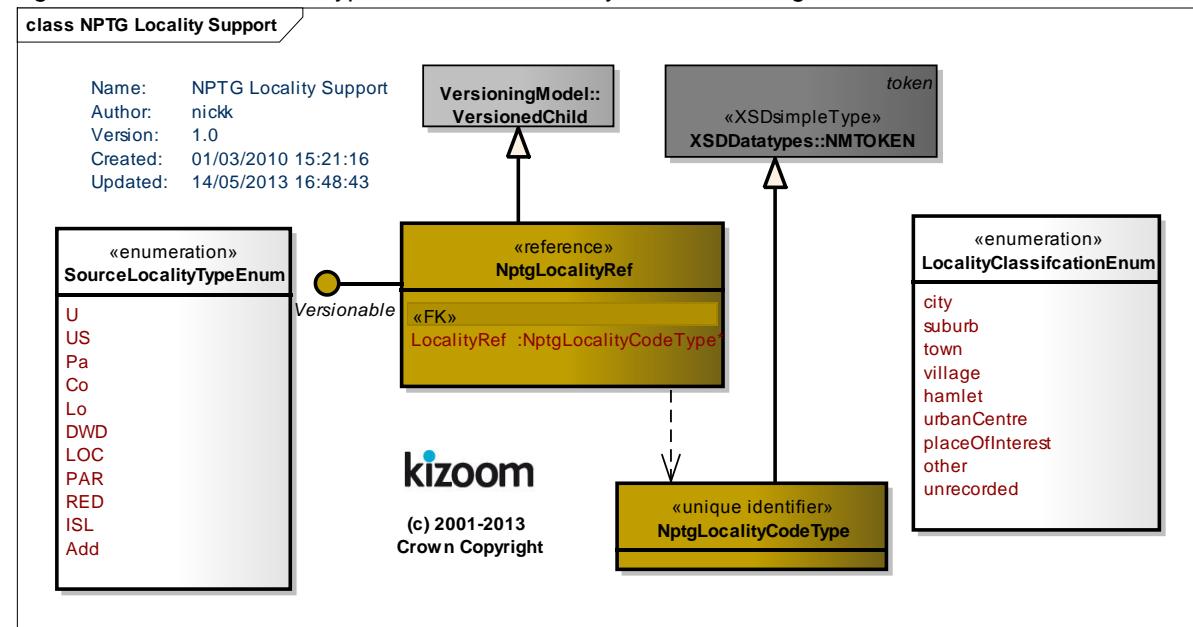


Figure 3-7 – UML Diagram of Administrative Element Hierarchy

### 3.1.3.3NPTG Locality Data Types

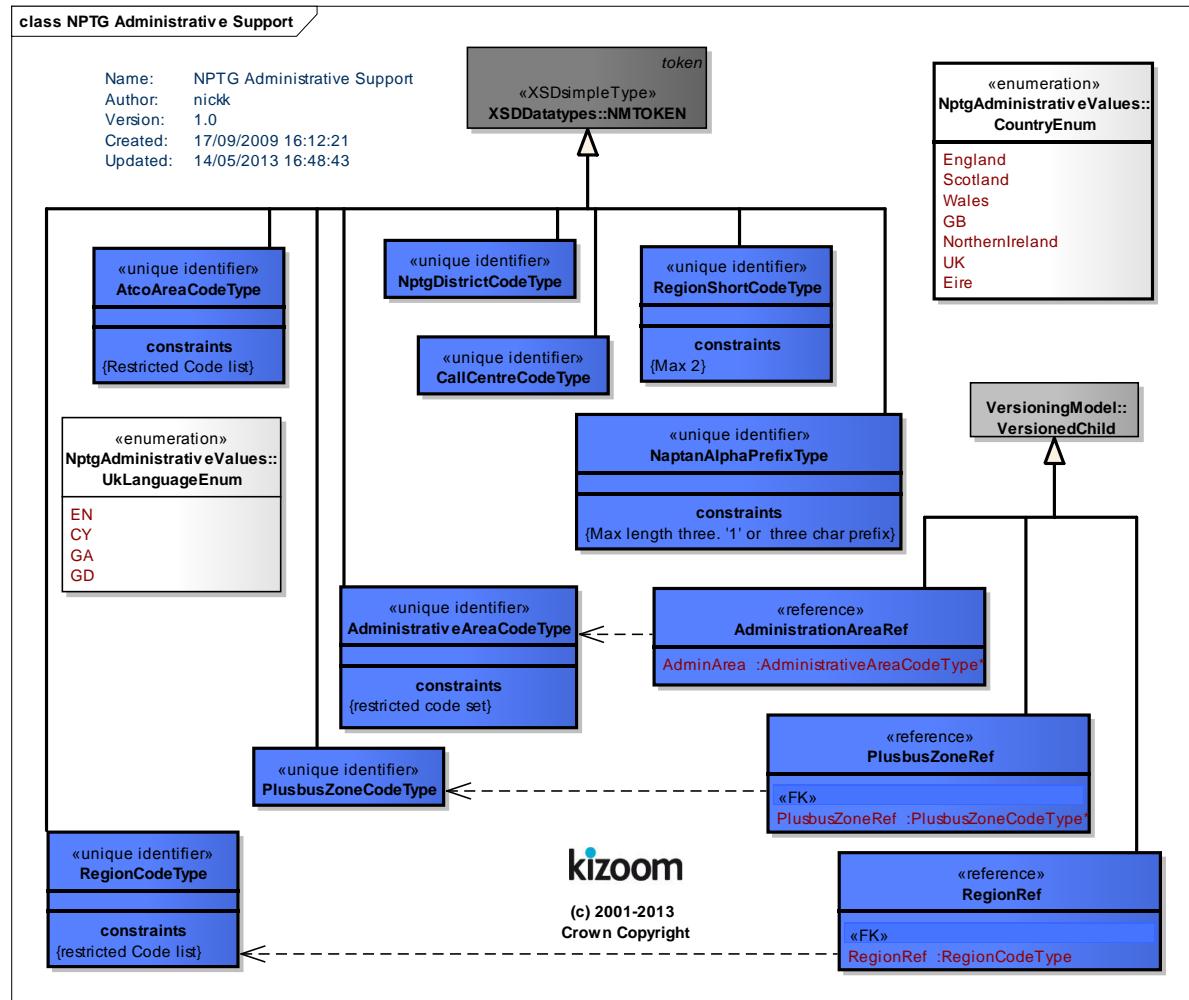
Figure 3-8 shows the data types used in the locality elements in Figure 3-2 and elsewhere.



**Figure 3-8 – UML Diagram of Locality Data types**

### 3.1.3.4NPTG Administrative Data Types

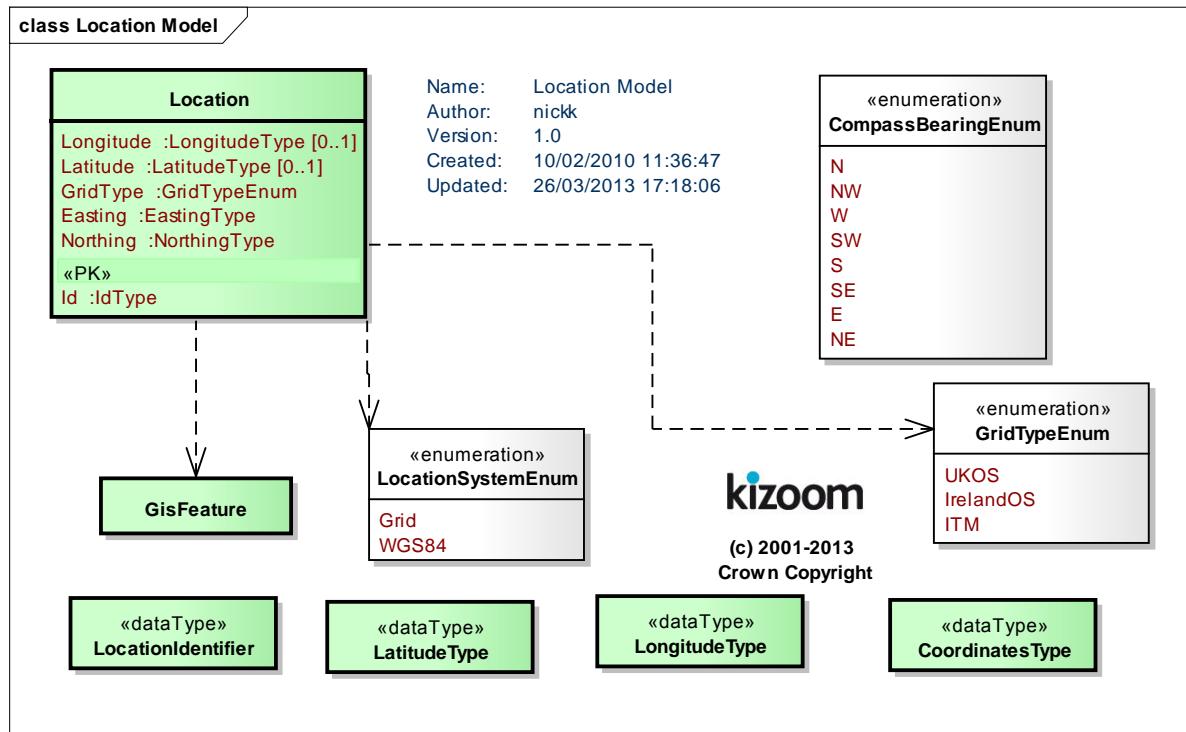
Figure 3-9 shows the data types used in the administrative elements in Figure 3-5 and elsewhere.



**Figure 3-9 – UML Diagram of Administrative Data types**

### 3.1.3.5 NaPT Location Data Types

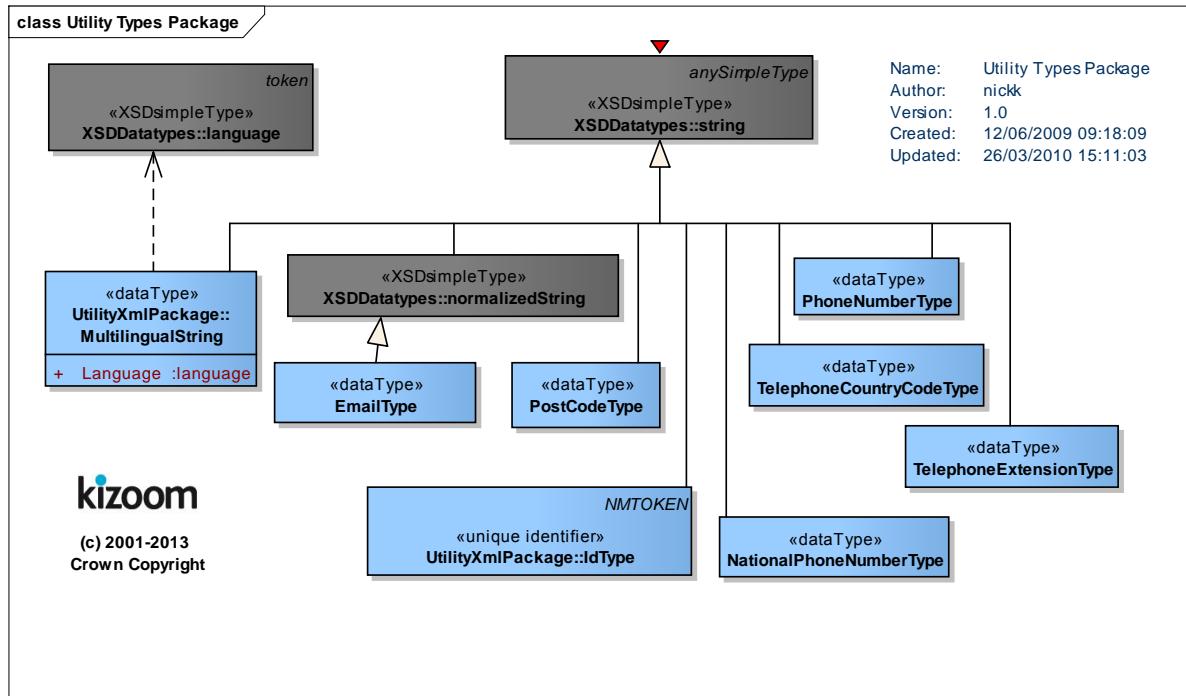
Figure 3-10 shows the reusable **Location** data types used for a geospatial point in Figure 3-5 and elsewhere.



**Figure 3-10 – UML Diagram of Location Data Types**

### 3.1.3.6 Utility Data Types

Figure 3-12 shows the reusable Address data types used in *Figure 3-5* and elsewhere.

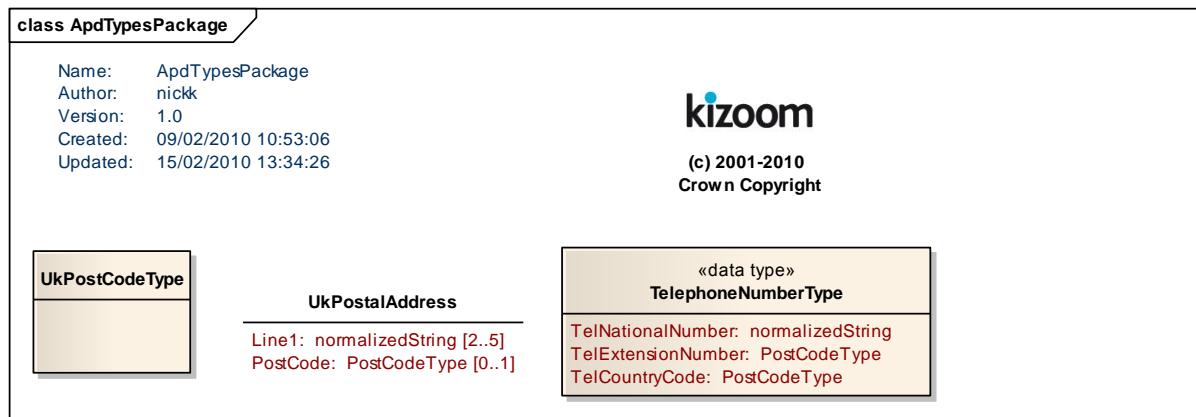


**Figure 3-11 – UML Diagram of NaPT Utility Data Types**

### 3.1.3.7 APD Data Types

### 3.1.3.8 Address Data Types

Figure 3-12 shows the reusable **Address** data types used in *Figure 3-5* and elsewhere.



**Figure 3-12 – UML Diagram of APD Address Data Types**

### 3.2 Populating the National Gazetteer

The *NPTG* provides a structured model for describing the topography of the UK in a format that is useful for computer systems. When entering data into the *NPTG* model, care needs to be taken in choosing, naming and grouping localities so as to populate the model in a way that accurately reflects the way real-world places are named and perceived by humans, and also so that the relationships between them are useful for the intended computational purposes.

#### 3.2.1 Choosing Administrative Areas

There should be an *NPTG* administrative area for every English, Scottish and Welsh County, including metropolitan counties such as Greater London and Greater Manchester, and every Shire Unitary authority. These are the country's local transport authorities.

- There are currently 146 administrative areas.
- There are also two special administrative areas for National Rail and National Coach Data.

Names of Administrative Areas should be unique within the *NPTG* database. A short name can be associated with each area, to use when distinguishing localities from different areas that have the same name.

An ampersand symbol ('&') should be used in the naming of administrative areas in preference to the word "and", so that the word "and" can be used in downstream systems to logically connect two or more such administrative areas without ambiguity (for example. '*Bath & North East Somerset*' and '*North Somerset*').

#### 3.2.2 Choosing NPTG Districts

There should be an *NPTG* District for the following:

- Every Metropolitan District Council.
- Every Shire District Council.

The name should be the same as the local authority name, without the descriptive suffix (i.e. 'Council', 'District Council', 'Borough Council', 'City Council', 'London Borough of' etc). For example, '*Eden*' for '*Eden District Council*', '*Haringey*' for '*London Borough of Haringey*', '*Manchester*' for '*Manchester City Council*'.

Those Administrative Areas which are shire unitary authorities do not have a district. There are currently 274 *NPTG* Districts. Names of Districts should be unique within the UK.

#### 3.2.3 Choosing & Grouping NPTG Localities

##### 3.2.3.1 Localities

A locality represents a topographic area, that is, a named settlement. There should be a locality for:

- Every City.
- Every Town.
- Every Suburb or District.
- Every Village.
- Every Hamlet.

##### 3.2.3.2 Town and City Centre Localities

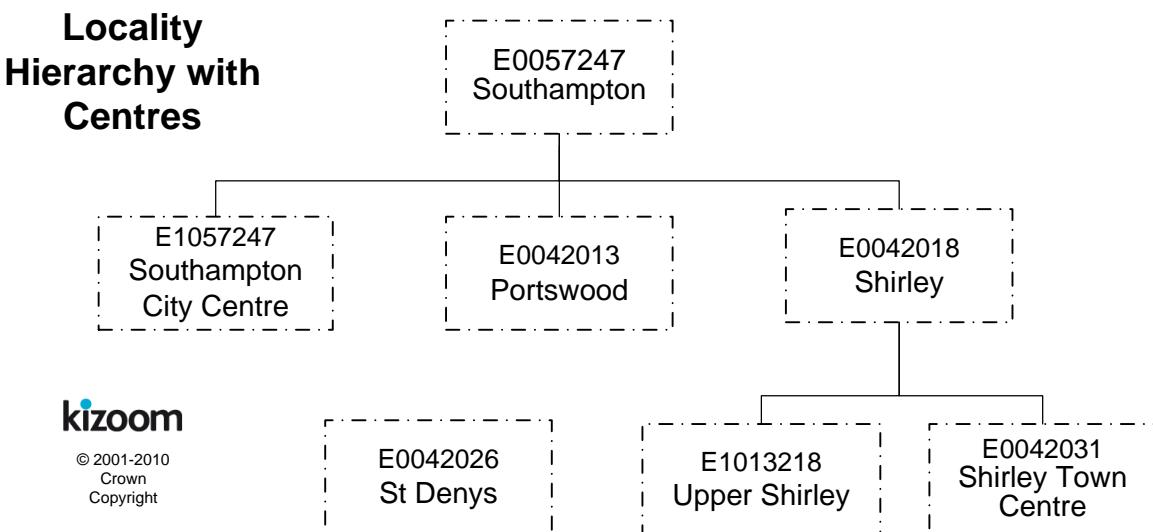
You may choose also to add localities to represent specifically the centre or other important area of a town or city: in this case the city name should be the qualifier. For example, '*Southampton City Centre*' and '*Shirley Town Centre*' in the example in *Figure 3-13*. '*Town Centre*' or '*City Centre*' is preferred as a naming phrase rather than simply '*Centre*' so as to distinguish the locality from those Sports and Leisure Centres and other Points of Interest that have *Centre* in their name (e.g. '*The Sobell Centre*'). Creation of a settlement centre area is recommended for settlements that themselves have child localities within them.

### 3.2.3.3 Places of Interest versus Localities

Localities should not normally be created for places that are simply points of interest, for example '*Wembley Stadium*'; data for such places will be covered by a Point of Interest from a point of interest database such as *PointX*. However, it may occasionally be appropriate to add a locality for a point of interest that is also in effect a destination locality (i.e. with potentially many otherwise unrelated access points), not covered by other locality definitions, in particular if no part of the name overlaps with the locality. Thus, for example, one might include '*Blenheim Palace*' which is in *Woodstock*, but exclude '*Harlech Castle*', because '*Harlech*' will already exist as a locality, and will appear in search results.

### 3.2.3.4 Locality Hierarchies

Lower level localities should have their parent locality specified. Typically three levels of hierarchy should suffice for most localities. For example, *Figure 3-13* shows a hierarchy for part of the *Southampton* area.



**Figure 3-13 – Example: Locality Hierarchy**

### 3.2.4 Naming NPTG Localities

Where there are two places with the same name within the UK, you should set the '**Qualifier**' property of the *NPTG* locality, so that the fully qualified name of each locality is unique within the UK. For example, '*Gillingham (Kent)*' and '*Gillingham (Dorset)*' are both named '*Gillingham*', but have different qualifiers – '*Kent*' and '*Dorset*' respectively. When appropriate, journey planners and other applications will append the qualifier to the locality name so as to distinguish the two instances.

For example *Table 3-1* shows how names might be derived for two different '*Gillingham*' instances.

Locality Name	Qualifier	Qualified Name - Derived
<i>Gillingham</i>	<i>Kent</i>	<i>Gillingham (Kent).</i>
<i>Gillingham</i>	<i>Dorset</i>	<i>Gillingham (Dorset).</i>

**Table 3-1 – Example of Qualified Locality Names**

#### 3.2.4.1 General Rules for the Names of NPTG Localities

The following general rules should be applied to naming *NPTG* localities:

- **Capitalization:** The preferred style of locality names, in *NPTG* is ‘title case’, that is, lower case with the first letter of each significant word in upper case, for example, ‘*Milton Keynes*’, ‘*Up-Mudford*’. Prepositions and articles within a name should be in lower case; ‘*Cley-next-the-Sea*’, **not** ‘*Cley Next The Sea*’. Similarly; ‘*Isle of Man*’, ‘*Slyne-with-Hest*’, ‘*Kirkby-in-Furness*’. Prepositions and articles derived from Latin or other languages should not be capitalised either; ‘*St George’s-super-Ely*’, ‘*Poulton-le-Fylde*’. Additional considerations apply to the capitalisation of Welsh names to follow preferred Welsh usage.
- **Character Set:** Only uppercase and lower case letters should be used in locality names. Accented characters are permitted. Hyphens may be used within names, for example ‘*Hutton-le-Hole*’, as may apostrophes, for example ‘*St Margarets*’ and ampersands, for example ‘*Bat & Ball*’.
  - Specifically the use of digits, non-alphabetic characters, and any punctuation characters other than apostrophes and hyphens should be avoided in common names and locality names. Numbers should be spelt out e.g. ‘*Seven Sisters*’, **not** ‘*7 Sisters*’. Certain characters are forbidden in names by the *NaPTAN* schema; in particular commas and the other characters in *Table 3-2* should **not** be used as their use in a *NaPTAN* document will render it invalid.

Character	Name	Why character is reserved.
,	Comma	Used as separator for qualifier
[	Left Square Bracket	Used to format output
]	Right Square Bracket	Used to format output
{	Left Brace	Used to format output
}	Right Brace	Used to format output
^	Caret	Inappropriate
=	Equals	Inappropriate
@	at	Inappropriate
:	colon	May be used to format output
;	semicolon	May be used to format output
#	hash	Input expression
\$	Dollar	Input expression
£	Pound	Inappropriate
?	Question mark	Inappropriate mood
%	Percent	Input expression

**Table 3-2 – Characters that are invalid in NPTG & NaPTAN Place and Common Names**

- The use of certain other non-alphabetic characters is also strongly discouraged. . Further automatic validation to prevent the use of other inappropriate characters (see *Table 3-3*) may be added to the schema in future.

Character	Name	Why character is discouraged.
+	plus	Input expression
<	Left than	Used to format output
>	Greater than	Used to format output
«	Left guillemot	Used to format output
»	Right guillemot	Used to format output
\	Back slash	Better to use alternative name
/	Forward slash	Better to use alternative name
	at	Better to use alternative name
~	tilde	Inappropriate
_	underscore	Inappropriate
¬	hash	Input expression

**Table 3-3 – Characters Not To Be Used in NPTG & NaPTAN Place and Common Names**

- **Use of Brackets:** In *NaPTAN* 1.x round brackets were used to wrap a qualifier within a name, for example ‘*The Knap (Vale of Glamorgan)*’; in *NPTG* 2.x the qualifier should **not** be included in the locality name as it should be held separately in the **Qualifier** element. If it is needed in the presentation of a name it can be appended automatically and the brackets supplied by the formatter.
- **Use of Numbers:** Numbers should be written out as words, for example ‘*Seven Oaks*’, not ‘*7 Oaks*’.

- **Hyphenation:** Names should be hyphenated according to the preferred form of native usage. In British place names, hyphenation occurs in two circumstances:
  - Proper nouns, for example, '*Dudington-Fineshade*', '*Lawton-Gate*'. Hyphenation of two proper nouns is common in Welsh names, but rare in English place names – for a full list of the latter see *Table 3-4*.

Lawton-Gate	Pen-Alt	Duddington-Fineshade	Clachan-Seil
Up-Mudford	Pentre-Jack	Stowey-Sutton	Lower Maes-Coed
Knight-Ley	Thing-Hill	Norton-Radstock	Windy-Yett
Edge-End	Stone-Edge Batch	Banchory-Devenick	
Lane-End	Touchen-End	Buchanhaven-Catto	
Over-ross	Lockington-Hemington	Leochel-Cushnie	

**Table 3-4 – English Locality Names without any Preposition that are Hyphenated**

- Some British place names contain hyphenated prepositions and/or articles, for example '*Lilford-cum-Wigested*', '*Hinton-in-the-Hedges*', '*Laughton-en-le-Morthen*', '*Rhyd-y-Pandy*', '*Ty'n-twr*', '*Praze-an-Beeble*'. Where there is a choice of usage, the hyphenated form is preferred, according to the style of the Times Gazetteer. See *Table 3-5*.

lang	Preposition	Example	Hyphenate	FIX
	a	<i>Hook-a-Gate</i>	always	ok
	at	<i>Cross-at-Hand, Stratford atte Bowe</i>	always	ok
	by	<i>Middleton-by-Youlgreave</i>	always	fix
	cum	<i>Shingay-cum-Wendy, Haversham-cum-Little Linford</i>	always	fix
	de la	<i>Ashby-de-la-Zouch</i>	always	fix
	le, la, en le	<i>Poulton-le-Fylde, Laughton-en-le-Morthen, Sturton-le-Steeple</i>	always	fix
	In / In the	<i>Hinton-in-the-Hedges; Sandside (Kirby-in-Furness)</i> <i>St Just-in-Roseland</i>	always	
	next	<i>Wells-next-the-Sea</i>	always	
	of	<i>Isle of Dogs</i>	never	ok
	on / on the	<i>Frisby-on-the-Wreak, Northwood (Stoke-on--Trent), Lydford-on-Fosse</i>	by usage	
	sub	<i>Westbury-sub-Mendip</i>	always	fix
	super	<i>Weston-super-Mare</i>	always	fix
	the	<i>East-the-Water</i>	by usage	
	to	<i>Come-to-Good</i>	always	ok
	upon	<i>Oldbury-upon-Severn</i>	always	
	under	<i>Weston-under-Lizard</i>	always	
	up	<i>Up-Mudford</i>	always	ok
	with	<i>Slyne-with-Hest, Little Eccleston-with-Larbreck</i>	always	fix
cy	ar	<i>Llanfihangel-ar-Arth</i>	by usage	
cy	y	<i>Pant-y-Gog, Pen-bont-rhyd-y-beddau</i>	by usage	
cy	yr	<i>Ty'n-yr-eithin</i>	by usage	

**Table 3-5 – Hyphenation of Prepositions & Articles in NPTG Locality Names**

- **Use of Periods:** Full stops must not be used within names, for example use just 'St' rather than 'St.'; do not put a final period on names.
- **Use of Commas:** Commas must not be used within names, as commas are conventionally used by presentation programs to indicate the concatenation of discrete elements when formatting names.
- **Use of Hyphens:** Hyphens should be used around prepositions for example '*Kirkby-in-Furness*', **not** '*Kirkby in Furness*'. See section 3.5.11.1 below.
- **Use of Apostrophes:** Apostrophes should be used in line with the preferred local practice. For example, "*Robinson's End*", "*Cross o' th' Hands*", "*Tolleshunt D'Arcy*", "*Blo'norton*", "*Ty'n-y-groes*".
- **Use of Articles:** For those English place names that include the English definite article ('The') before the name, the article should be included in the locality name, before the proper noun, for example '*The Maltings*', **not** '*Maltings, The*'. An alternative name without the article may also be included; for example '*The Chuckery*', + '*Chuckery*', '*The Dunks*', + '*Dunks*', however most search engines will allow for the article.
- **Use of Ampersand:** '&' is preferred to 'and' for a conjunction, for example, '*Bat & Ball*' rather than '*Bat and Ball*'. However use of a conjunction in a locality name is usually an indication of a missing locality. A locality is a singular concept and any locality name that joins two or more separate designations should be broken down into the two or more component

localities which contain an Ampersand ('&') or the word "and" should be reviewed and revised to remove the use of the conjunction.

- **Use of Abbreviations:** Abbreviations should be avoided in locality names, for example 'Great Missenden' and **not** 'Gt Missenden' unless length limitations require their use (Location names in the NPTG database can be up to 48 characters long. Standard abbreviations are given in 15.4. Two exceptions to this are (i) the abbreviation for 'Saint', where 'St' should always be used, for example 'St Quivox', or 'Ilketshall St John'. (ii) the abbreviation 'nr' should be used rather than 'near', for instance 'Frogmore (near King's Walden)'.
- **Use of Acronyms:** Acronyms should not be separated by a period, for example. 'RAF', 'HQ', **not** 'R.A.F.', 'H.Q.'
- **Spacing:** Words should be single spaced, without leading or trailing blanks.
- **Use of Forward Slash** The uses of slash in locality names to denote alternatives is not acceptable – if there is an alternative then a separate record should be created to specify the alternative descriptor.

### 3.2.5 Geocoding NPTG Localities - Locations

Every NPTG locality has a set of spatial coordinates at 1m precision, specified by a **Location** element. The point should be in a public area at the 'business' centre of the locality on a road open to all traffic, and might correspond to the position of a particular centrally located PTAN.

NPTG supports the use of either or both Ordnance Survey grid location coordinates and WGS location coordinates. When submitting NPTG Localities, only OS grid coordinates need be given. The distributed NPTG localities will include both Grid (OS or ITM) and WGS 84 Coordinates.

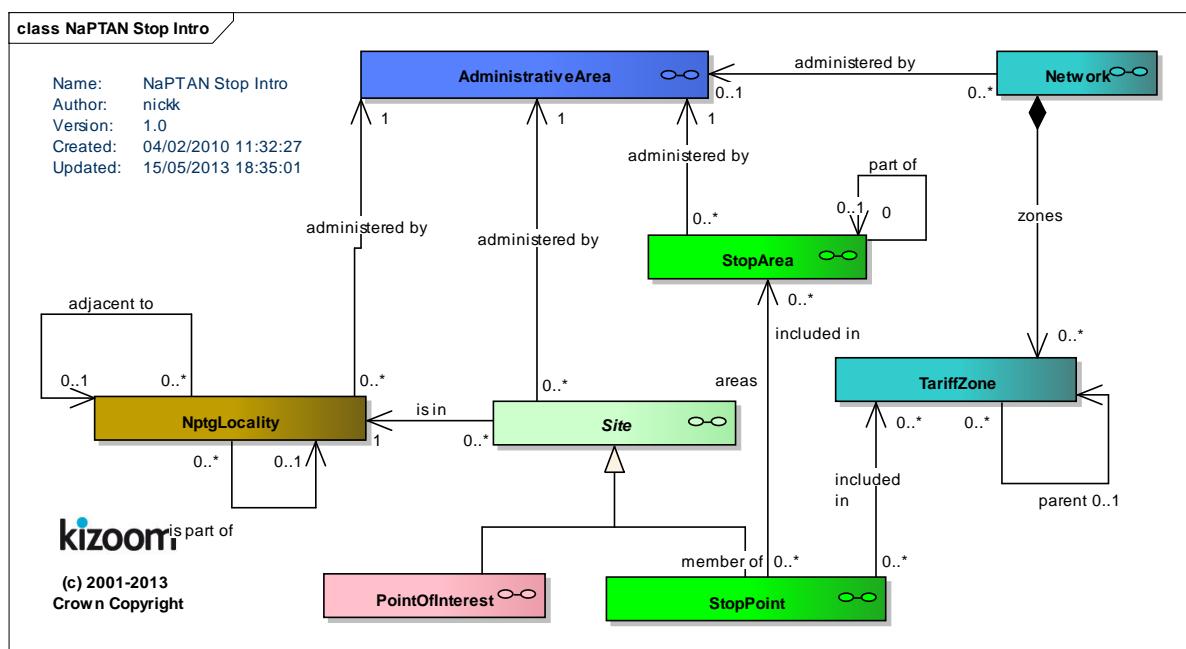
### 3.3 The NaPTAN Model

#### 3.3.1 Overview of NaPTAN Model

The *NaPTAN* schema builds on the *NPTG* schema, to define Public Transport Access nodes (i.e. stops) for all modes of transport.

Figure 3-14 shows, in UML class diagram notation, the main elements of the *NaPTAN* schema. The two fundamental entities of the *NaPTAN* schema are **StopPoint** and **StopArea**. These can both be associated with an **AdministrativeArea**. A **StopPoint** is associated with an **NptgLocality** which indicates the topographic place (village, town n city etc) where it is located.

A **StopPoint** may also be assigned to a TariffZone to indicate the fare zones to which it belongs. A set of **TariffZones** is grouped as a **Network**, i.e. “fare scheme”. For example, Zones 1 -9 in the TfL London metro system. *NaPTAN* can also be used to identify significant points of interest as a **PointOfInterest**. Both StopPoint and PointOfInterest are types of **Site**.



**Figure 3-14 – UML Diagram of primary NaPTAN elements**

Figure 3-15 elaborates, in UML class diagram notation, the main elements of the *NaPTAN* schema. A **StopPoint** represents a point of access to public transport, for any mode of travel – bus, rail, air, taxi, etc – including bus stops, stations, and ferry ports.

- The type of PTAN is described by a **StopClassification** – this is described further in the next section.
- The **StopPoint** is a specialisation of a **Site**.
- A **Site** is a general purpose description of a named location that has certain specific properties including a **Descriptor** element, which groups the textual elements used to describe and name the **Site** systematically. A **Site** may also have multiple **AlternativeDescriptor** instances by which it is known; alternate descriptors may also be used to provide bilingual names.
- Every **Site** has a **Place** element, which describes its **Location** (geocode) and other information about the locality in which it is situated.
  - Every **Site** is assigned to a primary **NptgLocality** element, which describes the settlement within which it is sited. The primary locality should always be the most specific available: for example in the hierarchy in Figure 3-13, a stop in ‘Upper

*'Shirley'* should use the more specific '*Upper Shirley*' rather than its parent '*Shirley*', or grandparent; '*Southampton*'.

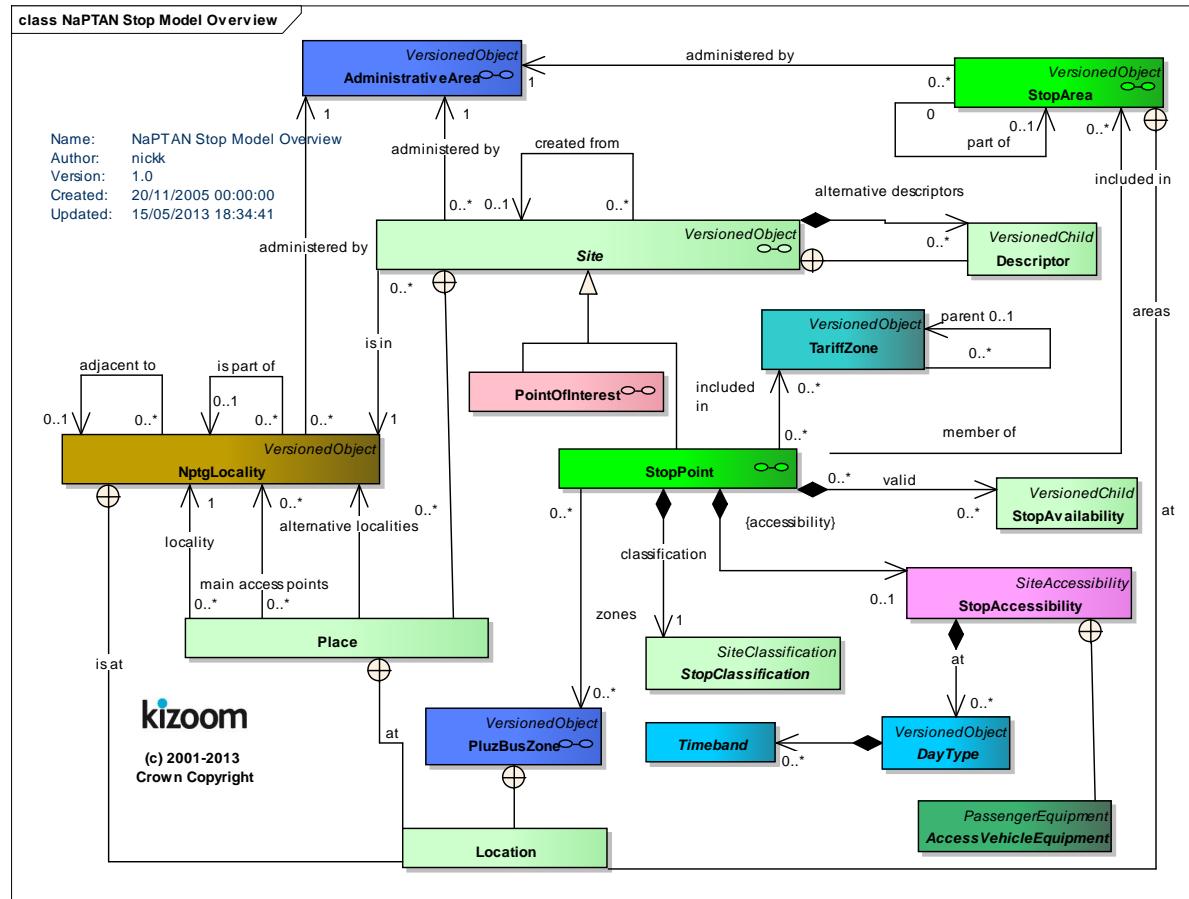
- A **Site** may optionally also be assigned to additional adjacent **NptgLocality** instances which are nearby. For flexible zones and for hail-and-ride sections which have an extended footprint (i.e. are not just single points), the stop should be assigned to a primary locality, but may also be associated with additional localities in which it lies, or which it serves by proximity.
- Those few **StopPoint** which represent the main points of access to public transport for a locality (a bus station, railway station, or port) may be assigned as a *Main Access point* for a locality in a separate association with the **NptgLocality** element to that of the primary locality. See separate concept of a **TrunkLocality** in Section 7.6.
- The accessibility of a stop may be described using a **StopAccessibility** element.
  - The accessibility may be conditioned on a **DayType**, for example *Mondays to Friday 08am to 6pm*.
  - The accessibility may involve designated **AccessVehicleEquipment**. See below.

A **PointOfInterest** is another specialisation of **Site** and represents a place of interest that people might want to travel to other than a stop point, for example a museum, park, or sports stadium.

- The type of POI is described by a **VenueClassification** – this is described further in the next section.

A **StopArea** represents a grouping of related stop points. Stop areas may themselves be grouped hierarchically into larger stop areas using an 'is part of' relationship.

- A **StopArea** has a **Location** (geocode) and other descriptive elements.
- Every **StopPoint** and **StopArea** must belong to an NPTG **AdministrativeArea**, which is responsible for managing it and its data. A **StopArea** may belong to a different **AdministrativeArea** from that of some of the stop points it contains.
- The **StopArea** is considered to be associated with all the NPTG localities (and alternative localities) of its member stops. Different stops in a given stop area may belong to different **NptgLocality** instances. Normally the stops of a stop area will belong to the same **NptgLocality**, but it is possible that the stops may be in different NPTG localities that are either adjacent to each other, or contained within one or the other (that is, hierarchically, related through an 'is part of' association, either directly or indirectly).



**Figure 3-15 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Model: Overview**

Figure 3-16 shows the same elements as in Figure 3-15, with further detail as to the organisational elements of the schema, and the properties of individual entities.

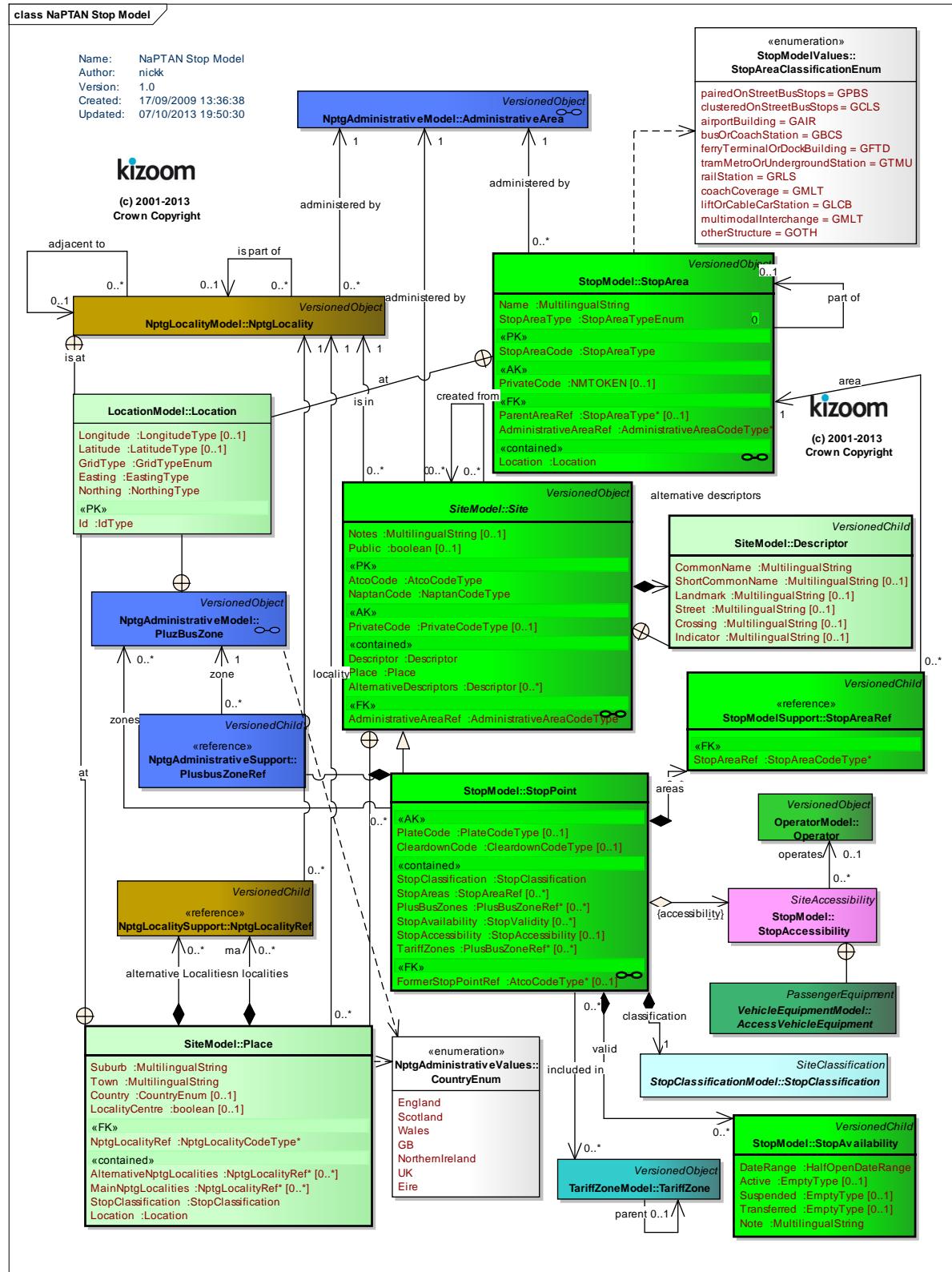


Figure 3-16 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Model: Detail

### 3.3.2 NaPTAN Stop Point & Stop Area Types

#### 3.3.2.1 Stop Point Types

There are a number of different types of **StopPoint** in the NaPTAN schema, some of which, for example bus stops, require additional details to be specified. *Figure 3-18* and *Figure 3-19* show, in UML class diagram notation, the NaPTAN stop type hierarchy, organised under the **StopClassification** element. Stops are organised into **OnStreet** and **OffStreet** types:

- **OffStreet** types represent stations and airports and other interchange facilities. For each mode of transport (**Air**, **Bus**, **Ferry**, **Metro** and **Rail**), an off-street stop point type may be either: Tram stops are also treated as stations.
  - An **Entrance** representing a physical point of access to the facility (the nature of this will depend on mode).
  - An **AccessArea**, that is the general air-side, dockside or platform interchange area. Note that a more detailed model of interchange structure is planned for the future that will refine this area.
  - A **Bay**, Gate or **Platform** element, used to represent the physical access point within the Interchange Building.
  - For bus and coach stations, a **VariableBay** can be used to indicate a stop point that is allocated to different bays at different times.

Additionally, optional **AnnotatedAirRef**, **AnnotatedCoachRef**, **AnnotatedRailRef**, **AnnotatedFerryRef** and **AnnotatedMetroRef** elements can be used to hold mode-specific codes to associate NaPTAN data with other reference systems.

- **OnStreet** types represent points on streets, grouped by transport mode (**Bus** and **Taxi**).
  - For **OnStreet / Bus** stop points (also covering coach), additional subelements may be required depending on type, for example **FlexibleZone** and **HailAndRideSection** instances describe details about flexible zone and hail and ride stops respectively.

**StopPoint** also has a single valued element, the **StopType**, which contains a three character code classifying the stop.

Figure 3-17 shows a summary of NaPTAN stop types.

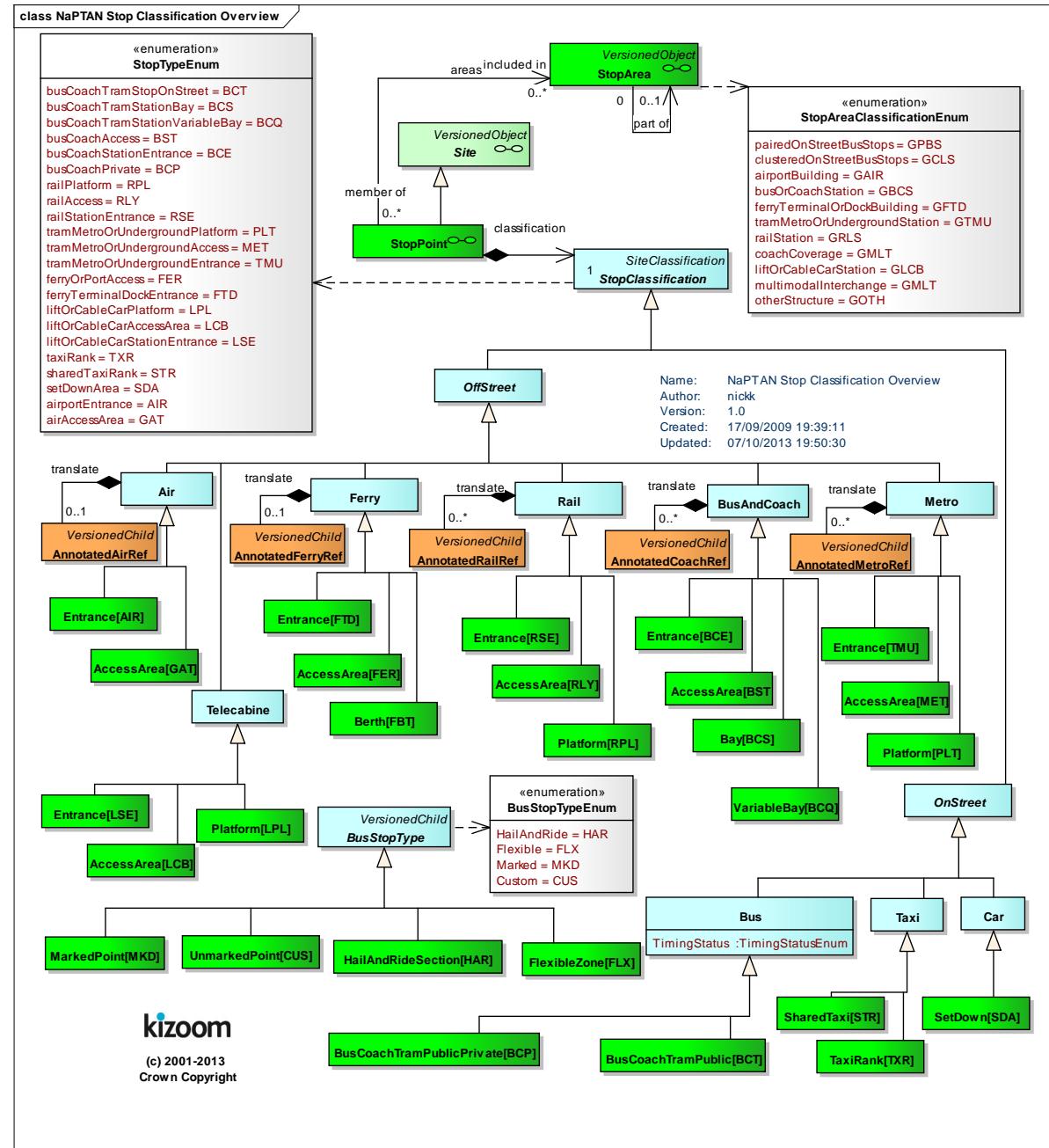


Figure 3-17 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Stop Types

### 3.3.2.2 Stop Area Types

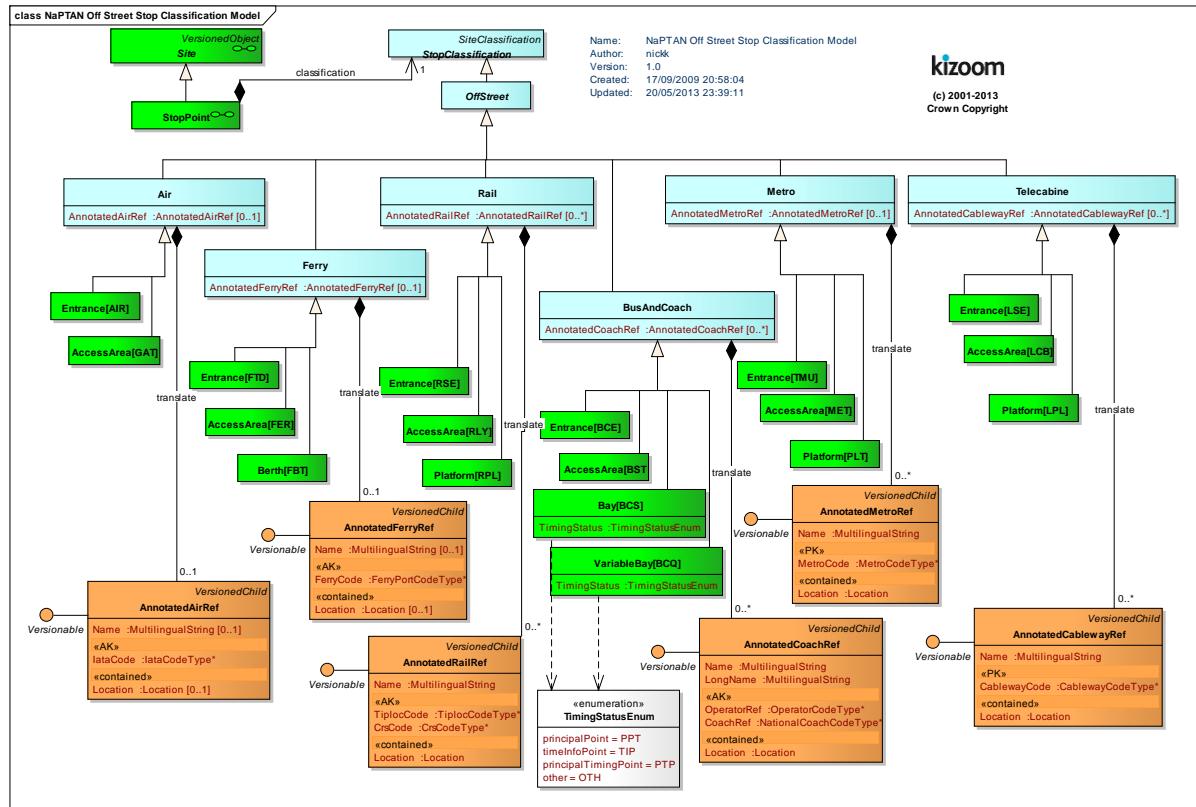
**StopArea** instances are also classified by transport mode – including some multimodal stop area types to combine stops of different modes.

- Each **StopArea** has a four character **StopAreaType** code, classifying the area type; stop points of a particular type may be associated with stop areas of particular types. *Table 3-6* shows the relationship between **StopPoint** classification elements (and **StopType** codes) and stop area classifications.

Stop Point Type							Stop Area
Group	Mode	Description	Entrance	Access Area	Bay / Pole	Sub Type	Primary Area
<i>Off Street</i>	<i>Air</i>	Airport	<i>AIR</i>	<i>GAT</i>		--	<i>GAIR</i>
	<i>Ferry</i>	Ferry / Port	<i>FTD</i>	<i>FER</i>	<i>FBT</i>	--	<i>GFTD</i>
	<i>Rail</i>	Rail Station	<i>RSE</i>	<i>RLY</i>	<i>RPL</i>	--	<i>GRLS</i>
	<i>Metro &amp; Tram</i>	Metro Station	<i>TMU</i>	<i>MET</i>	<i>PLT</i>	--	<i>GTMU</i>
	<i>Bus &amp; Coach</i>	Bus or Coach Station	<i>BCE</i>	<i>BST</i>	<i>BCQ</i>	<i>MKD</i>	<i>GBCS</i>
			-	-	<i>BCS</i>	<i>MKD</i>	
	<i>Tele-cabine</i>	Lift or Cable Car station (+NaPT v2.4)	<i>LSE</i>	<i>LCB</i>	<i>LPL</i>		<i>GLCB</i>
<i>On Street</i>	<i>Bus</i>	Bus Coach on Street	-	--	<i>BCT</i>	<i>MKD</i>	<i>GBPS, GCLS, GCCH</i>
					<i>BCT</i>	<i>CUS</i>	
					<i>BCT</i>	<i>HAR</i>	
					<i>BCT</i>	<i>FLX</i>	
	<i>Taxi</i>	Taxi Rank	<i>TXR</i>	--		--	--
	<i>Car</i>	Pick up and set down area	<i>SDA</i>	--		--	--

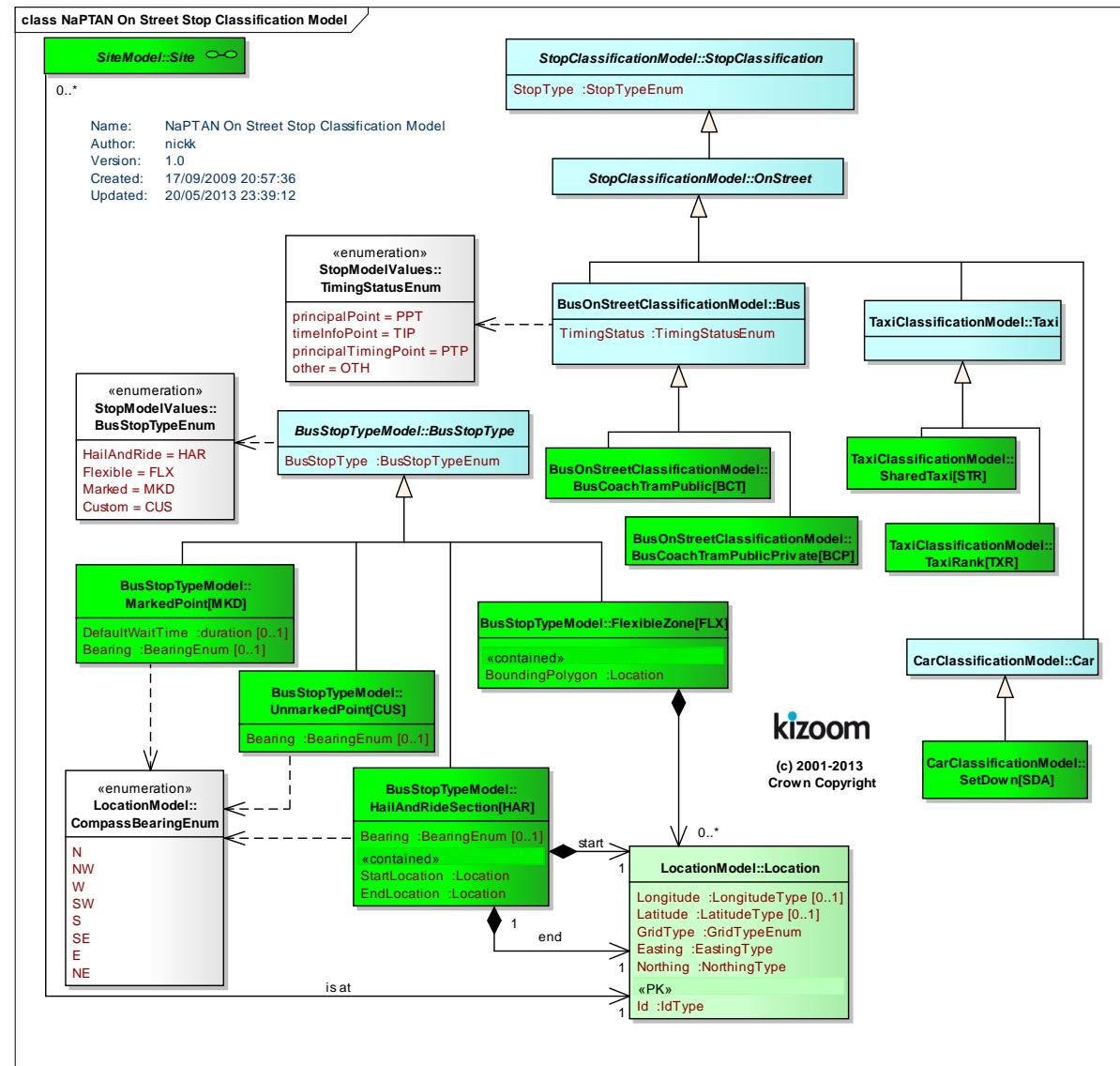
**Table 3-6 – Combining Stop Point & Stop Area Classifications**

Figure 3-18 shows further details for NaPTAN off-street stop types.



**Figure 3-18 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Off-Street Stop Point Types**

**Figure 3-19** shows further details for NaPTAN on-street stop types.



**Figure 3-19 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN On-Street Stop Point Types**

### 3.3.3 NaPTAN Stop Accessibility

The **StopAccessibility** element describes the accessibility properties for a stop (Figure 3-20). These may include

- Classification of the stop with an overall assessment for accessibility and a basic classification of its accessibility for wheel chairs, step free use, lift free use, escalator free use.
- The type of assistance needed to use the stop and the **DayTypes** and **Timebands** when it is available. Note that accessibility depends on the type of vehicle as well as the stop. For rail services this will typically be a fixed property of the stop. For bus services it may vary according to the vehicle type. A default indication can be given as to whether most services at the stop are accessible or not.
- Information about the **Operator** through which booking is done. . Accessibility booking details for an operator can be exchanged through the *TransXChange* schema.
- Information about access to vehicles or trains at the stop, for example the type of wheelchair allowed (pushed, motorized, mobility scooter etc). In addition some quantitative values on accessibility, such as gap to platform, number of steps, may also be captured.

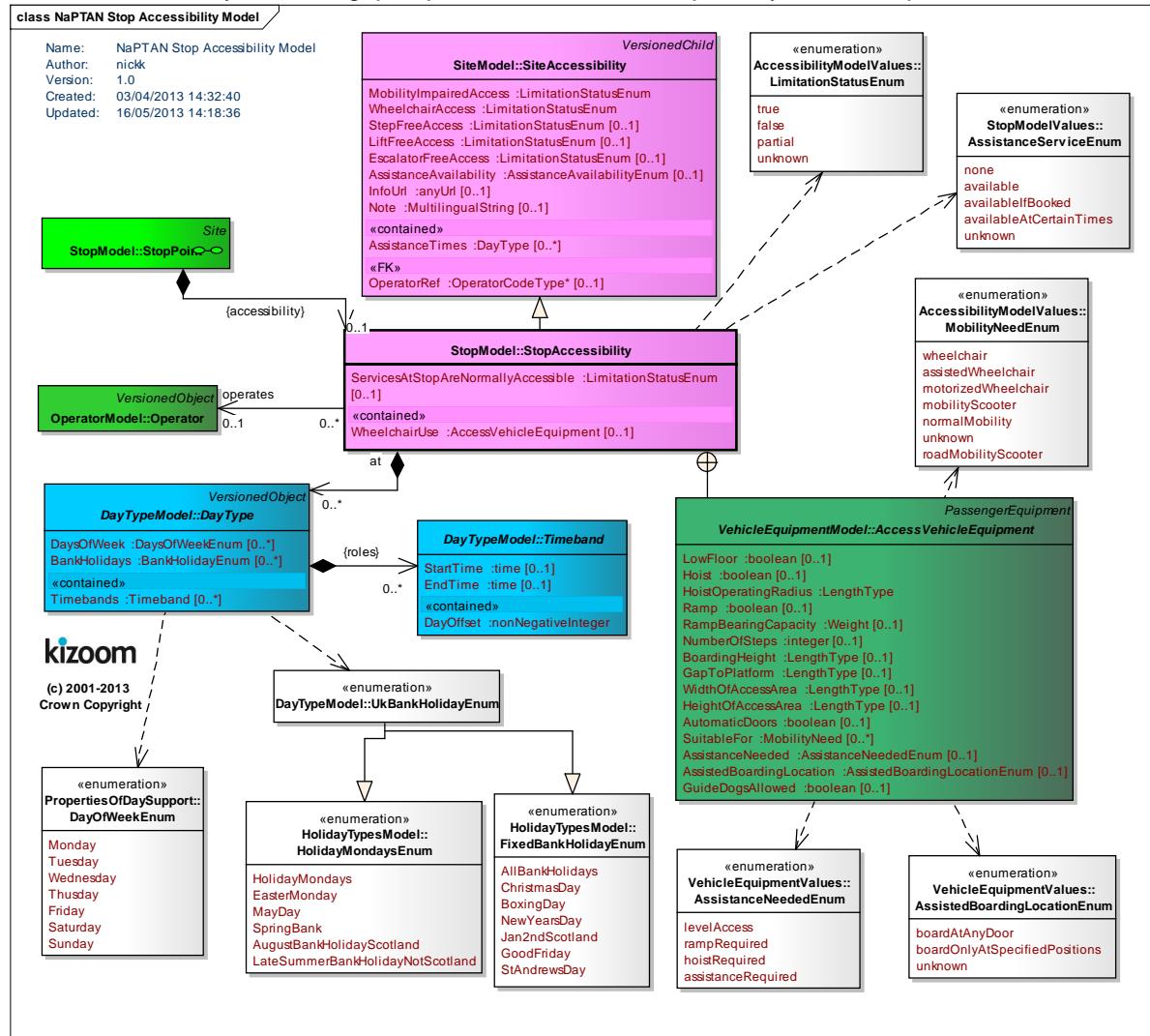


Figure 3-20 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN StopAccessibility

### 3.3.4 NaPTAN Networks and Tariff Zones

A **Network** defines a named Transport system for which **TariffZones** can be defined (Figure 3-21). **StopPoint** instances may be associated with one or more of these zones. Each **Network** is associated with an **Administration Area**. The area code '970' is reserved for centrally defined Networks.

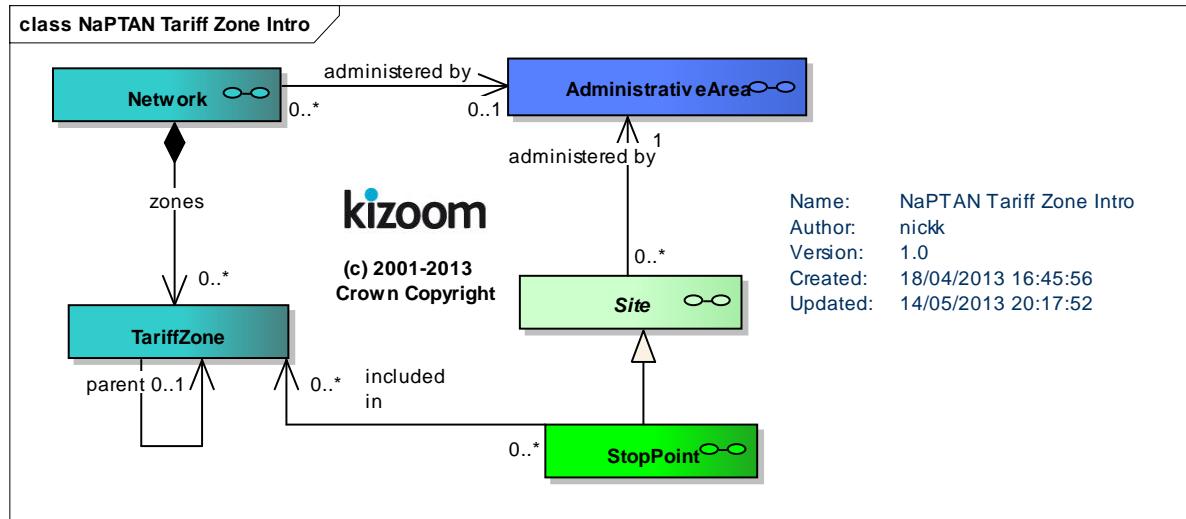


Figure 3-21 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN TariffZones - Overview

#### 3.3.4.1 NaPTAN Tariff Zone details

Figure 3-22 shows the properties of the **Network** and **TariffZone** elements.

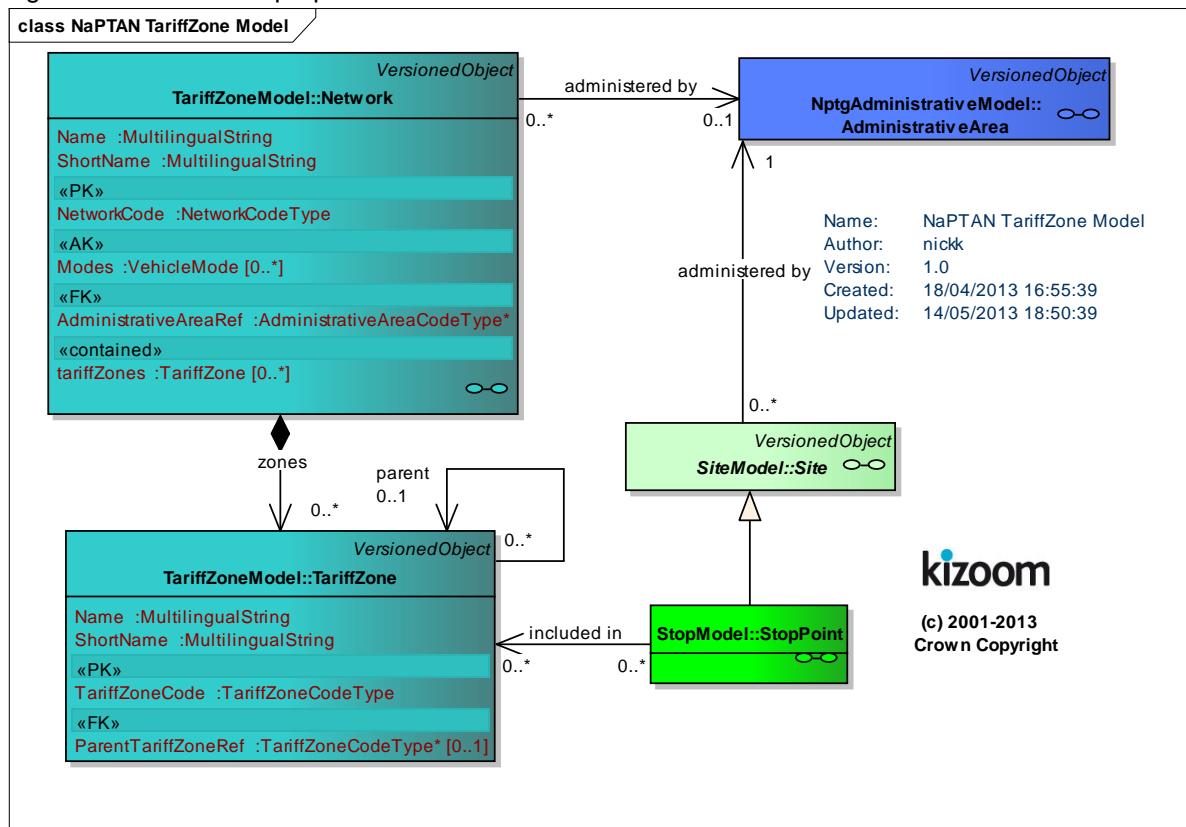
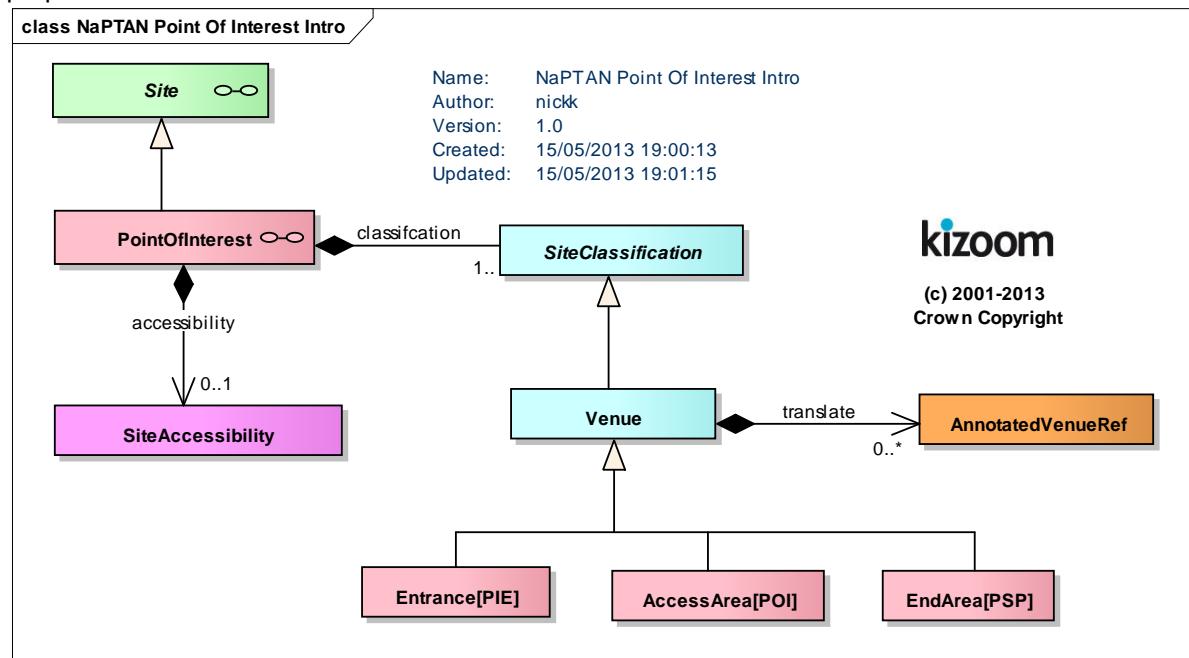


Figure 3-22 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN TariffZones – Details

### 3.3.1 NaPTAN Points Of Interest

A **Point of Interest** defines a named place to which people may wish to travel. It may have designated **Entrances** and destination points (**EndArea**) within it. It may also have **SiteAccessibility** properties.



**Figure 3-23 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN PointOfInterest - Overview**

### 3.3.2 NaPTAN Point Of Interest details

Figure 3-22 shows the properties of the **PointOfInterest** elements.

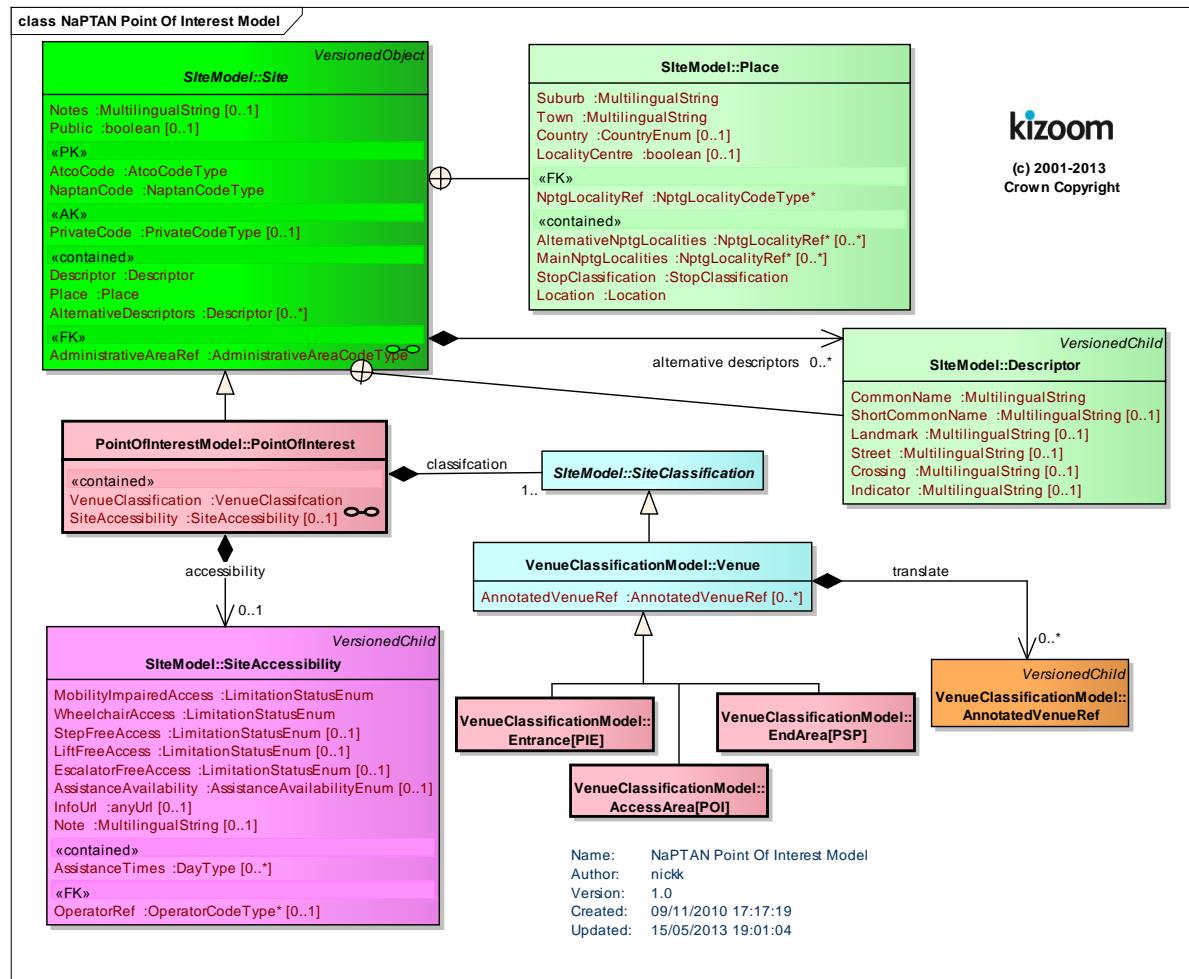


Figure 3-24 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN PointOfInterest - Details

### 3.3.2.1 PointOfInterest Types

**PointOfInterest** instances are classified by as either entrances (PIE) , Areas (POI) or end points (PSP).

## 3.4 NaPTAN Element Hierarchies

### 3.4.1.1 NaPTAN Stop Element Hierarchy

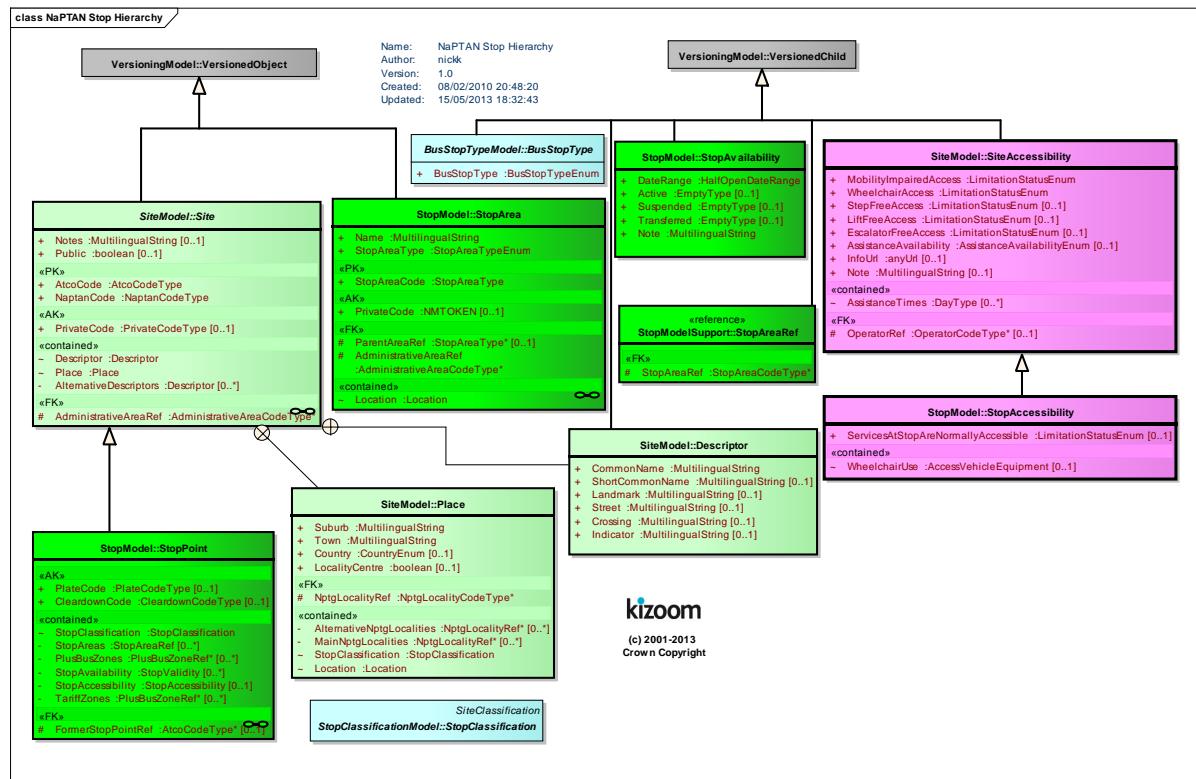
Figure 3-25 shows the Class hierarchy for the NaPTAN stop elements. **StopPoint & Stop Area** are versioned elements. **StopAvailability**, **StopAreaRef** & **Descriptor** are child elements.

# **Department for Transport**

## NaPTAN Schema User Guide

## Part I

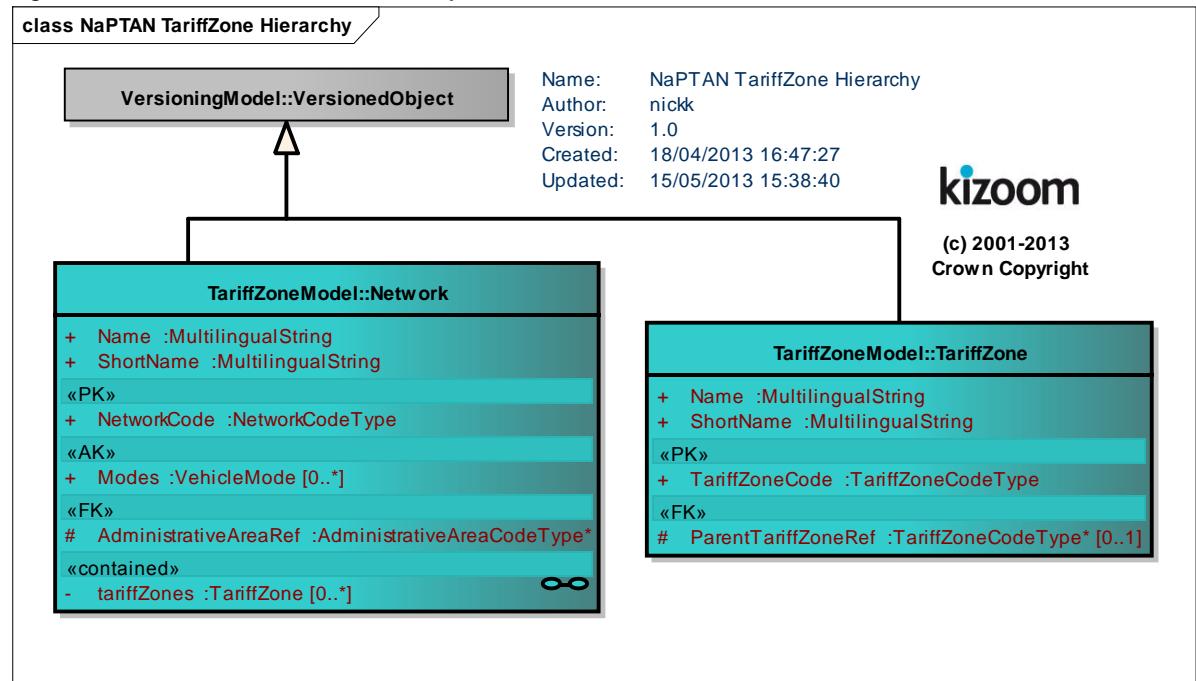
## Introduction and Overview



**Figure 3-25 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Stop Hierarchy**

### 3.4.1.2 NaPTAN TariffZone Hierarchy

Figure 3-25 shows the Class hierarchy for the NaPTAN elements. **Network & TariffZone**.



**Figure 3-26 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN TariffZone Hierarchy**

### 3.4.1.3 NaPTAN PointOfInterest Hierarchy

Figure 3-25 shows the Class hierarchy for the NaPTAN **PointOfInterest** elements.

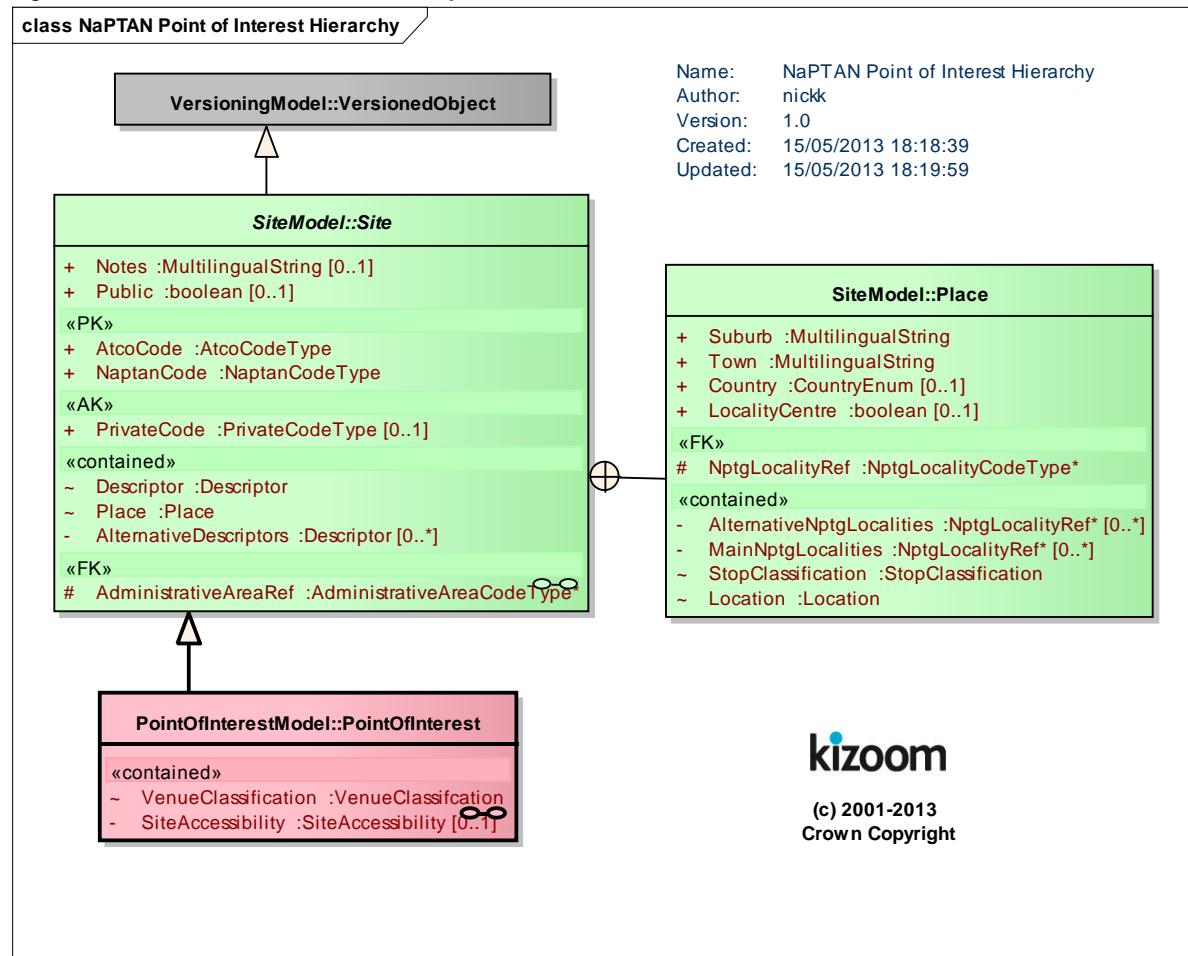
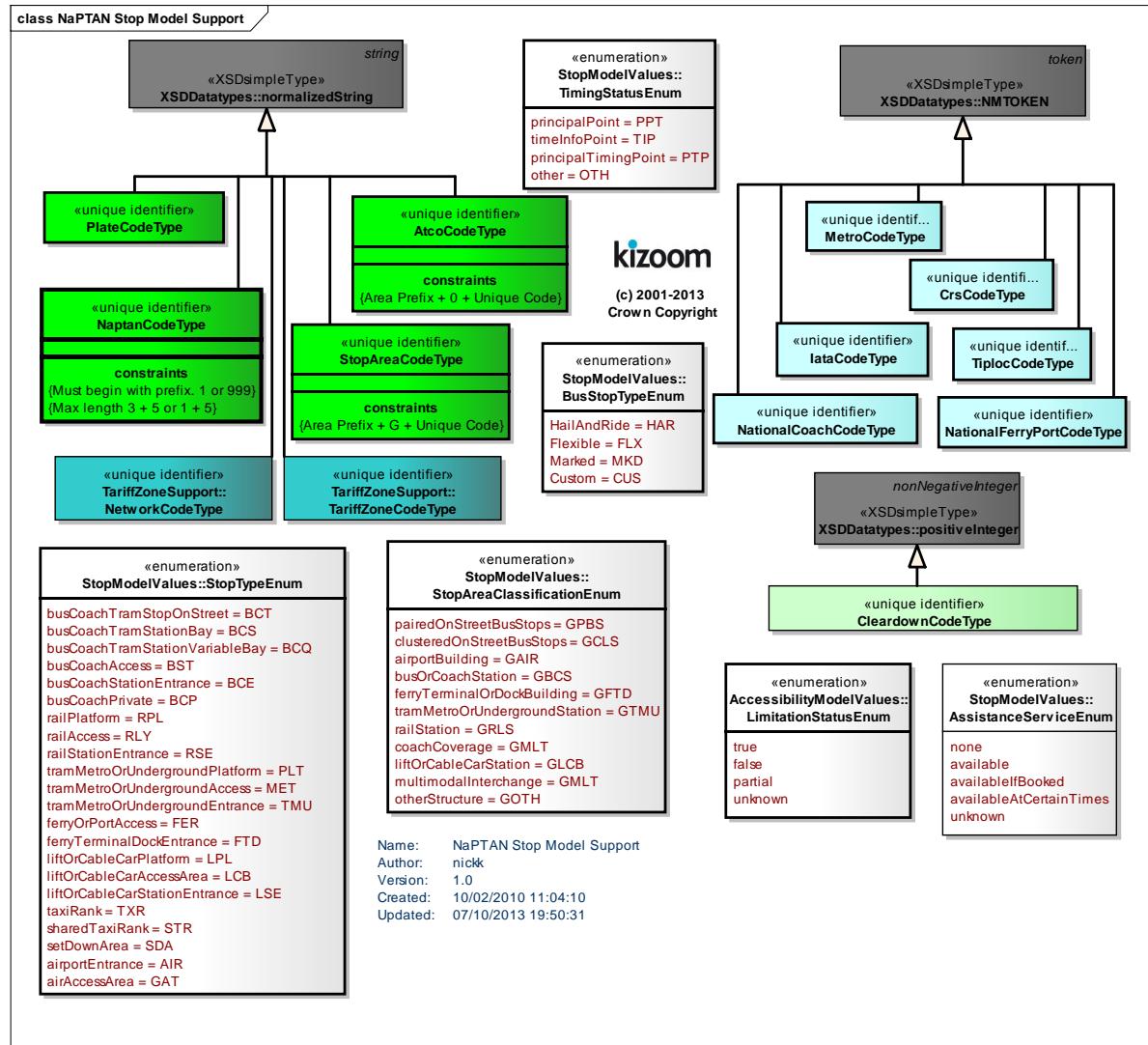


Figure 3-27 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN PointOfInterest Hierarchy

### 3.4.1.4 NaPTAN Data Types

Figure 3-28 shows the data types used in the *NaPTAN* elements that are additional to those of *NPTG*.



**Figure 3-28 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Data types**

### 3.5 Populating the NaPTAN Database

When entering data into the *NaPTAN* model, as for the National Gazetteer, care needs to be taken in choosing, naming and grouping stops and stop areas so as to populate the model in a way that accurately reflects the way real-world places are perceived by users, and so that the relationships described between them are useful for the intended computational purposes. Consideration should be given to how locality name and stop name complement each other, as they may often be used in combination. For example, when applications such as journey planners present lists of stop names for users to choose from, the locality name may be combined with the stop name to give an appropriate context within which to recognise the stop, e.g. to distinguish '*Cosham, High Street*' from '*Farnham, High Street*'. Furthermore, in order to simplify the choosing of destinations for users, for some applications' engines may aggregate a number of separate but physically related stops into a single 'place', using stop name, location and semantic information from the underlying *NaPTAN* data to derive the appropriate associations. See the examples in Chapter 8.3 for some illustrations.

Another consideration is who is responsible for allocating different types of stops. Most stops are allocated and managed strictly by the administrative area of the topographical region within which they lie.

- Certain types of stops, notably rail, metro, ferry and air access areas, are issued centrally by special administrative areas with a national scope, such as for National Rail and National Metro, as indicated by a **National** subelement on the Administrative Area - such areas also have AtcoCode values beginning with '9nn').
- Where the boundary goes down the middle of the road, an agreement may be made between neighbouring authorities that stops on both sides of the road will be controlled by a single authority, just as highway maintenance on that road is done normally by one of the two relevant authorities, by agreement.

#### 3.5.1 Choosing NaPTAN Points

*Table 3-6* above shows the various *NaPTAN* stop types.

On-Street PTANS are represented as points:

- For individual on-street **Bus Stops** (also **Coach Stops**), there should be a *NaPTAN Bus* stop point for every physical stop; even if a stop is the unmarked pair to another stop, it should always have its own separate *NaPTAN* identifier and definition (of type '*BCT*') located at its physical position.
    - **StopArea** elements are used to group individual poles into larger groupings such as pairings (of type '*GBPS*') and on-street clusters (of type '*GCLS*') (see below).
  - For **Coach Stops**, a **StopArea** of type '*GCCH*' can be used to associate the stop with Coach Service coverage. '*GCCH*' stop areas have a stop area code ('900G') and are allocated centrally..
  - For **Taxi Ranks**, there should be a *NaPTAN* stop point for the head of the taxi rank, of type **Taxi** ('*TXR*'), or **SharedTaxi** ('*STR*') if an official taxi sharing scheme operates from the rank.
- For stations, termini and other interchange facilities, there should be an individual *NaPTAN* stop point for each "entrance" from the public thoroughfare to the facility, and another **AccessArea** stop point instance for the "access side": All stops should have the same **CommonName**, with a different **Indicator** value to distinguish them if necessary.
- For **Airports**: For each terminal, there should be a *NaPTAN Entrance* point for each main area of check-in desks (of type '*AIR*'), and another single **AccessArea** point to represent the "air-side" (of type '*GAT*'). Entrance records are provided by the relevant Local Administrative Area.
    - A **StopArea** element (of type '*GAIR*') should be used to group the air entrances, access area, and any other connecting stop points such as taxi ranks and individual bus stops around the terminal.
    - The Access Area ('*GAT*') points will be provided centrally (they will have identifiers beginning with 920) and do not need to be provided by other administrative areas.

- For **Ferry Terminals and Ports**: There should be a *NaPTAN Entrance* point for the main entrance gate to the docks or ferry terminal (all of type 'FTD'), and each secondary entrance (also of type 'FTD'), and another single **AccessArea** (of type 'FER') point to represent the general area berths from which the ferries depart. Entrance records are provided by the relevant Local Administrative Area.
  - A **StopArea** element (of type 'GFTD') should be used to group the ferry entrances, access area, and also any other connecting stop points such as taxi ranks and individual bus stops.
- For **Rail Stations**: There should be a *NaPTAN Entrance* stop point for the main entrance to the station (of type 'RSE'), an additional stop point for each secondary entrance (also of type 'RSE'), and another to represent the "track side", that is the main area of public access to the platforms (of type 'RLY'). Entrance records are provided by the Local Administrative Area.
  - The main entrance should be the primary *NaPTAN* stop point, i.e. be encoded with a 0 as the last digit (Secondary entrances have non-zero digits). All entrances should indicate their nature in the indicator text e.g. 'main entrance', 'side entrance'.
  - The **AccessArea** ('RLY') and **RailPlatform** ('RPL') points will be provided centrally (they will have identifiers beginning with '910') and do not need to be provided by other administrative areas.
  - A **StopArea** element (of type 'GRLS'), provided centrally, should be used to group the rail entrances, access area, and any other connecting stop points such as taxi ranks and individual bus stops.
- For **Bus and Coach Stations**: There should be a *NaPTAN Entrance* point for the main entrance (of type 'BCE'), and each secondary entrance gate (also of type 'BCE'). There may be a single **AccessArea** point (of type 'BCQ') to represent the general bays from which the buses depart. There may additionally or instead also be one or more specific **Bay stop** points of (of type BCS) if individual poles are identified. All records for Bus and Coach Stations are provided by the Local Administrative Area.
  - A **StopArea** element (of type 'GBCS') should be used to group the station entrances, access area and any other connecting stop points such as taxi ranks and individual bus stops.
- For **Metro & Underground Stations**: There should be a *NaPTAN Entrance* point for the main entrance to the station (of type 'TMU'), and each secondary entrance (also of type 'TMU'), and another single **AccessArea** point to represent the "rail side", that is the main area of public access to the platforms (of type 'MET'). Entrance records are provided by the Local Administrative Area.
  - A **StopArea** element (of type 'GTMU') should be used to group the station entrances, access area, and any other connecting stop points such as taxi ranks and individual bus stops.
  - The **AccessArea** ('MET') and Metro **Platform** ('PLT') points will be gathered locally, but compiled and entered centrally.
- For **Tram Stops** Tram stops are treated as stations. There should be a *NaPTAN PLT* stop point for every physical platform, located at its physical position. And a **PLT** stop to represent the pair.
- For **Telecabine** (Lift & Cable Car Stations): (+NaPT v2.4)There should be a *NaPTAN Entrance* point for the main entrance to the station (of type 'LCE'), and each secondary entrance (also of type 'LCE'), and another single **AccessArea** point to represent the "lift side", that is the main area of public access to the platforms (of type 'LCB'). Entrance records are provided by the Local Administrative Area.
  - A **StopArea** element (of type 'GLCB') should be used to group the lift station entrances, access area, and any other connecting stop points such as taxi ranks and individual bus stops.
  - The **AccessArea** ('LCB') and Metro **Platform** ('LPL') points will be gathered locally, but compiled and entered centrally.

The NaPTAN 'Transport side' stops ('GAT', 'FER', 'RLY', 'MET', 'LCB' areas, and 'FBT', 'RPL' and 'PLT', 'LPL' access points) represent the boarding points to transport vehicles within the station or

interchange building. At present FTD can also be used in the absence of FBT elements at Ferry Terminals.

### 3.5.2 Allocating an AtcoCode for a NaPTAN Stop Point

The **AtcoCode** is intended to be unique for a given stop point within the UK. The number can be regarded as an arbitrary Universal Identifier, though in practice the prefix part is reserved to specific ranges so as to manage the distributed concurrent allocation of unique codes by different stakeholders. The **AtcoCode** has a general form of: *Database prefix [3] + Flag [1] + Local reference [up to 8 alphabetic characters]*, where:

1. The *Database prefix* is the **AtcoAreaCode** of the **AdministrativeArea** responsible for managing the stop (which includes special values for rail stations, coach locations, ferry ports and airports).
2. The *Flag* normally has a value of '0'. Historically '1' was used to encode stops belonging to another administrative area – this is not now needed so its use within NaPTAN 2 constitutes an error.
3. *Local reference* is an identifier of the stop, unique within the scope of the **AtcoAreaCode**.
  - o **Rail Station Entrances.** The designated form is 'AAA0XXXXXXn' where AAA comprises the **AtcoAreaCode**, '0' is a fixed flag, XXXXXX is the Network Rail TIPLOC code (generally alphabetic, capitalised, up to seven characters) for the station, and n is a zero character for the main entrance, and a sequence number for the other entrances. For example, '4000FARNHAM0', '4000FARNHAM1'.
  - o **Coach Station Entrances.** The preferred form of number for Coach station entrances is AAA0YYYYYn where is the **AtcoAreaCode** of the **AdministrativeArea** responsible for managing the stop, '0' is a fixed flag, YYYYY is the National Coach code (5 digit numeric) for the coach station, and n is a zero character for the main entrance and a sequence number for the other entrances.
  - o **Transport side Access Areas.** The stop point codes of the 'Transport side' stops (GAT, FER, MET, RLY, and FBT, RPL, PLT) are assigned centrally from special national prefixes ranges beginning with '9'. The numbers of all other points begin with a local area prefix. For example, '4000FARNHAM0'.
  - o **OnStreet Stops.** The preferred form of numbers for on-street stops is AAA0YYYYYYYY where AAA is the **AtcoAreaCode** of the **AdministrativeArea** responsible for managing the stop.'0' is a fixed flag. YYYYYYYY is a unique locally-allocated code of up to 8 alpha-numeric characters

### 3.5.3 Allocating NaPTAN (SMS) Codes for NaPTAN Stop Points

NaPTAN allows a short code to be specified for each stop, the **NaptanCode**. This is intended as a unique reference for use in public facing systems such as SMS and web query apps.

The NaPTAN short code is distinct from the ATCO code (the latter is in effect a system identifier). A NaptanCode can only be used once and cannot be reused.

#### 3.5.3.1 Mandatory NaPTAN Code features

In order to achieve nationwide uniqueness, a **NaptanCode** has a systematic structure.

- Codes are made up of an area prefix and a suffix, ensuring they are unique at a national level.
- Each Prefix is unique within the UK and assigned to a specific area.
- The prefixes are normally three characters (See table at end) but London is treated as a special case and uses a single digit - '1'.

Codes should be displayed with their prefixes so that they can be disambiguated on a national level.

## 3.5.3.2 Optional NaptanCode features

For usability on the keypad of a Mobile device, a number of additional constraints are recommended and Codes issued for most areas of the country follow these rules. However these are optional:

			Rationale
R1	Avoid repeating sequences of digits with a number, so that no two consecutive characters/digits require the same key	(e.g. 'leibaba', or ' <b>16747</b> ', but not 'leiaabbcc' or '1-22334').	Avoids common keying errors
R2	Avoid the use of '0' or '1' in numbers (except for the London prefix).	e.g. '472913', but <b>not</b> '101010'.	Avoids common keying errors and confusion between 0/O and 1/I
R3	Present codes as alpha8 [1] characters synonyms rather than numbers (this requires adherence to R2).  (In Scotland numeric rendering is generally used, in UK alpha8)	E.g. 234, 'eiadh', <i>rather than</i> 'lei234'.	Easier on a mixed keypad
R4	Meaningful letters are chosen for the prefix three digits that indicate area.	E.g. <i>Lei</i> =Leicester, <i>man</i> =Manchester etc.	More memorable
R5	Codes may be of variable length. But should be between five and seven characters including prefix		More memorable

**Table 3-7 – Rules for SMS codes**

1. The Alpha8 characters are the eight letters shown first on a mobile keypad (adgjmptw). Thus for example '234', 'adh', 'bfi' and 'ceg' (and any other permutation of abc + def + ghi) all encode the same number. The use of zero is avoided.

## 3.5.4 Choosing NaPTAN Stop Areas

The choice and naming of *NaPTAN* stop areas is closely related to the choice of stop points, and the names of related *NaPTAN* stop points and stop areas generally should be the same.

**StopArea** instances *should only be used to group stops that constitute a localised interchange in easy walking distance*, such as a bus bay, or a pair of opposite bus stops, or the various access points around a rail station. Stop areas must **not** be used to group stops in a wide area arbitrarily. For example, a stop area must **not** be used to create a general stop grouping for all the stops of a town centre; instead a *NPTG* locality for the town centre should be used, and one or more of the stop groups and/or stop points be associated with the *NPTG* locality.

As a general rule, a **StopArea** should not group stop points that are more than 250m apart.

Stop areas may be nested in hierarchies to build up a simple interchange description. Stop area names should correspond to the main stop points. For example, the '*Farnham Rail Station*' stop area might include subsidiary bus and stop areas, each containing various stop pairs near the station.

In principle there should be a stop area:

- For every pair of on-street bus poles (*GPBS*).
- For every cluster of on-street bus poles (*GCLS*).
- For every airport (*GAIR*).
- For every ferry terminal or port (*GFTD*).
- For every rail station (*GRLS*).
- For every bus or coach station (*GBCS*).
- For every metro station (*GTMU*).
- For every coach service association (*GCCH*).
- For every lift or cable car station service (*GLCB*).

The **StopArea** for the main travel mode can be used as a parent for the stop areas of subsidiary modes, for example the airport mode can contain a stop area for a rail station that serves the airport.

For a complex interchange, stop areas should be organised into a hierarchy. For example, an Airport might contain child stop areas for its Rail and Metro stations, and several for its bus stops. When assembling **StopArea** instances into a hierarchy, the parent area should be chosen using the relative rankings shown in *Table 3-8*.

	<b>Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Ranking</b>
Off Street	GAIR	Airport	1
	GFTD	Ferry / Port	2
	GRLS	Rail Station	3
	GTMU	Metro Station	4
	GBCS	Bus or Coach Station	5
	GLCB	Lift or Cable Car Station	6
	GCCH	Coach Stop	7
On Street	GCLS	On-street Bus / Coach stop cluster (more than two stops in the same general location).	8
	GPBS	On-street Bus/ Coach stop pair	9

**Table 3-8 – Precedence of StopArea Types**

→ Note that in many cases, additional **StopArea** instances may be inferred by automated processes that augment the manually created *NaPTAN* stop data, for example grouping stop points by (i) by spatial proximity of location, and/or (ii) semantic similarity of stop point, street name or other descriptor, together with (iii) transport mode. In practice these derived groupings may either be instantiated as actual **StopArea** instances in a database used by the journey planner, or be dynamically recomputed every time a search is made.

For some interchanges, notably rail stations, there may be multiple stop areas describing different parts of the same station (or two different encodings of the same station for historic reasons). If this is the case they should be organised hierarchically with one of them chosen as the “main” root station and others as subsidiary (i.e. **not** using circular references with each one being part of the other).

### 3.5.5 The Naming of Stop Points and Stop Areas

The allocation of effective names to public transport access points is an important aspect of *NaPTAN*'s purpose.

Whilst rail stations and airports generally have well-known names, some types of PTAN, in particular bus stops, do not always have obvious or intuitive names. The *NaPTAN* **StopPoint** element provides a number of ‘descriptor’ subelements for specifying text descriptions of stops, and *NaPTAN* sets guidelines for populating the elements in a consistent way that will result in useful name phrases in applications, i.e. that enable the use of text based searches to find the stop. See also the examples given later in Part III.

**StopPoint** descriptors may include:

- A **CommonName**. The simple name for the stop. ‘Simple’ means that qualifiers such as the locality or street name should not be included as a component part of the **CommonName** - See ‘Descriptor Atomicity’ below and further comments below. A street name by itself may

however be used as the complete simple **CommonName** of the stop, if that is the most appropriate concept (see "Street Style" later below). Thus for example, a **CommonName** of "*Opp St Mary's Upper Street Islington*" is non-conformant because it repeats data that is already contained by the other atomic descriptor elements.

- Assuming a **Landmark** style of naming - i.e. that "*St Mary's*" is the best simple name by which users can recognise the stop, a more conformant representation would be: **CommonName**: "*St Mary's*"; **Landmark**: "*St Mary's*"; **Indicator**: "*Opp*"; **Street** : "*Upper Street*"; **NptgLocality**: "*Islington*" – which contains all the information necessary to create a label of "*Opp St Mary's, Upper Street, Islington*" if needed, but also allows other presentation forms.
- Assuming a **Street** style of naming - i.e. that "*Upper Street*" is the best simple name, a more conformant representation would be: **CommonName**: "*Upper Street*"; **Landmark**: "*St Mary's*"; **Indicator**: "*Opp 27*"; **Street**: "*Upper Street*"; **NptgLocality**: "*Islington*". The nearest **Landmark** should be shown in the data; for example '*Red Lion Public House*'. The nearest cross-street (**Crossing**) may also be used as the **CommonName**, for example: '*Folly Lane*'.
- An **Indicator** phrase, giving the relationship of the stop to the entity used as the common name, for example 'o/s' i.e. outside, 'behind', etc. The **Landmark**, **Street** or **CommonName** should not be repeated in the **Indicator**, as this breaks the principle of descriptor 'atomicity' (see below). Thus, if the **CommonName** is '*Red Lion*', the **Indicator** should say just "o/s", and not '*Red Lion (o/s)*' or 'o/s *Red Lion*'. Stop numbers, Bay Numbers, etc are also relevant values for the **Indicator**.
- The name of the **Street** on which the stop point lies. The street should always be specified as it provides an alternative search value for finding the stop, and also can provide additional context with which to recognize the stop in stop finders.
- Where both a Point of Interest **Landmark** and a **Crossing** are useful for identifying the stop, the nearest intersection may be given separately using the **Crossing** element.

Additional elements useful for describing the stop include:

- The compass **Bearing** towards which the vehicle is pointing when proceeding down the street past the stop. For example: 'SW'.
- Other descriptive **Notes** about the stop point. These are not public facing – they provide information only to users of the database.

#### 3.5.5.1 Stop Name Uniqueness

*NaPTAN StopPoint* name phrases should be unique within their **NptgLocality** (including any parent or grandparent locality); that is the combination of **CommonName** and **Indicator** elements should be unique.

The descriptor elements that make up stop names should be chosen so that when combined as a 'name phrase', they make a meaningful name that uniquely identifies the stop. The following is one possible order of combination:

<locality> (locality qualifier), <common name> (<indicator>)

Table 3-9 shows some examples of preferred forms

CommonName	Indicator	Locality	Qualifier	Preferred full name
<i>Red Lion</i>	o/s	<i>Blacko</i>	-	<i>Blacko, Red Lion (o/s)</i>
<i>Health Centre</i>	opp	<i>Cosham</i>	-	<i>Cosham, Health Centre (opp)</i>
<i>Tilford Road</i>	-	<i>Farnham</i>	-	<i>Farnham, Tilford Road</i>
<i>Woolworths</i>	opp	<i>Gillingham</i>	Kent	<i>Gillingham (Kent), Woolworths (opp)</i>

Table 3-9 – Examples of Preferred Stop Names

#### 3.5.5.2 Descriptor 'Atomicity'

The different descriptor elements may be combined by applications into name phrases in different ways in different circumstances (see discussion in section 3.5.11.1). Thus the **Landmark**, **Street** and **Indicator** elements should avoid repeating the same proper nouns as content, as this results in verbose and unintelligible compound name phrases: such as 'o/s *Red Lion Red Lion (o/s)*'.

Similarly, common names should not include the **NptgLocality / Name** or **NptgLocality / Qualifier** name unnecessarily, as again this leads to unhelpful descriptive name phrases when the elements are combined. For example, unnecessary repetition might result in '*Gillingham (Kent), Woolworths Gillingham Kent (opp.)*'. In the case of rail stations and other termini, it is often the case that the locality name is included in the formally adopted common name (Table 3-10).

CommonName	Indicator	Locality	Qualifier	Preferred full name
Farnham Rail Station		Farnham	-	Farnham, Farnham Rail Station

**Table 3-10 – Example Preferred Form for Rail Station Names**

As an illustration, *Table 3-11* shows some example name elements for a stop; *Table 3-12* shows some of the different ways that an application might choose to create name phrases from the elements.

	Element	Value
NPTG Locality	<b>AdministrativeArea / ShortName:</b>	Lancs
	<b>NptgLocality / Name:</b>	Blacko
Stop Descriptors	<b>CommonName:</b>	Red Lion
	<b>Landmark:</b>	Red Lion
	<b>Indicator:</b>	Opp

**Table 3-11 – Example Name Elements**

Possible Derived Names
Red Lion
Red Lion (opp)
Blacko, Red Lion
Blacko (Lancs), Red Lion
Blacko, Red Lion (opp)
Blacko (Lancs), Red Lion (opp)
Gisburn Road, Red Lion
Gisburn Road, Red Lion (opp)
Blacko, Gisburn Road, Red Lion
Blacko (Lancs), Gisburn Road, Red Lion
Blacko, Gisburn Road, Red Lion (opp)
Blacko (Lancs), Gisburn Road, Red Lion (opp)
Red Lion, Blacko
Red Lion, Blacko (Lancs)
Red Lion (opp), Blacko
Red Lion (opp), Blacko (Lancs)
Red Lion, Gisburn Road, Blacko
Red Lion, Gisburn Road, Blacko (Lancs)
Red Lion (opp), Gisburn Road, Blacko
Red Lion (opp), Gisburn Road, Blacko (Lancs)

**Table 3-12 – Ways of Deriving Names from Descriptors**

### 3.5.6 Bus Stop Naming Styles

Where there is not an established name for a stop point, a new **CommonName** should be issued. When devising bus stop names, consideration should be given to the finding of the stop by name or partial name in computer-based stop finders; the choice of the best actual common name depends on how the stop name needs to be distinguished from other nearby stops, so that in practice any of the following naming styles may be appropriate:

- 1 **Locality Style:** Name the stop after the locality it serves, for example '*Little Gidding Centre*'. In some cases the actual stop name will be a generic name like *Town Centre*. Use of the locality name as a **CommonName** should generally be avoided, as it is not very specific or informative and does not necessarily help users locate the stop with the locality. It is better to use a landmark (e.g. "*The Poets Arms*") or crossing name (e.g. "*High Street*") within the locality. The **NptgLocality** name can,

- of course, always be associated with the stop and used in names if appropriate to the context (e.g. "The Poets Arms, Little Gidding").
- 2      **Landmark Style:** Name the stop after the landmark or point of interest it serves, for example 'British Museum', 'Town Centre', 'St Trinian's School', 'Boots', if necessary giving the relation to the landmark as the **Indicator**. For example, 'British Museum' + 'O/s'. The landmark may also be the street or crossing name, but a **Street** must also be given. This is a preferred style as it helps users relate stops to their surroundings.
- 3      If there is no obvious landmark, the name of a road on which the stop lies may be appropriate as long as there is only one set of stops on that road.
- 3.1     **Street Style:** If the road is short, and has only a single stop or pair of stops, in the street then the name of the road the stop is on may be appropriate as a **CommonName** if there is no other obvious style. This should be with an **Indicator** such as a house number, for example 'o/s 34'.
- 3.2     **Crossing Style:** For a longer road on which there are two or more pairs or clusters of stops, then common names based on the nearest cross-street or a landmark are to be preferred, without the name of the road on which they are located (as this is available if needed from the **Street**). The **Indicator** should be set to 'nr' or 'adj' for a stop on the same side of the road, 'opp' for a stop on the other side of the road. This is a preferred style as it helps users relate stops to their surroundings. The use of the **Crossing** rather than the **Street** name as the **CommonName** is preferable as it allows the future addition of more stops in the same street without ambiguity.
- 4      **Particular Style:** Give the stop a name that does not follow any of the **above styles** because of some other local usage: for example: 'Rail Replacement Services'. This approach should only be used in exceptional circumstances.

### 3.5.6.1 General Rules for the Names of Stop Points

The following general rules should be applied to stop Common Names and other textual stop descriptor elements:

- **Capitalization:** The preferred style of stop names, place names and street names in NaPTAN is 'title case', that is lower case with the first letter of each significant word in upper case, for example, 'Milton Keynes'. Prepositions and articles within a name should be in lower case 'Isle of Man', 'Hole-in-the-Wall Lying-in Hospital', 'Kirkby-in-Furness High Street', 'Cley-next-the-Sea', **not** 'Cley Next The Sea'. Prepositions and articles derived from Latin or other languages should not be capitalised either; 'St George's-super-Ely', 'Poulton-le-Fylde'.
- **Character Set:** Only uppercase and lower case letters should be used. Specifically the use of digits, non-alphabetic characters, and any punctuation characters other than apostrophes, hyphens and ampersands should be avoided in names. Numbers should be spelt out e.g. 'Seven Sisters', **not** '7 Sisters'. The characters in Table 3-2 must **not** be used as they are disallowed by the schema. The characters in Table 3-3 should not be used but are not currently excluded by the schema. Note that non-letter characters such as ampersand ('&') will need to be encoded as XML entities (e.g. &amp;) within XML content.
- **Hyphenation:** Names should be hyphenated according to the preferred form of usage by residents, for example, 'Dudington-Fineshade', 'Lawton-Gate'. Prepositions in some British place names are hyphenated, for example. 'Lilford-cum-Wigested', 'Hinton-In-the-Hedges', 'Laughton-en-le-Morthen', 'Rhyd-y-Pandy', 'Ty'n-twr'. Where there is a choice of usage the hyphenated form is preferred.
- **Use of Periods:** Full stops must not be used within names. For example, use just 'St' rather than 'St.'; do not put a final period on names.
- **Use of Commas:** Commas must not be used within names as they are conventionally used to indicate concatenation of elements when formatting names. See section 3.5.11.1 below.
- **Apostrophes:** Apostrophes should be used in accordance with the preferred local usage, and be consistent with the locality name. For example, "Robinson's end", "Cross o' th' Hands", "St Mary's", "Top o' th' Knowl High Street".
- **Indicator phrases:** Standard terms of relation should be used in the content of **Indicator**. See Table 3-13 for details of preferred values for **Indicator**.

Group	source	Indicator term
		normalised
<b>Relation</b> (should appear in front of common-name)	opposite	opp
	opp	
	outside	o/s
	o/s	
	adjacent	adj
	adj	
	near	nr
	nr	
	behind	
	inside	
	by	
	in	
	at	
	on	
	just before	
	just after	
	corner of	
<b>Description</b> (should appear after common-name)	corner	cnr
	cnr	
	drt	
	Stop	
	stance	
	stand	
	bay	
	platform	
	entrance	
	main entrance	
	side entrance	
	front entrance	
	back entrance	
	rear entrance	
	north entrance	N entrance
	east entrance	E entrance
	south entrance	S entrance
	west entrance	W entrance
	north east entrance	NE entrance
	NE entrance	
	north west entrance	NW entrance
	NW entrance	
	south east entrance	SE entrance
	SE entrance	
	south west entrance	SW entrance
	SW entrance	
	N entrance	
	E entrance	
	S entrance	
	W entrance	
	arrivals	
	departures	
	Northbound	N-bound
	N-bound	
	Southbound	S-bound
	S-bound	
	Eastbound	E-bound
	E-bound	
	Westbound	W-bound
	W-bound	
	NE-bound	
	NW-bound	
	SW-bound	
	SE-bound	

**Table 3-13 – Preferred Phrases to Use in Indicator**

The words “Stop”, “stand”, “stance”, “bay”, “platform”, “entrance” can be followed by an alphanumeric string to allow for Stop codes e.g. A, 1, A1, 1A, 23, FG, AB27, etc. with the numeric part limited to one or two digits and the alpha part to one or two characters either before or after the numeric – all in an unbroken string (of up to 4 characters).

Words which indicate a relationship (nr, opp, o/s, adj, at etc) can be followed by an alphanumeric string to allow for house numbers (e.g. opp 23, o/s 76a). In this case the numeric component should permit values to 9999, with or without a single following alpha character.

In output systems, stops which have an indicator in NaPTAN which does not match one of the preferred values (including those which do not have an indicator where one is required) should be given a normalised indicator based on the value of the bearing for the Stop – so in this situation a Stop with a bearing of “N” will have a normalised indicator of “N-bound”.

- **Use of Ampersand:** The ampersand character ‘&’ is preferred to the word ‘and’ as a conjunction, for example, ‘*Bat & Ball*’.
- **Use of Abbreviations:** Abbreviations should be avoided, for example ‘*Great Missenden*’ and **not** ‘*Gt Missenden*’, ‘*North Wootton*’ **not** ‘*N.Wootton*’. The exception to this is the prefix for ‘*Saint*’, where ‘*St*’ should always be used, without a full stop, for example ‘*St Ives*’, ‘*Ilketshall St John*’. Although names and other text descriptors in the NaPTAN database can be up to 48 characters long, it is preferable if they can be kept to less than 24 characters.
  - Where needed, standardised abbreviations should be used. See Appendix 15.4.
- **Spacing:** Words should be single spaced.
- **Use of forward Slash:** The uses of forward or backwards slashes or vertical bars in stop common names to denote alternatives must be avoided. Alternative names should be specified explicitly as separate descriptor entries.
- **Stop types :** A stop type should not be referred to in either the **CommonName** or the Indicator for a stop. If a stop is a Hail-and-Ride (HAR), an unmarked (CUS) or a flexible zone (FLX) stop type, then this information is available from the stop type field and it is for output systems to interpret this data and to add to its display (Hail-and-Ride), (unmarked) or (Demand Responsive Zone) as relevant or whatever else might be appropriate to the specific output system.

### 3.5.7 Naming Of Particular Types of Stop

#### 3.5.7.1 Naming of Rail Stations

Rail station names should include the suffix phrase ‘Rail Station’ in their names, for example, ‘*Ashwell & Morden Rail Station*’.

Rail station names should use the definitive names used on the National Rail Website <http://www.nationalrail.co.uk/>.

#### 3.5.7.2 Naming of Airports

Airport stops should have the word ‘Airport’ or ‘Terminal’ in their name, for example, ‘*Southampton Airport*'; ‘*Heathrow Terminal 1*' + ‘*London Heathrow Terminal 1*’.

Airport names should be the definitive IATA name. Other names may be specified as alternative names.

### 3.5.8 Naming of Stop Areas

Stop area names should be the same as the common names of the main stops in the stop area.

#### 3.5.9 The Classifying of Bus Stops and Other PTANs

The NaPTAN model provides a number of ways of classifying the stop:

- Whether the stop is *active* or *inactive*. See discussion in 11.2.6. The modes of transport it supports (bus, rail etc).
- For bus stop point there are additional attributes:
  - Whether the stop is marked or not (For example many rural bus stops are not).
  - Whether it is normally a timing point in a schedule.

#### 3.5.10 Associating Stop Points and Stop Areas with NPTG Localities

Every **StopPoint** has a primary **NptgLocality** within which it is situated. The *NPTG* locality specified for a stop point or stop area should be the most specific (i.e. the most precise as to area) available. For example, use a suburb of a city in preference to the whole city.

In addition **StopPoint** instances may also be associated with a number of alternative **NptgLocality** instances

Certain major **StopPoint** instances may further be associated with particular **NptgLocality** instances as the main stop points for the locality; for example, the rail stations. Main stop points are normally central, but do not have to be physically contained within the immediate locality – for example the rail station for Norwich is a main stop for the town, but is not located at the centre.

The **Town** and/or **Suburb** on the **Place** element of a **StopPoint** should only be specified if they differ from the names of the *NPTG* locality specified for the **StopPoint**. If they are the same, they will be derived automatically through the reference.

The association of stop areas with an **NptgLocality** is indirect – through the associations of the **StopPoint** instances within the **StopArea**. All stop points in a stop area should be associated with the same primary *NPTG* locality, and also have similar associations as the other stops for any alternative localities.

#### 3.5.11 Geocoding of Stop Points - Location

All NaPTAN **StopPoint** instances have a geocode, i.e. a spatial **Location** associated with them that specifies their map coordinates.

- The UK NaPTAN database uses OS Grid coordinates and data should be *submitted* geocoded with Grid coordinates. For Eire ITM grid may be used (Irish Transverse Mercator).
- The NaPTAN schema supports the exchange of stops with both WGS 84 and grid co-ordinates, and both are provided in the *distributed* data.

The usage of location depends on the stop point classification (see *Table 3-14*); for on-street points and off-street entrance points, the location should be an exact single point of the doorway or pole.

For logical stops representing a zone or access area, the location should be a central point chosen to give a sensible visualisation of the area on a map; and depending on type, may also be accompanied by a more detailed description of the coordinates, as for example for a hail and ride section.

Group		Type	Sub Type	Description	Shape	Location	
On Street	Bus	BCT,	MKD	On-street Bus / Coach Stop.	Point		2.0
			CUS	Custom / Unmarked stop	Point		2.0
			HAR	Hail & Ride zone.	Line	Centre of line	2.0
			FLX	Flexible Zone.	Polygon	Centre of area	2.0
	Taxi	BCS		Bus / Coach bay / stand / stance within Bus / Coach Stations.	Point		2.0
			TXR	Taxi Rank (head of).	Point		2.0
		STR		Shared Taxi Rank (head of	Point		2.0
	Car	SDA		Setdown and Pick up Area	Point	Centre of area	2.4

Part I

Introduction and Overview

<b>Off Street</b>	<b>Entrance</b>	<i>AIR</i>	Airport Entrance.	Point		2.0
		<i>FTD</i>	Ferry Terminal / Dock Entrance.	Point		2.0
		<i>TMU</i>	Tram / Metro / Underground Entrance.	Point		2.0
		<i>RSE</i>	Rail Station Entrance. ).	Point		2.0
		<i>BCE</i>	Bus / Coach Station Entrance.	Point		2.0
		<i>LCE</i>	liftOrCableCarStationEntrance	Point		2.4
	<b>Access Area</b>	<i>GAT</i>	Airport Interchange Area..	Point	Centre of area	2.0
		<i>BST</i>	Bus / Coach Station Interchange Area.	Point	Centre of area	2.0
		<i>FER</i>	Ferry or Port Interchange Area.	Point	Centre of area	2.0
		<i>MET</i>	Underground or Metro Interchange Area..	Point	Centre of area	2.0
		<i>RLY</i>	Railway Interchange Area. .	Point	Centre of area	2.0
		<i>LCB</i>	liftOrCableCarAccessArea	Point		2.4
	<b>Bay / Platform</b>	<i>FBT</i>	Ferry Terminal / Dock Berth.	Point		2.0
		<i>RPL</i>	Rail Platform.	Point		2.0
		<i>PLT</i>	Underground or Metro Interchange Platform..	Point		2.0
		<i>BCS</i>	Bus / Coach bay / stand / stance within Bus / Coach Stations.	Point		2.0
		<i>BCQ</i>	Bus / Coach Station Variable Bay.	Point		2.1
		<i>LPL</i>	liftOrCableCarPlatform	Point		2.4

**Table 3-14 – Stop Point Location Types**

#### 3.5.11.1 Considerations for Effective Naming of Stops in Journey Planners:

Some useful insight into the effective naming of stops can be obtained by considering how stop names are used in the software interfaces that interact with end users, as for example in a journey planner stop or place finder.

#### 3.5.11.2 Presentation of Stop Names in Disambiguation Lists

When displayed in lists in place finders, stop names will typically be prefixed by a locality name in order to provide users a context within which to recognise the common name, and to distinguish the stop name from other similar names. For example, if you enter '*High Street*' without a town name, there might be many possible candidates, so the locality may be added as a prefix, '*Oxford, High Street*'.

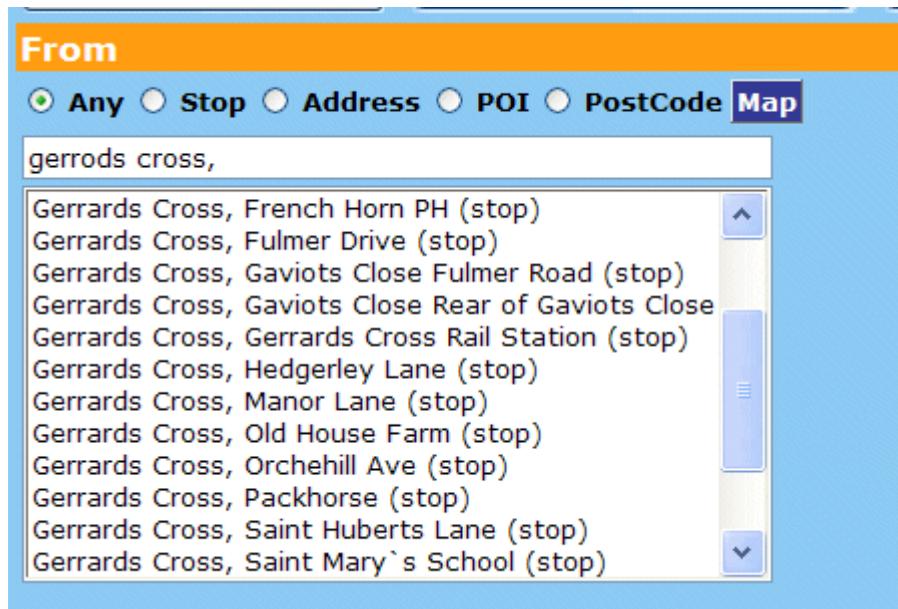
When displayed in a list in a user interface, disambiguated names will normally have a general format that is made up of several elements:

{NPTG Locality Name (+Optional Locality Qualifier)}+ {Stop Common Name} {Stop Indicator}

Note however, that different application user interfaces may vary the order in which they use to combine the elements into a 'name phrase' for presentation; for example the order 'Stop Name + Locality Name + Stop type' may also be used, or in other circumstance the locality name and/or qualifier may be omitted; for example on a map, where the context is already given.

*Figure 3-29* shows an example from the South East region journey planner using Locality Name + Stop Name for bus stop points (with 'stop' appended on the end. Thus for instance, the '**Packhorse StopPoint** in the **NptgLocality** '*Gerrards Cross*' would appear as: '*Gerrards Cross, Packhorse (stop)*'.

Note the example demonstrates the use of fuzzy phonetic matching to tolerate common types of spelling errors in the enquiry input ('gerrods cross').



From the SELTA region journey planner stop finder, Courtesy MDV

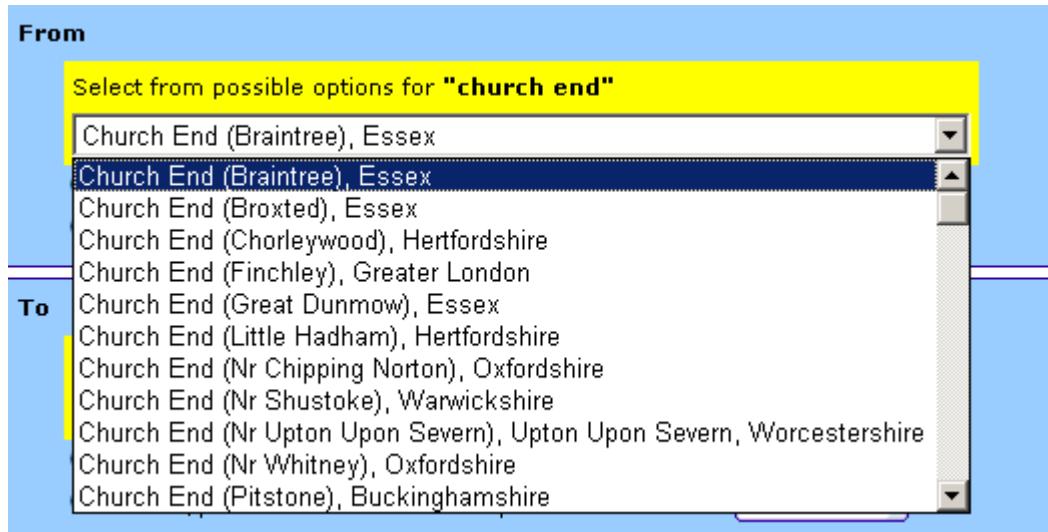
**Figure 3-29 – Example of Stop Names in a List**

The locality qualifier can be used in applications if the locality needs to be distinguished from other similarly named localities. For example, the '**Packhorse**' **StopPoint** in the **NptgLocality** 'Ashford' would appear as: 'Ashford (Kent), Packhorse (stop)'.

The use of hyphens can facilitate the intelligibility of names, for example 'Sutton-on-the-Forest, Huby' is slightly easier to read and recognise than 'Sutton on the Forest, Huby'.

The avoidance of embedded commas in names is especially important; 'On the Forest, Sutton, Huby' is considerably harder to interpret. Similarly trailing articles as in 'Dunks, The, High Street, The' give rise to difficulties.

As a further example, Figure 3-30 shows the results of using a place name of 'Church End' in the Transport Direct Portal Journey planner – the various instances are distinguished by both a qualifier and an administrative area.



From the Transport Direct Portal Journey Planner – Atos Origin.

**Figure 3-30 – Example of Ambiguous Place Names**

### 3.5.11.3 Matching of Stop Names by Stop & Location Finders

When processing input search strings, stop finders will generally:

- Use specific special characters as delimiters (for example comma to mark the end of a locality), or commands (for example '\*' for wildcard).
- Ignore extra spaces in names.
- Ignore hyphens and apostrophes.
- Ignore the difference between upper and lower case.
- Understand some common abbreviations.
- Support fuzzy and partial searches, and tolerate some common types of typing and spelling errors.

### 3.5.11.4 Implications for Stop Naming

We note some particular implications of the use of stop names in software user interfaces for the naming of stops:

- It is preferable if the stop common name does not repeat the locality name unnecessarily -- so as to avoid for example the informationally redundant '*Gerrards Cross, Gerrards Cross Packhorse*'. Applications may always themselves add in the locality if appropriate. However, where the locality name is an integral part of the name, for example '*Tonbridge School*', or '*Farnham Rail Station*', it should be used, even though this might result in some repetition (e.g. *Tonbridge, Tonbridge School* or '*Farnham, Farnham Rail Station*').
- The inclusion of separators such as commas in stop names generally makes them harder to interpret in lists.
- Lists may include stops of different types, so including a type phrase ('Rail Station', 'Airport', 'Coach Station') for stop type other than bus stops helps users.
- Simple names ('*Boots*', '*St Mary's Church*', '*Hospital*', '*High Street*'), are preferred to composite names ('*Boots High Street*', '*St Mary's Church Fenham Green*' '*Hospital -Furlong Road*', '*High Street Bus Station*'). Again applications may always themselves add in the locality or other context if appropriate. Where there are two or more stops on the same road, then common names based on the nearest cross-street or a landmark are to be preferred, without the name of the road on which they are located - since this can be obtained from the **Street** element of the database.
- As an exception to this rule it is however useful to include the town name in the names of Rail stations.
- The assigning of correct NPTG localities is very important.
- The consistent use of capitalisation and hyphenation improves intelligibility. Names held in the NPTG database should be in a definitive form and consistent style.
- The preferred way of populating NaPTAN name elements is so as to lead to easily recognizable names when the descriptor elements are combined by applications into a name phrase in a particular order. The preferred order is '*NptgLocality (Qualifier), Common Name (Indicator)*'. In choosing names it is helpful (i) to test them by concatenating the elements in the suggested order and considering the resulting name phrase for sense, and (ii) to compare the name phrase to those of adjacent stops to see if they are helpful in distinguishing the stop from the others.

### 3.5.11.5 Implications for NPTG Locality Naming

Similarly considerations apply to the naming of NPTG Localities:

- Names should generally be the simple name of the locality.
- It is useful to create distinct elements to represent the central areas of towns and cities. For the names of Town and City Centres, it is useful to include the Town name as part of the name, e.g. '*Shirley Town Centre*', '*Winchester City Centre*'.
- Consideration should be given as to whether a Locality name is unique within the UK, and if it is not, a qualifier should be added.

### 3.5.12 Populating Accessibility data

NaPTAN model is intended to allow an incremental approach to capturing accessibility data, that is, data may be captured to different degrees of detail according to the available resources. An overall assessment should always be provided, with further detail as available.

It should be noted that accessibility depends not just on the stop, but also on the capabilities of the vehicles (e.g. low floor, wheel chair spaces etc.) and services (e.g. assistance) that visit the stop. NaPTAN provides a means of specifying stop related data and also of indicating whether service at the stop is generally accessible or not. However to provide completely accurate information additional data is needed from other sources such as TransXChange 2.5.

#### 3.5.12.1 On Street Stops

Typically the capture of top accessibility data for on-street stops such as bus coach and tram stops is more straightforward than for complex off street sites such as stations and airports, since the stop itself is directly accessible Table 3-15 indicates the relative priority of different elements.

On street stops are normally accessible directly at street level one and may simply be tagged as accessible or not. If all the services that visit the stop are accessible it is useful to tag the stop further, for example with low floor/hoist, wheelchair/mobility scooter.

Any boarding assistance service will usually be provided by the driver or conductor so if offered at will be available at all times.

Element	Attribute	Usual value		Note
Stop-Accessibility	<b><i>MobilityImpairedAcess</i></b>	true	1	<b>To be specified</b>
	<b><i>WheelchairAccess</i></b>	true	1	<b>To be specified</b>
	<b><i>StepFreeAccess</i></b>	(true)	2	Usually true
	<b><i>LiftFreeAccess</i></b>	(true)	4	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>EscalatorFreeAccess</i></b>	(true)	4	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>AssistanceService</i></b>	(unknown)	2	<b>Useful</b>
	<b><i>InfoUrl</i></b>		3	Useful
	<b><i>ServicesAtStop-UsuallyAccessible</i></b>	(unknown)	2	<b>Useful</b>
	<b><i>Note</i></b>		3	
DayType	<b><i>DaysOfWeek</i></b>		4	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>Timeband</i></b>		4	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>PublicHolidays</i></b>		4	Not usually relevant
Access-Vehicle-Equipment	<b><i>LowFloor</i></b>	true	2	Useful
	<b><i>HighFloor</i></b>	true	2	Useful
	<b><i>Hoist</i></b>	true	2	Useful
	<b><i>HoistOperatingRadius</i></b>		2	Useful
	<b><i>Ramp</i></b>	false	2	Useful
	<b><i>Boarding Height</i></b>		4	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>Gap to Platform</i></b>		5	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>Width of Access area</i></b>		4	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>Height of Access area</i></b>		4	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>AutomaticDoors</i></b>		3	Usually true
	<b><i>SuitableFor</i></b>	(unknown)	2	<b>Useful to further characterize wheelchair, mobility Scooter, etc.</b>
	<b><i>AssistedBoardingLocation</i></b>	(BoardAtAnyPoint)	5	Not usually relevant
	<b><i>GuideDogsAllowed</i></b>	(true)	3	Usually true

**Table 3-15 – Populating on-street stops**

#### 3.5.12.2 Off street Stops

For off street stops such as stations, access to platforms may involve paths that use steps, lifts or escalators and it is helpful to indicate these. In addition it may be relevant to indicate if the assistance is only available at particular times or needs booking. Table 3-16 indicates the relative priority of different elements.

Element	Attribute	Usual value		Note
Stop-Accessibility	<b><i>MobilityImpairedAcess</i></b>	(unknown)	1	<b>To be specified</b>
	<b><i>WheelchairAccess</i></b>	(false)	1	<b>To be specified</b>

	<i>StepFreeAccess</i>	(unknown)	1	<b>To be specified</b>
	<i>LiftFreeAccess</i>	(true)	2	<b>Useful</b>
	<i>EscalatorFreeAccess</i>	(true)	2	<b>Useful</b>
	<i>AssistanceService</i>	(false)	2	<b>Useful – may need booking</b>
	<i>InfoUrl</i>		3	Useful
	<i>ServicesAtStop-UsuallyAccessible</i>	(unknown)	2	<b>Useful</b>
	<i>Note</i>		3	
<i>DayType</i>	<i>DaysOfWeek</i>		3	Useful
	<i>Timeband</i>		3	Useful
	<i>PublicHolidays</i>		3	Useful
<i>Access-Vehicle-Equipment</i>	<i>LowFloor</i>	(false)	4	Not usually relevant
	<i>HighFloor</i>	(false)	4	Not usually relevant
	<i>Hoist</i>	(false)	4	Not usually relevant
	<i>HoistOperatingRadius</i>		4	Not usually relevant
	<i>Ramp</i>	(true)	2	<b>Useful</b>
	<i>Boarding Height</i>		4	Useful
	<i>Gap to Platform</i>		4	Useful
	<i>Width of Access area</i>		4	Useful
	<i>Height of Access area</i>		4	Useful
	<i>AutomaticDoors</i>		3	Usually true
	<i>SuitableFor</i>	(unknown)	2	<b>Useful to further characterize wheelchair, mobilityScooter, etc</b>
	<i>AssistedBoardingLocation</i>	(BoardAtAnyPoint)	2	<b>Useful</b>
	<i>GuideDogsAllowed</i>	(true)	3	Usually true

**Table 3-16 – Populating off-street stops**

If not present the usual value may be inferreded according to the mode – see accessibility defaults in Table 6-5 later below.

### 3.6 NPTG Discovery Model

#### 3.6.1 Overview of NPTG Discovery Model

The *NPTG Discovery* schema provides information for and about various types of public transport travel information system services and covering NPTG localities.

It uses the *NPTG* topography to provide a coverage model to relate available web services to NaPTAN stops. Discovery can work in two directions:

1. **Coverage Discovery:** A means of finding out the stops covered by the services available for a give localities or administrative area.
2. **Service Discovery:** A means of finding out the services that cover a specific stop, locality, or administrative area.

#### 3.6.2 Informational Service Elements

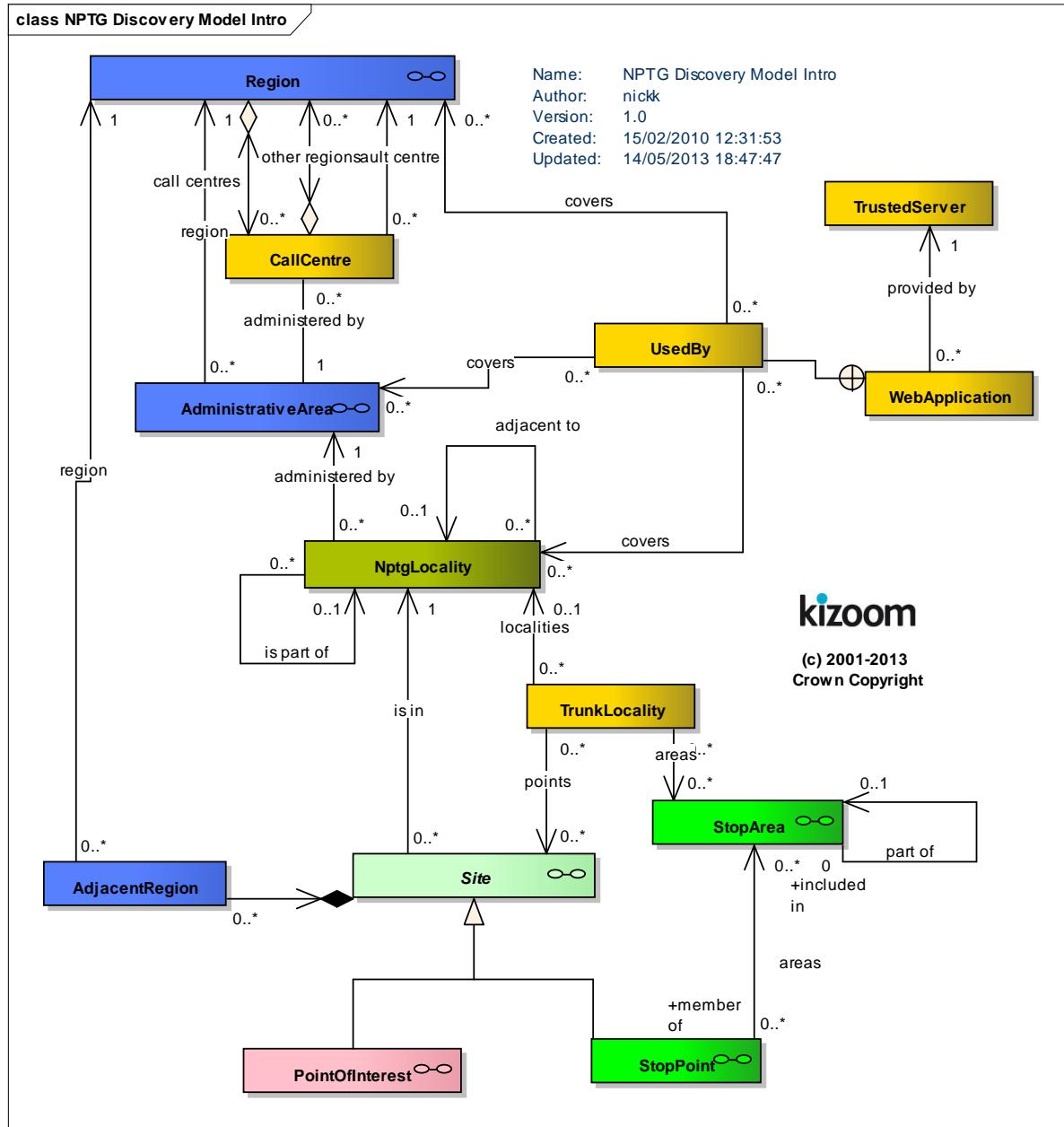
Figure 3-31 shows, in UML class diagram notation, the main elements of the *NPTG Discovery* schema.

The coverage elements provide a basic directory of public transport information services available to cover localities.

- The **WebApplications** container element holds instances of:
  - **WebApplication**, A specific capability. Web services may be associated with any or all of a specific **Locality**, an **AdministrativeArea** or a whole **Region**. See discussion under coverage later.
- The **TrustedServers** container element holds instances of:
  - **TrustedServer**: An access point to a web service.
- The **CallCentres** container element holds instances of:
  - **CallCentre**: A call service providing voice information services for an area.
- The **TrunkLocalities** container element holds instances of:
  - **TrunkLocality**: A geographical grouping of stops as relevant for trunk access associated also with an **NptgLocality**.

Distributed Journey Planning information includes

- **AdjacentRegionExchangePoints** are pairings of NaPTAN points between regions to guide journey planners that use the *JourneyWeb* protocol. They distinguish the significant points on the boundaries of travel information areas that journey planners using the *JourneyWeb* protocol need to recognise.



**Figure 3-31 – UML Diagram of Discovery Model: Overview**

Figure 3-32 shows the same elements as in Figure 3-31, with further detail as to the organisational elements of the schema and the properties of individual entities.

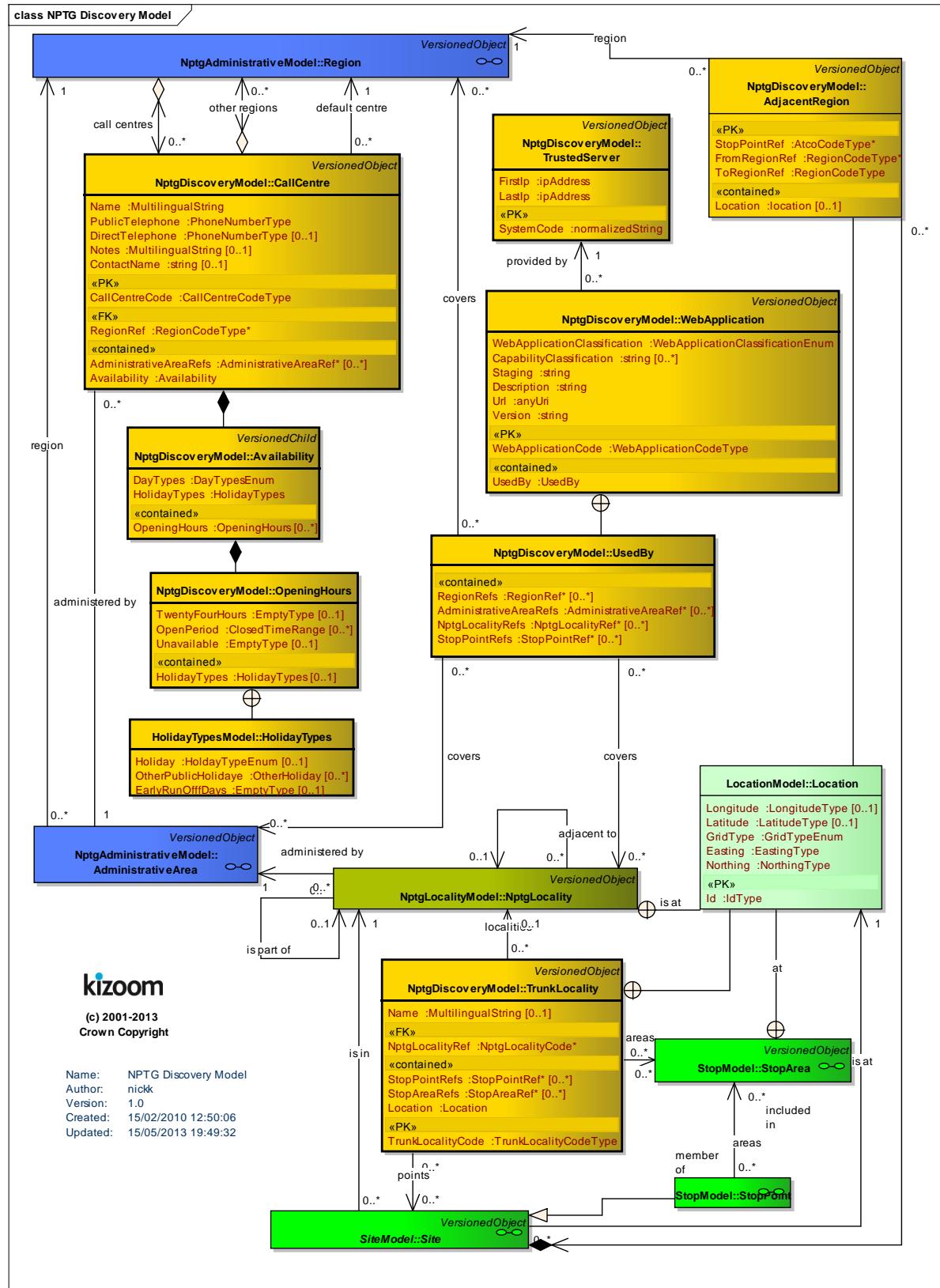


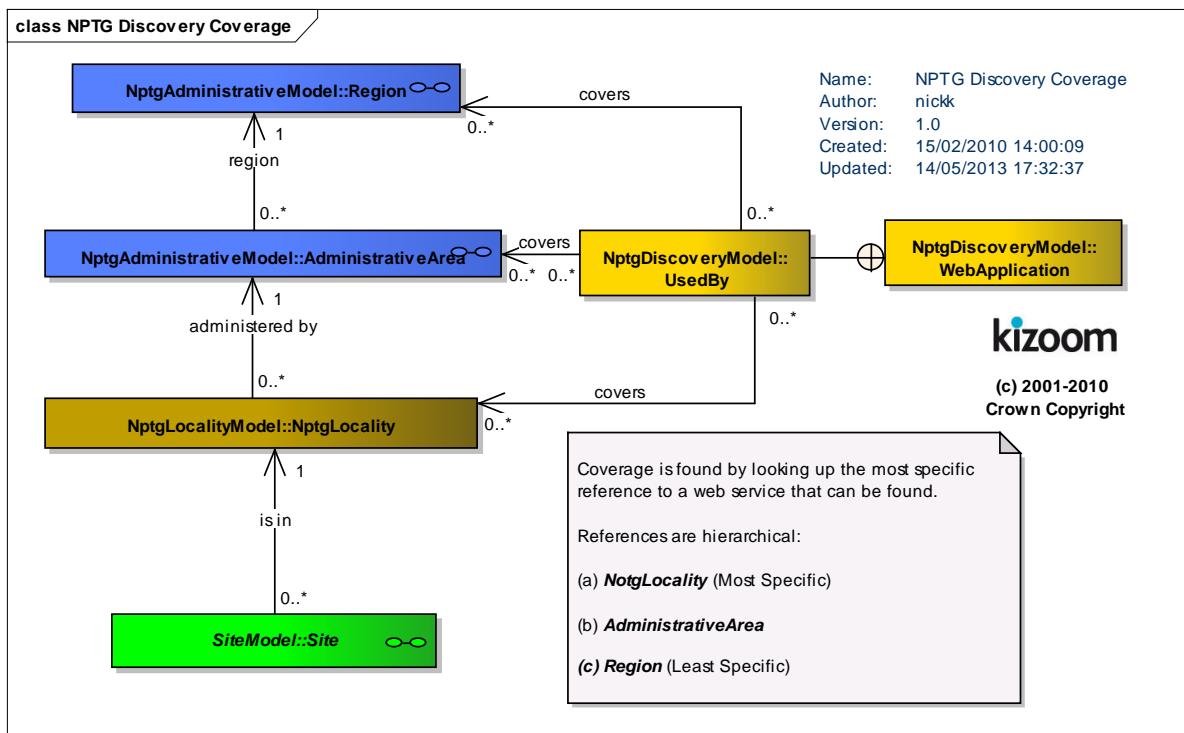
Figure 3-32 – UML Diagram of Discovery Model: Detail

### 3.6.3 Service Discovery

The coverage model makes it possible to associate Web Services of a particular type with specific NaPTAN stops. See *Figure 3-33*. The association can be done at different levels, for example:

- Individual Localities.
- Administrative Areas.
- Regions.

Since (i) Every stop point knows its *NPTG Locality*; (ii) Every *NPTG Locality* knows its *AdministrativeArea*, and; (iii) Every *Administrative Area* knows its region, it is possible to find the appropriate services that cover a particular stop.



**Figure 3-33 – UML Diagram of Coverage Model**

### 3.6.3.1 NPTG Discovery Element Hierarchy

Figure 3-34 shows the Class Hierarchy for the Discovery Element Elements. **StopPoint & Stop Area** are versioned elements. **StopAvailability, StopAreaRef & Descriptor** are child elements.

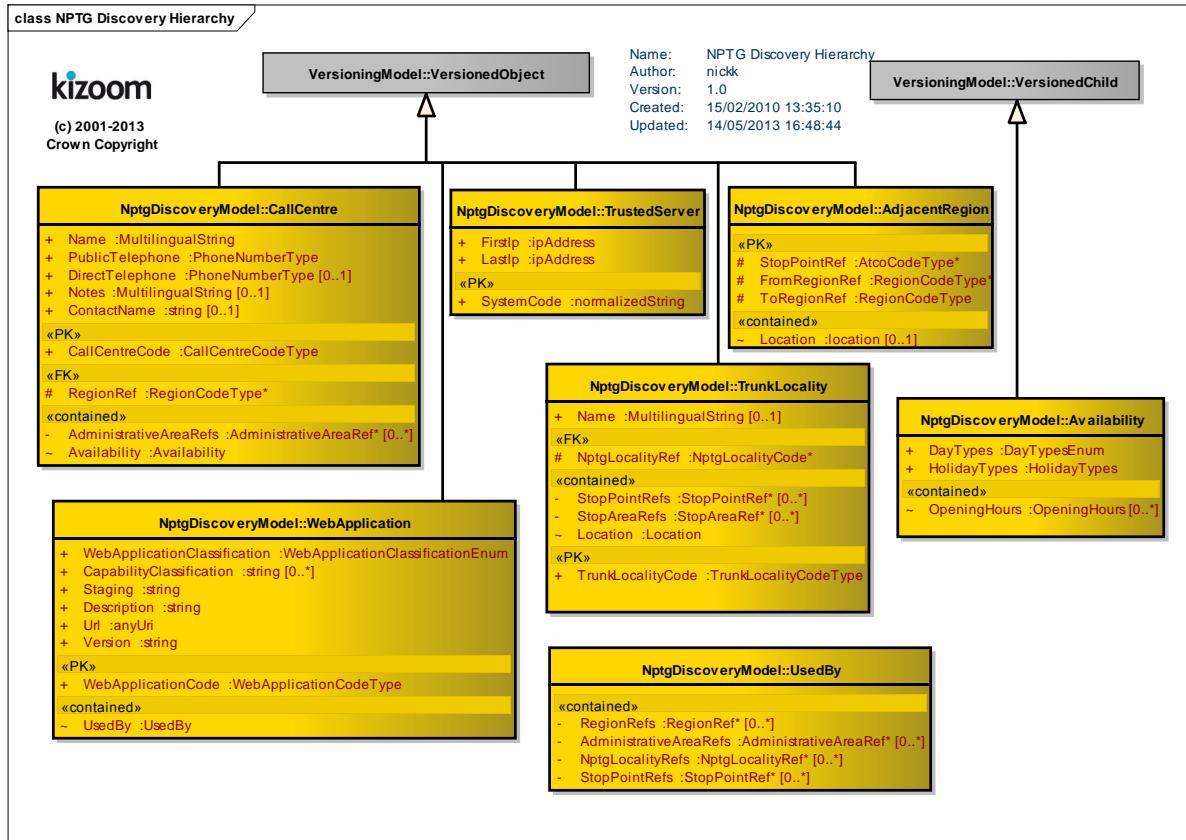


Figure 3-34 – UML Diagram of NPTG Discovery Hierarchy

### 3.7 Summary of NPTG and NaPTAN Entities and Identifiers

Table 3-17 summarises the main entities of the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* models. It also shows the identifiers used for each element and their scope (which in all cases must be unique within a document). The elements fall into three scope groups:

- *External Codes* forming part of well-defined national data systems ('A'). For example the **AtcoCode**, as defined in the *NaPTAN* data set. External codes are modelled as elements.
- *External Codes* forming part of arbitrary data systems. ('B'). External codes are modelled as XML elements, and their names generally end in either '**Code**' or '**Number**'.
- *Internal Identifiers* used to identify objects locally within a document ('C'). Internal identifiers are modelled as an **id** attribute on the entity element.

The uniqueness scope of identifiers is formally defined by XML **keyref** constraints. See 'Integrity Rules' in Section 14.

	Entity	Identifier				
		Type	Req- uired	Name	Has Private Code	Scope
<i>NPTG</i>	<i>Region</i>	Element	R	<i>RegionCode</i>	No	A-National
	<i>AdministrativeArea</i>	Element	R	<i>AdministrativeAreaCode</i>	No	A-National
	<i>NptgDistrict</i>	Element	R	<i>NptgDistrictCode</i>	No	B-National
	<i>NptgLocality</i>	Element	R	<i>NptgLocalityCode</i>	Yes	A-National
	<i>PlusbusZone</i>	Element	R	<i>PlusbusZone Code</i>	No	A-National
<i>NPTG Discovery</i>	<i>CallCentre</i>	Element	R	<i>CallCentreCode</i>	No	B-National
	<i>AdjacentRegionPoint</i>	Attribute	R	<i>AtcoCode</i>	No	A-National
	<i>WebApplication</i>	Element	O	<i>SystemCode</i>	No	B-National
	<i>TrustedServer</i>	Element	O	<i>SystemCode</i>	No	B-National
	<i>TrunkLocality</i>	Element	O	<i>TrunkLocalityCode</i>	No	B-National
<i>NaPTAN</i>	<i>StopPoint</i>	Element	R	<i>AtcoCode</i>	Yes	A-National
		Element	O	<i>NaptanCode</i>		A-National
		Element	O	<i>CleardownCode</i>		A-National
	<i>StopArea</i>	Element	R	<i>StopAreaCode</i>	Yes	A-National
	<i>Network</i>	Element	R	<i>NetworkCode</i>	Yes	B-National
	<i>TariffZone</i>	Element	R	<i>TariffZoneCode</i>	Yes	B-National
	<i>PointOfInterest</i>	Element	R	<i>PointOfInterestCode</i>	Yes	A-National
	<i>Location</i>	Attribute	O	<i>id</i>	No	C-Document

**Table 3-17 – Main Entities of the NPTG & NaPTAN Models**

#### 3.7.1 Private codes

For a few semantically significant elements in NaPTAN, an additional **PrivateCode** element is supported. The **PrivateCode** facilitates the general purpose exchange of data in NaPTAN format, as instances can be annotated with the alternative identifier, so as to allow the unambiguous reconciliation of element identity between different computer systems on a round trip exchange. For example localities might be annotated with their OS TOID. Table 3-17 also indicates the elements that can have a **PrivateCode**.

The **PrivateCode** element is intended for general use of stop definitions for example in TransXChange general documents – it is ignored on NaPTAN submissions.

#### **4 SCHEMAS**

The following sections present the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* schema elements in detail.

- 5. *NPTG Schema*
- 6. *NaPTAN Schema*
- 7. *NPTG Discovery Schema*
- 8. Common Schema Elements & Types

## 5 NPTG SCHEMA, STRUCTURE AND ELEMENTS

The *NPTG* XML schema (Figure 5-1) describes the cities towns and localities of the UK as a model of XML elements, contained within a ***NationalPublicTransportGazetteer*** root element.

### 5.1 NationalPublicTransportGazetteer Root Element

#### 5.1.1 NationalPublicTransportGazetteer Element Attributes

The ***NationalPublicTransportGazetteer*** element uses the *NaPT* standard schema attributes for versioning, and also has standard attributes to indicate the default data reference systems used:

- **Versioning**
  - ***CreationDateTime***: Timestamp of document creation date and time.
  - ***ModificationDateTime***: Timestamp of document last modification date and time.
  - ***FileName***: Name of file containing the document. (If the document is renamed after creation this will not change).
  - ***Modification***: Nature of change: *new*, *revision*. For *NPTG* documents this will always be '*revision*'. Individual elements within the document may be '*new*'.
  - ***RevisionNumber***: Optional sequence number for versioning overall document content. Each subsequent issue of the *NPTG* data should have a higher number than the previous one.
  - ***SchemaVersion***: Schema version identifier used for the document content model.
- **Data Reference**
  - ***xml:lang***: Default language of document. ISO language identifier. Default is English (en). Other significant value is (cy Welsh)
  - ***LocationSystem***: Data system to use for location coordinate references within the document: *WGS84* or *Grid*. *Grid* is used for collecting the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* datasets.
  - ***GridType***: Default grid system to assume for grid coordinate references within the document if not specified explicitly: *UKOS*, *IrishOs*, *ITM* . Default is *UKOS*. (+NaPT v2.5)

#### 5.1.2 NationalPublicTransportGazetteer Child Elements

The ***NationalPublicTransportGazetteer*** element (Figure 5-2) contains the following child elements, each of which is described in more detail later in this document:

- ***Regions***: A collection of ***Region*** elements. The ***Region*** is used to organise other ***AdministrativeArea*** and ***District*** elements.
- ***NptgLocalities***: A collection of ***NptgLocality*** elements used to model UK settlements.
- ***PlusbusZones***: A collection of ***PlusbusZone*** elements used to model UK Plusbus fare zones.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

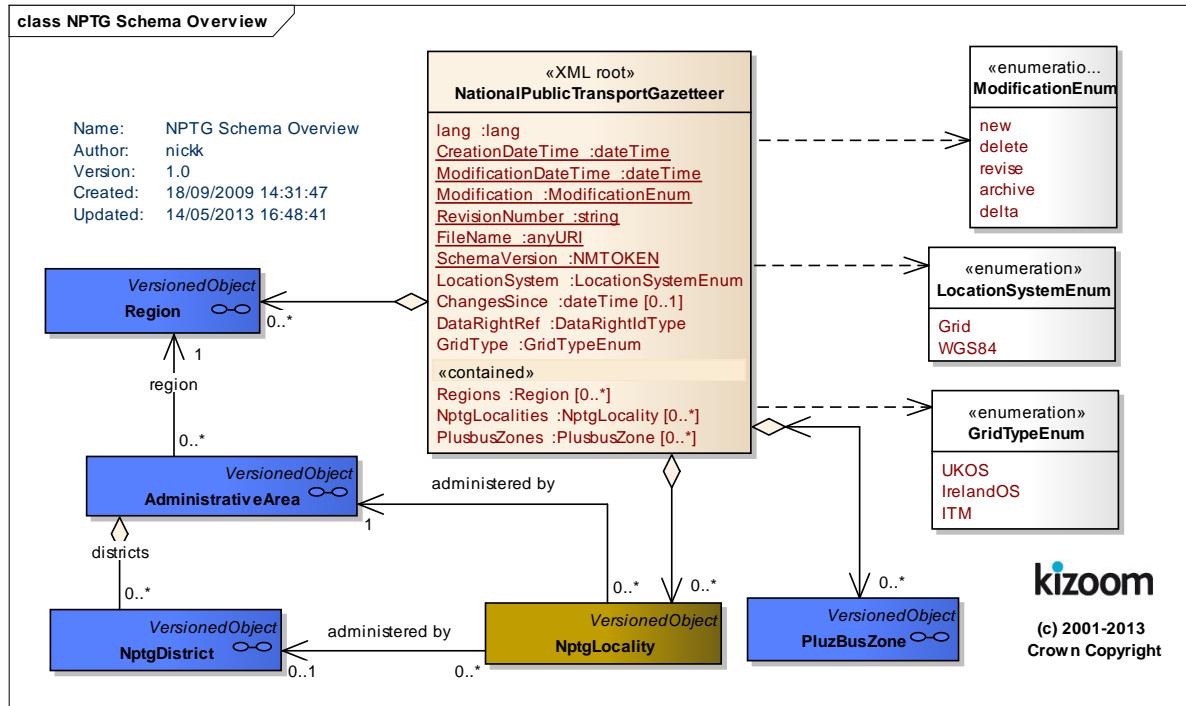


Figure 5-1 – NTPG Schema Overview

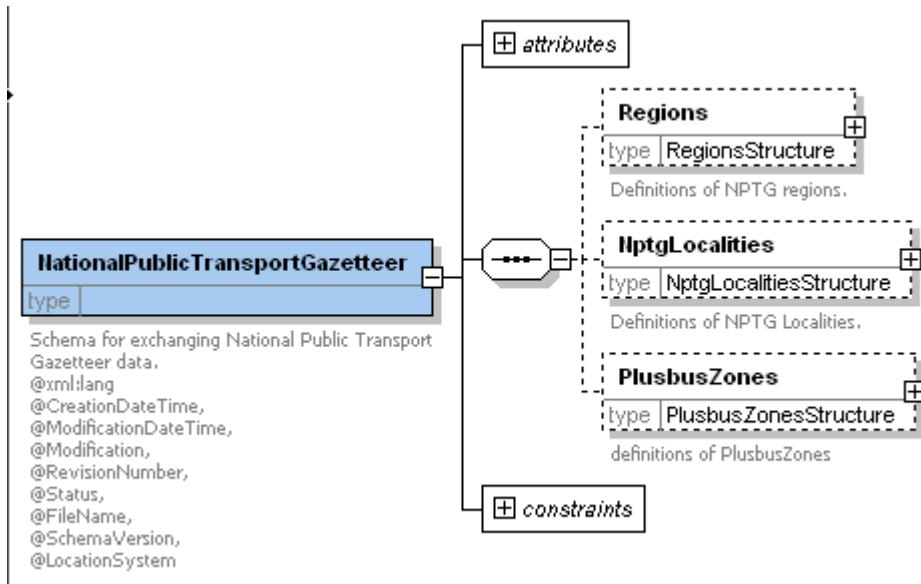


Figure 5-2 – NationalPublicTransportGazetteer Root Element

## 5.2 Region Element

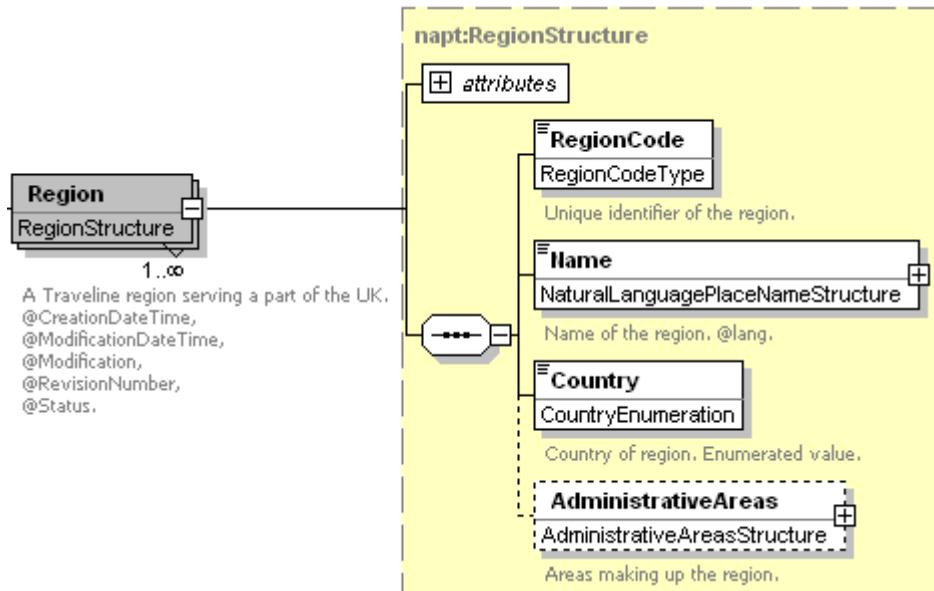
A **Region** represents an area of the country covered by a single Traveline region. Regions break the UK down into non-overlapping zones, and are themselves broken down into administrative areas. The **Region** element (Figure 5-3) comprises:

- **RegionCode**: Unique NPTG code for **Region**.
- **Name**: Name of **Region**.
- **Country**: Country within which the **Region** lies. See Table 5-1.

Value	Description	Great Britain	UK
<i>England</i>	England	Y	Y
<i>Scotland</i>	Scotland	Y	Y
<i>Wales</i>	Wales	Y	Y
<i>GreatBritain</i>	United Kingdom (can be used for global data)	Y	Y
<i>NorthernIreland</i>	Northern Ireland	N	Y
<i>UK</i>	United Kingdom (can be used for global data)	N	N
<i>Eire</i>	Eire (use for connecting stops)	N	N

**Table 5-1 – Allowed Values for Country**

- **AdministrativeAreas**: Administrative Areas making up the region. See **AdministrativeArea** below.



**Figure 5-3 – Region Element**

## 5.3 AdministrativeArea Element

An **AdministrativeArea** (Figure 5-4) is an area of the country within a Traveline region that manages the NPTG localities and NaPTAN stops for that area.

- **AdministrativeAreaCode**: Unique NPTG identifier for **AdministrativeArea**. Note this is distinct from the **AtcoAreaCode**.
- **AtcoAreaCode**: Prefix to use on all stops points and stop areas for **AdministrativeArea**.
- **Name**: Text **Name** in a specified language, indicated by an `xml:lang` attribute. Names are restricted to the NaPTAN naming character set.
- **ShortName**: Concise text name to use when the **AdministrativeArea** name is used as a qualifier. For example 'E Yorks' might be the short name for 'East Riding of Yorkshire'.
- **NptgDistricts**: A collection of **NptgDistrict** elements used to model UK organisational districts.

- **MaximumLengthForShortNames:** Some areas have a processing restriction on the name of stops for use in various systems. This value sets the limit for the area (Zero means same length as **CommonName**). **StopPoint/Descriptor / ShortCommonName** instance values must not exceed this length.
- **National:** Whether **AdministrativeArea** administers stops nationally, or only for its own geographical area (the default). For areas that issue stop types nationally (the '9nn' admin areas) this should be set to true.
- **NaptanPrefixes:** Collection of zero, one or several **AlphaPrefix** elements describing the 'SMS' stop prefixes reserved for the area for use in **NaptanCode** instances. Typically these are chosen to have a mnemonic relationship to the area name. For example, 'sur' = 'Surrey', 'lei' = 'Leicester'.
  - ❖ Either three characters of the form 'a-z' or three digits (not beginning with 0 or 1)
  - ❖ or '1' : London
- **CleardownRange:** Inclusive range of Cleardown numbers reserved for the area for use in **StopCleardownCode** instances.
  - ❖ **CleardownStart:** Start number of Range.
  - ❖ **CleardownEnd:** End number of range.
- **ContactEmail:** Administrative contact email for data queries. Should be a general address rather than an individual.
- **ContactTelephone:** Administrative contact telephone for data queries.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

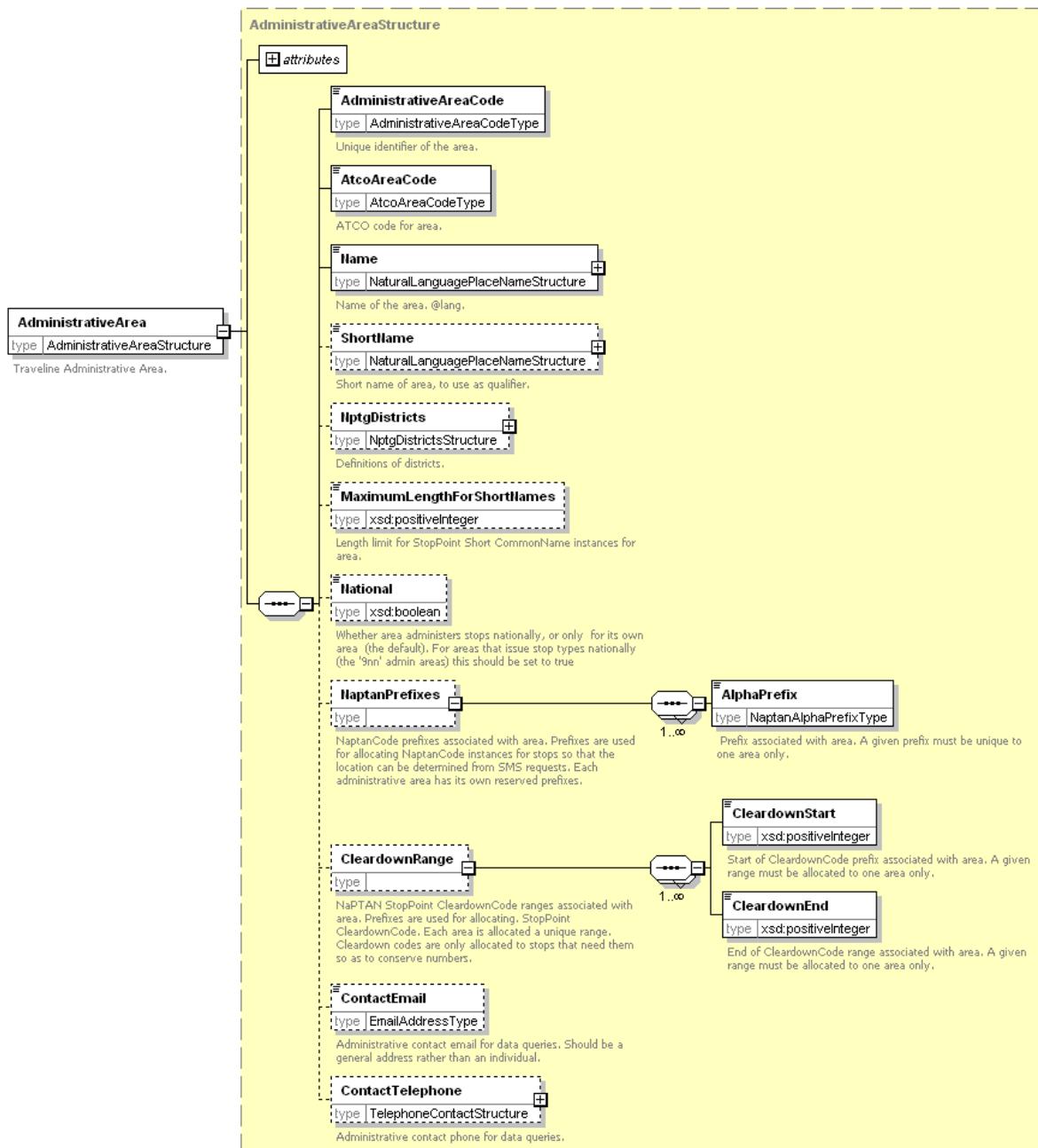


Figure 5-4 – AdministrativeArea Element

## 5.4 NPTG Locality Element

An **NptgLocality** (*Figure 5-5*) represents a named UK settlement, that is, a village, town or city. Each locality has both an identifier and a definitive name that is unique and unambiguous.

### 5.4.1 Identification

- **NptgLocalityCode:** Unique identifier of the **NptgLocality**.
- **Descriptor:** Text description in a specified language, indicated by an **xml:lang** attribute.
- **AlternativeDescriptors:** One or more alternative **Descriptor** elements may be specified. The name may either be an alias, for example, ‘Newcastle’ for ‘Newcastle-on-Tyne’, or a translation in a specified language. For example, lang=en, name=‘Carnarvon’, as an alternative name for the common name of lang=cy, name=‘Caernarfon’.

### 5.4.2 Associations

- **ParentNptgLocalityRef:** An **NptgLocality** may reference one other **NptgLocality** as its parent. It may itself be referenced by several children. Cyclic dependencies are not allowed, that is a locality must not be its own ancestor, either direct or indirect.
- **AdministrativeAreaRef:** *NPTG AdministrativeArea* responsible for managing stop.
- **NptgDistrictRef:** An **NptgDistrictRef** with which the locality is associated.

### 5.4.3 Other classifications

- **SourceLocalityType:** The type of locality in the original source material used to compile the *NPTG*. The classification is an annotation that indicates the origin of the locality data; see *Table 5-2*. The source material for *NPTG* was taken originally from the *Index of Place Names* compiled by ONS (and its Scottish equivalent).

Value	Description	Notes
Add	New entry in the National Gazetteer	
Co	Community	Wales only
Lo	Locality	Other locality
LOC	Scottish Locality	Scotland only
Pa	Parish	not Wales
PAR	Scottish Parish	Scotland only
Isl	Island	
U	Urban Area	
US	Urban Sub Area	
DWD	Scottish District Ward	Scotland only
RED	Scottish Registered Electoral District	Scotland only

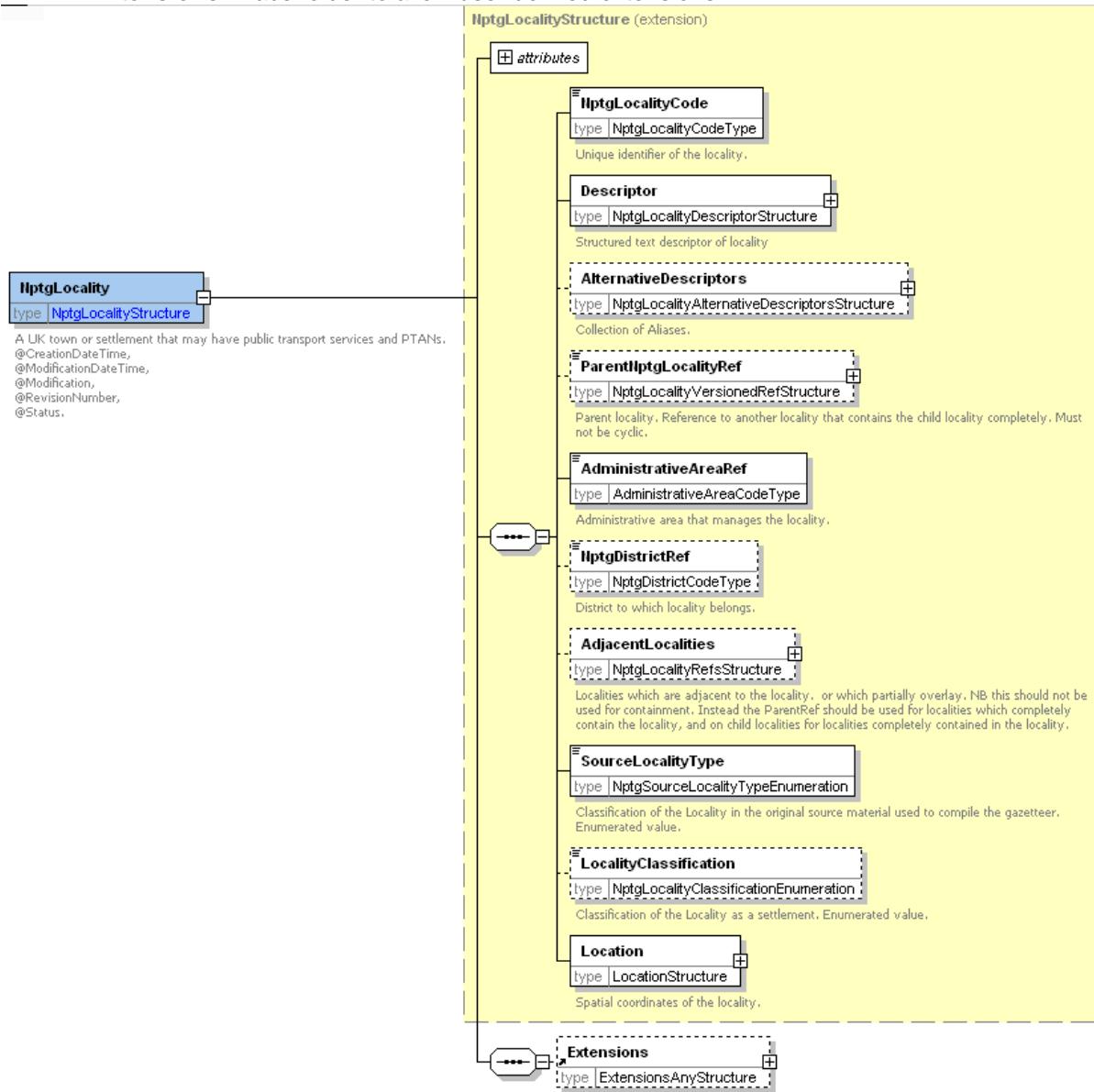
**Table 5-2 – Allowed Values for SourceLocalityType**

- **LocalityClassification:** *NPTG* classification of locality as a type of settlement. See *Table 5-3*. Classification implies a hierarchy of containment: each classification type has a ranking associated with it. Lower level elements may specify same or higher level elements as their parents on a **ParentNptgLocalityRef**, but not vice versa. Thus a city may contain a suburb, but a suburb may not contain a city.

Value	Name	Ranking
city	Locality is a city.	1
town	Locality is a town.	2
suburb	Locality is an urban sub-area.	2
urbanCentre	Locality is a city centre or town centre zone of another town or city locality.	3
village	Locality is a village.	3
hamlet	Locality is a hamlet.	4
placeOfInterest	Locality is a place of interest whose name is distinct from another locality.	4
other	Locality is none of the other types.	2
unrecorded	Locality type is not yet specified.	3

**Table 5-3 – Allowed Values for LocalityClassification**

- **Location:** Specifies a spatial point corresponding to the centre of the locality. See **Location** element above.
- **Extensions.** Placeholder to allow user defined extensions.



**Figure 5-5 – NptgL Locality Element**

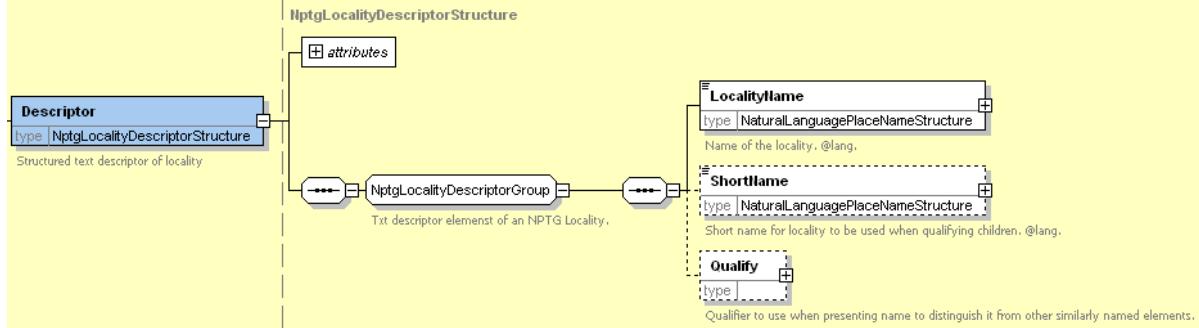
## 5.5 NPTG Locality / Descriptor Element

A Locality Descriptor (*Figure 5-6*) provides a textual description of a locality.

- **LocalityName:** Unique NPTG name of the locality. Should be a valid place name subject to the same restrictions on characters as a NaPTAN **CommonName**.
- **ShortName:** Short name for the locality.
- **Qualify:** Whether the name is qualified, and if so by what other
  - **QualifierName:** Whether the name is qualified, and if so by what other name. For example, **LocalityName** 'Church End' + **QualifierName** Flummox would result in → Church End (Flummox)

In addition, you may give information about the qualifying scope: this should be the most specific context within which the name should be distinguished.

- **NptgLocalityRef:** A locality nominated as the source of the **QualifierName**.
- **NptgDistrictRef:** A district nominated as the source of the **QualifierName**.

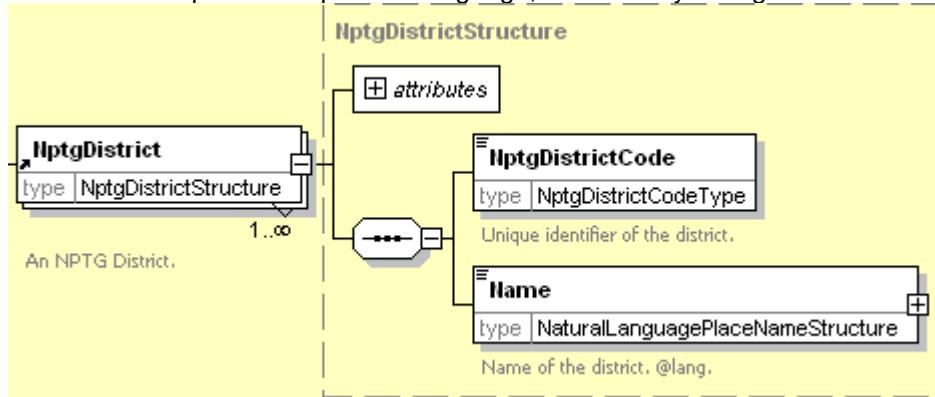


**Figure 5-6 – Locality / Descriptor Element**

## 5.6 NPTG District Element

An **NptgDistrict** (Figure 5-7) represents a Metropolitan or Shire District authority, that is, a city, borough or district council.

- **NptgDistrictCode:** Unique *NPTG* identifier of the district.
- **Name:** Text description in a specified language, indicated by a *lang* attribute.



**Figure 5-7 – NptgDistrict Element**

## 5.7 PlusbusZone Element

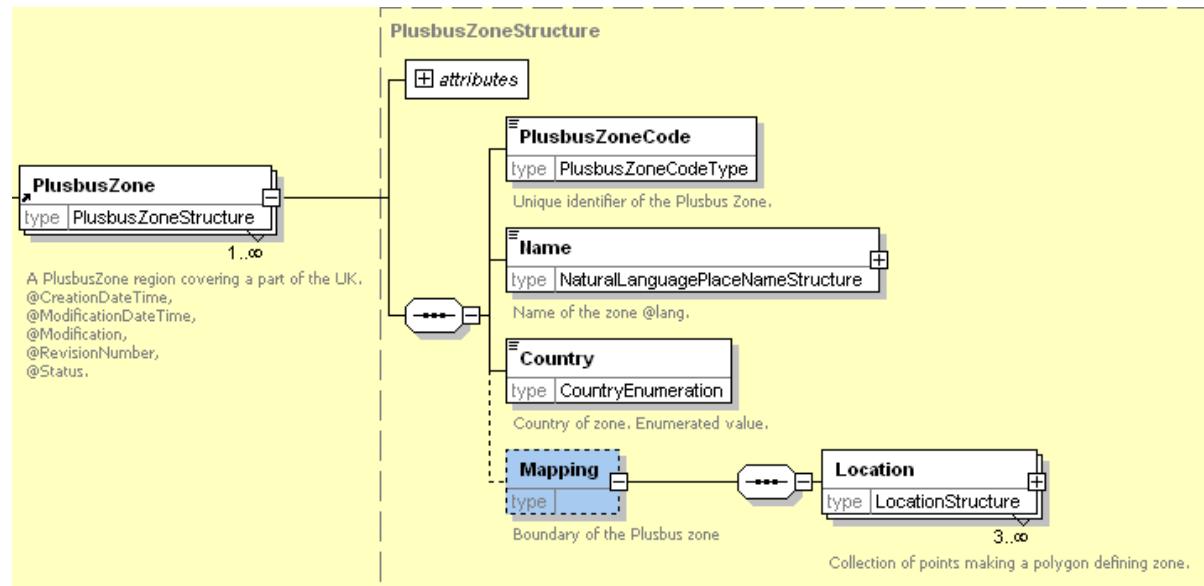
A **PlusbusZone** (Figure 5-8) represents a Plusbus fare zone. Plusbus Zone information will normally be added centrally and redistributed.

- **PlusbusZoneCode:** Unique identifier of the zone (usually the TIPLOC of the principle station in the zone).
- **Name:** Text description in a specified language, indicated by a *lang* attribute.
- **Country:** The country of the **PlusbusZone**. See *Table 5-4*.

Value	Name
England	England
Northern Ireland	Northern Ireland
Scotland	Scotland
Wales	Wales
UK	UK

**Table 5-4 – Allowed Values for Plusbus zones**

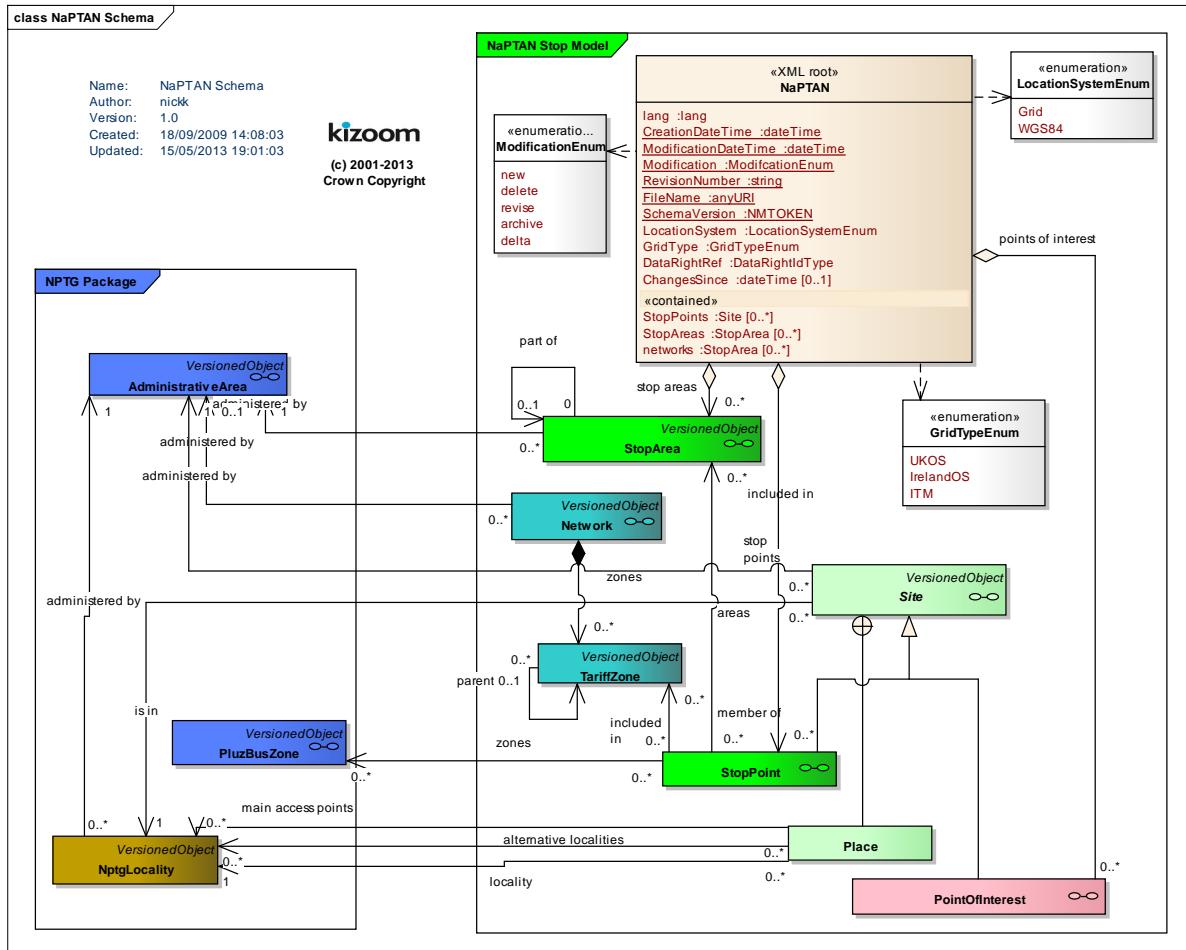
- **Mapping:** A sequential collection of **Location** points describing the bounding polygon, in which the last point links to the first point to complete the polygon.



**Figure 5-8 – PlusbusZone Element**

## 6 NAPTAN SCHEMA, STRUCTURE AND ELEMENTS

NaPTAN XML schema (*Figure 6-1*) describes bus stops and other public stop points as a model of XML elements, contained within a **NaPTAN** root element. It references entities defined in the *NPTG* schema.



**Figure 6-1 – UML Diagram of NaPTAN Schema**

### 6.1 NaPTAN Root Element

#### 6.1.1 NaPTAN Element Attributes

The **NaPTAN** root element uses the *NaPT* standard schema attributes for versioning, and also has standard attributes to indicate the default data reference systems used (Since these are attributes they are not shown in the Diagram): See discussion of versioning later on in section 11.2.

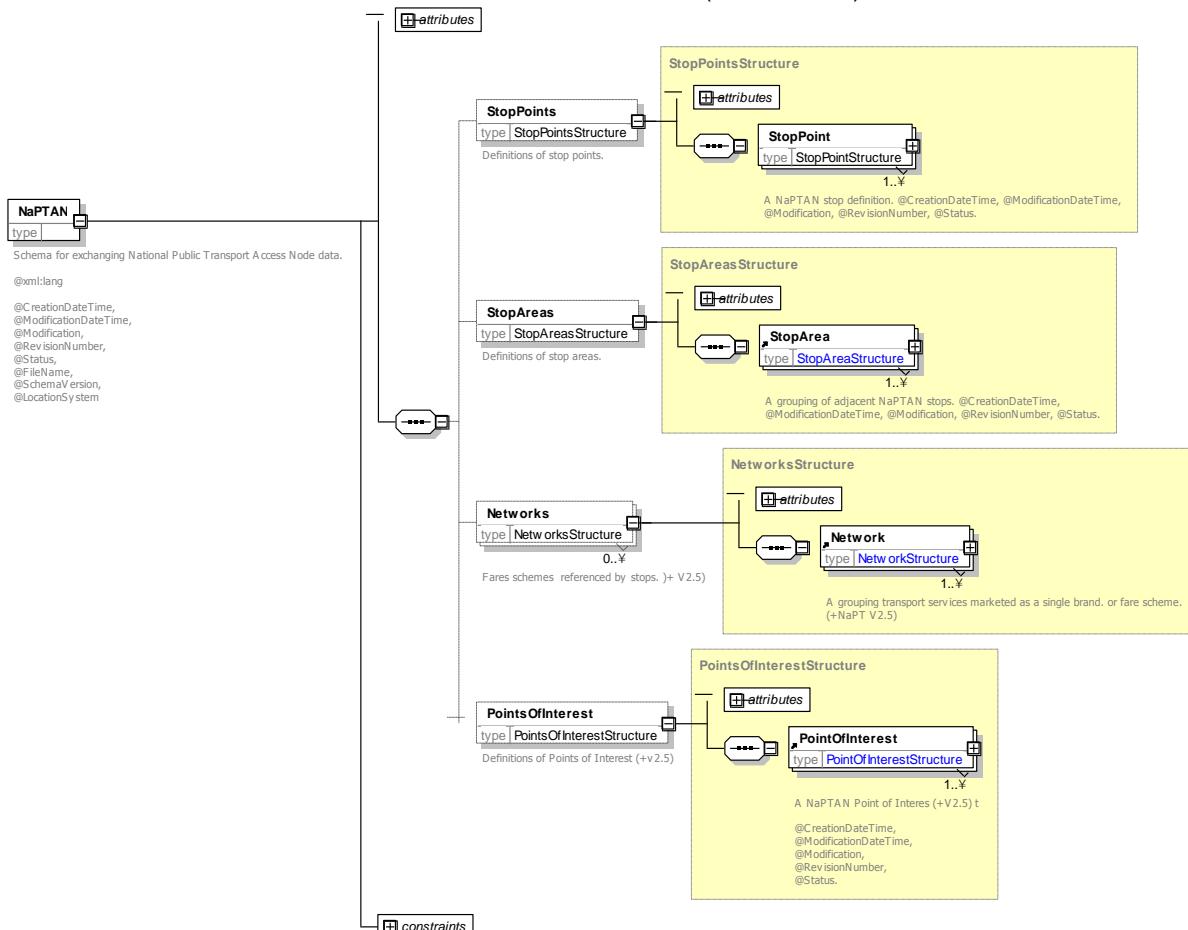
- *Versioning*
  - **CreationDateTime**: Timestamp of document creation date and time.
  - **ModificationDateTime**: Timestamp of document last modification date, and time.
  - **FileName**: Name of file containing the document as created. (If the document is renamed this will not change).
  - **Modification**: Nature of change: *new*, *revision*. Normally '*revision*'. Other possible values are *delete* or *archive*.

- **RevisionNumber:** Optional sequence number for versioning overall document content.
- **SchemaVersion:** Schema version identifier used for the document content model.
- **ChangesSince:** Only present when a delta of modifications being exchanged . Date after which changes are included. (+NaPT v2.4). **DataSource:** Indication of source of data. (+NaPT v2.4).
- **Data Reference**
  - **lang:** Default language of document. ISO language identifier. Default is English.
  - **LocationSystem:** Data system to use for location coordinate references within the document: *WGS84* or *Grid*. Normally *Grid* is used.
  - **GridType:** Default grid system to assume for grid coordinate references within the document if not specified explicitly: *UKOS*, *IrishOs*, *ITM* . Default is *UKOS*. (+NaPT v2.5)

### 6.1.2 NaPTAN Child Elements

The **NaPTAN** root element (*Figure 6-2*) comprises the following child elements:

- **StopPoints:** A collection of **StopPoint** elements defining individual PTANS. See below.
- **StopAreas:** A collection of **StopArea** elements to group stop points. See later.
- **Networks:** A collection of **Network** elements to group TariffZones (+NaPT v2.5). See later below.
- **PointsOfInterest:** A collection of **PointsOfInterest** (+NaPT v2.5). See later below.



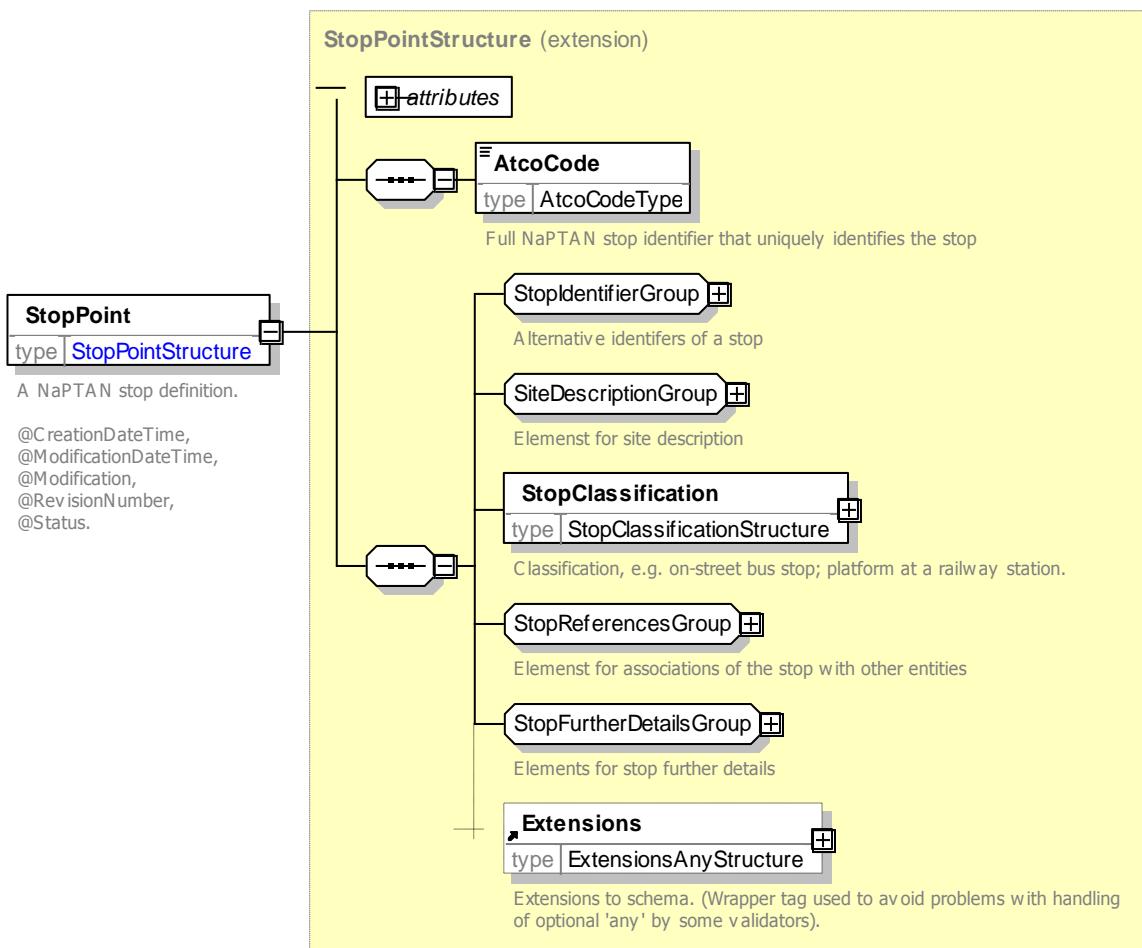
**Figure 6-2 – NaPTAN Root Element**

## 6.2 StopPoint Element

A NaPTAN **StopPoint** (*Error! Reference source not found.*) describes an access point to public transport and comprises the following elements.

The identifiers of a **StopPoint** provide a number of alternative ways of uniquely identifying the stop in different contexts. The **AtcoCode** is the primary key: other identifiers are optional aliases. The other fundamental **StopPoint** subelements are the **Descriptor**, **Place** and **StopClassification**.

- **AtcoCode**: Unique NaPTAN system identifier of **StopPoint**. Codes are unique within the NaPTAN database for Great Britain. **AtcoCode** instances normally have the form *a0b*, where '*a*' is the three digit **AtcoAreaCode** (Note that some additional values are used, for example '910 Network Rail'), 0 is fixed, and *b* is an arbitrary unique alphanumeric code of up to eight characters.
- **StopIdentifierGroup**: Groups together alternative unique identifiers of a **StopPoint**. See below.
- **SiteDescriptionGroup**: Groups together elements describing the name and whereabouts of a **StopPoint**. See below.
- **StopClassification**: categorizes the **StopPoint**. This is described separately later below.
- **StopReferencesGroup**: Groups together associations of the **StopPoint** With other entities. See below.
- **StopFurtherDetailsGroup**: Groups together further properties of a **StopPoint**. See below.

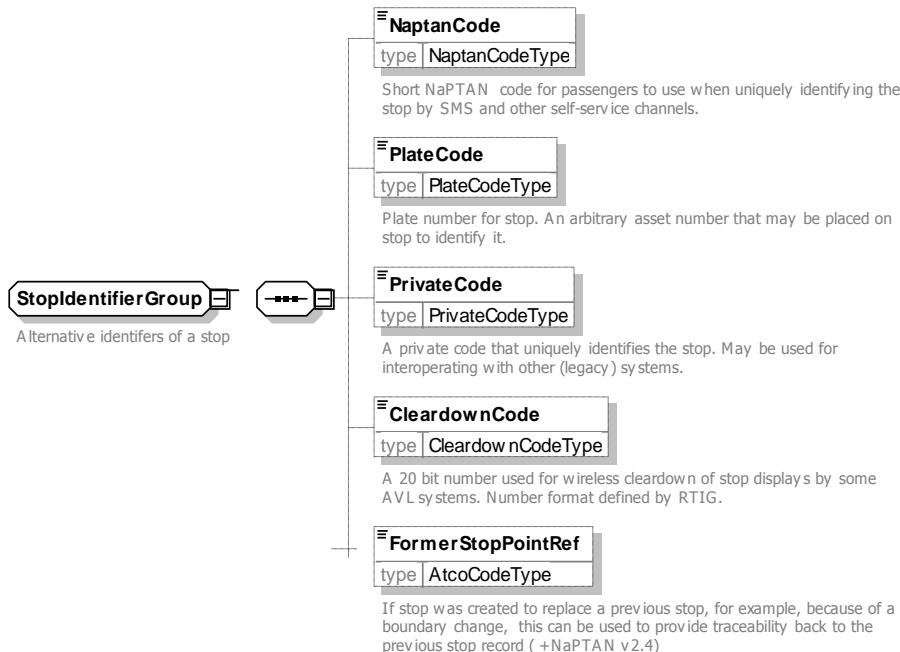


**Figure 6-3 – StopPoint Element**

### 6.3 Identifying the Stop – StopIdentifierGroup

The **StopIdentifierGroup** group (*Identifying the Stop*) organises the alternative identifier elements that are also allowed for a **StopPoint** in addition to the **AtcoCode**.

- **NaptanCode:** Unique NaPTAN public identifier of **StopPoint**, i.e. SMS number.  
**NaptanCode** instances are unique within the *NaPTAN* database for the UK. Prefixes of the **NaptanCode** correspond to UK administrative areas. The **NaptanCode** is constrained to certain values so as to make it easy to enter on a mobile keypad. See Populating NaPTAN codes for SMS earlier.
- The **NaptanCode** is composed of two parts:
  - A one or three character area **AlphaPrefix** prefix, chosen ideally to have mnemonic relevance to the administrative area name of the locality, and using any of the letters (or numbers) mapped to a given key. For example, **sur** for Surrey. London is treated as a special case and has a one character prefix of '1'. All other areas use a three character all alpha or all numeric code which cannot begin with 0 or 1.
  - Three to five character (letters or numbers) stop reference unique within the area grouping, for example **dagm**, '7456'. The choice of letters or numbers is made by each administrative area – the prefix and suffix elements should be either wholly alpha or wholly numeric.
- **PlateCode:** Unique asset code identifier of stop point. This element is to support the general exchange of stop data, and is not currently part of the *NaPTAN* 1.1 database.
- **CleardownCode:** Unique cleardown identifier of stop point. A number between 1 1048575 that AVL systems may use to reference the stop for direct wireless cleardown of stop based arrival and departure displays. Designed to be short. i.e. 20 bit to suit wireless restrictions. Numbers are allocated by administrative area. Numbers should only be allocated if needed (so as to conserve available numbers). This element is for use support the general exchange of stop data, and is not currently part of the *NaPTAN* 1.1 database.
- **PrivateCode:** Unique identifier for associating stop with other identifiers used by other systems. This element is to support the general exchange of stop data and is not part of the *NaPTAN* database. For example when stop definitions are exchanged in *TransXChange* between AVL systems, it may be useful to annotate them with private identifiers in order for the stops to be related to legacy systems.

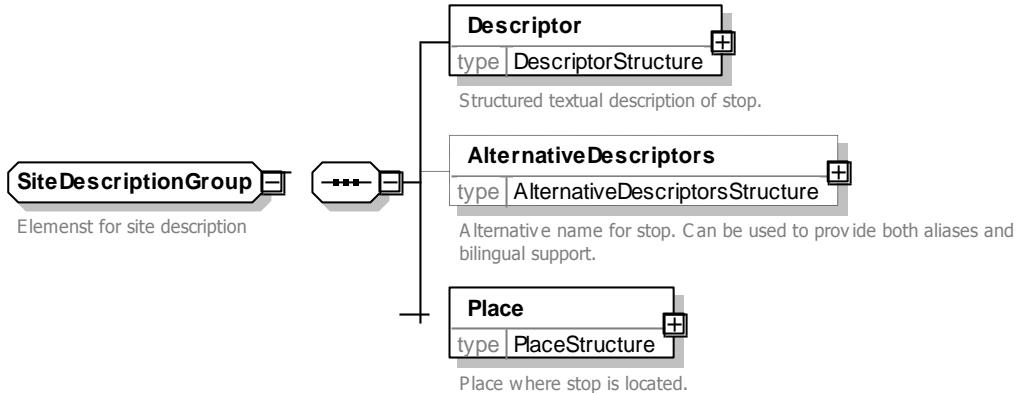


**Figure 6-4 – StopIdentifierGroup Group**

## 6.4 Descriptors of a Stop – SiteDescriptionGroup

The descriptors of a **StopPoint** provide structured elements for describing the name of a stop and its location (See Figure 6-5).

- **Descriptor:** Elements concerned with the naming of the stop point. See Below
- **AlternativeDescriptor:** Elements concerned with the alternative naming of the stop point. See Below
- **Place:** Description of location and *NPTG* locality of stop point. See below.



**Figure 6-5 – SiteDescriptionGroup Group**

### 6.4.1 Descriptor Element

#### 6.4.1.1 Base Descriptors

The **Descriptor** element (Figure 6-6) groups elements concerned with naming the stop point. See also discussion under *Naming Stops* earlier in this guide.

- **CommonName:** Name of the stop area, with *xml:lang* attribute.
- **ShortCommonName:** A short version of the common name, compacted to fit within the specified length limit for the stop's administrative area, as specified by the *AdministrativeArea / MaximumLengthForShortNames*. A **ShortCommonName** only needs to be specified if it is different from the **CommonName**.
- **Landmark:** Text describing any adjacent landmark that can be used to distinguish stop. The landmark may be a building or destination, or a crossing name or street name (in which case it should also be specified under **Street**, or may be specified under **Crossing**).
- **Street:** Name of street where the stop point of **Place** is. This must still be given even if the stop is named after the street.
- **Crossing:** The nearest street crossing to the stop. Desirable to give if known. If the crossing is also the landmark, or may be omitted
- **Indicator:** Indicative description of the relative position of the stop, See examples for guidance on choice of descriptive phrases for indicator and landmark.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

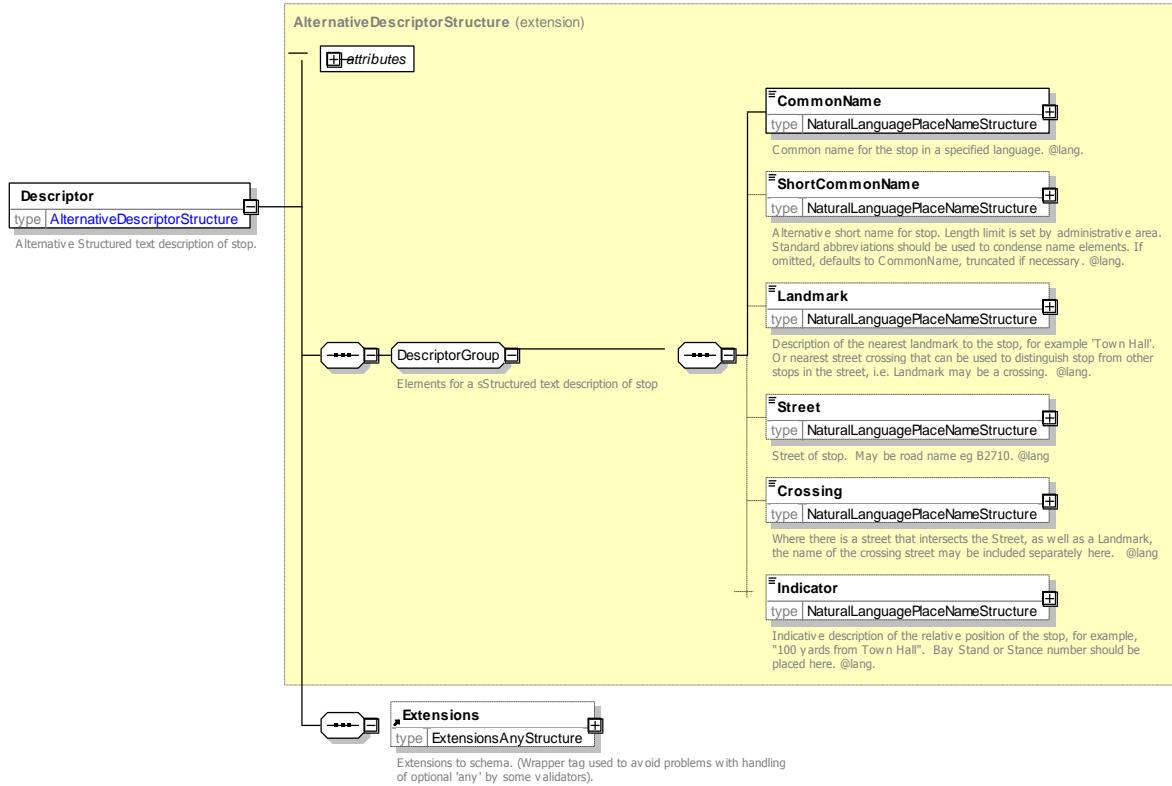


Figure 6-6 – Descriptor Element

#### 6.4.2 Additional Descriptors

- **AlternativeDescriptors:** One or more alternative names can be specified for the stop; each as a subsidiary **Descriptor** element with modification attributes, and a set of base descriptor contents.

#### 6.4.3 Place Element

A **Place** element (Figure 6-7) describes where a **StopPoint** is, and also associates it with an **NptgLocality**.

- **NptgLocality:** Each **Place** must specify the primary NPTG locality that the stop point is sited within, using an **NptgLocalityRef** (i.e. the **NptgLocalityCode**). The locality should be the most specific available, for example, use the suburb rather than the city.
- **AlternativeNptgLocalities:** In addition, other localities may be associated with the **Place** as a collection of **NptgLocalityRef** instances. The **StopArea** is considered to be associated with all the NPTG localities (and alternative localities) of its member stops.
- **MainNptgLocalities:** In addition, the stop may be designated as a main stop for one or more localities.
- **Suburb:** Name of suburb where the **Place** is.
- **Town:** Name of town where stop point is.
- **Country:** Name of country where stop point is. (+NaPT v2.5). See Table 5-1 for allowed values.
- **LocalityCentre:** Whether the stop point of the **Place** is at the centre of a town or not. A value of 'true' indicates that the stop is one of the central stops in the **NptgLocality**, and that a journey enquiry to the locality could sensibly start or end at this stop. More than one stop point can be designated as a locality centre for a given **NptgLocality**.
- **Location:** Spatial coordinates of the **Place**.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

- Note that for Hail & Ride stops, the location will be the OS Grid Easting and Northing of the central anchor point of a Hail-and-Ride section.

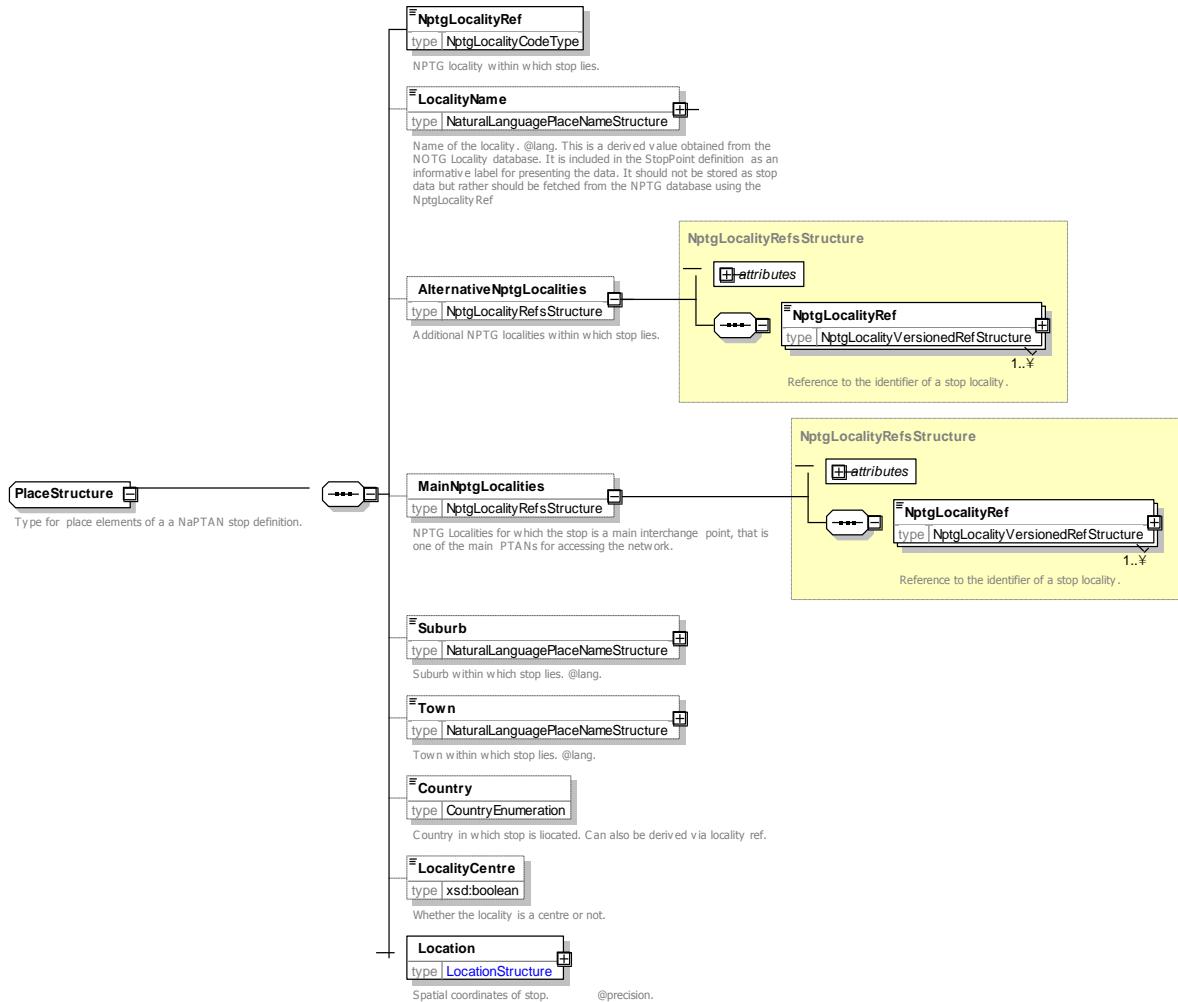


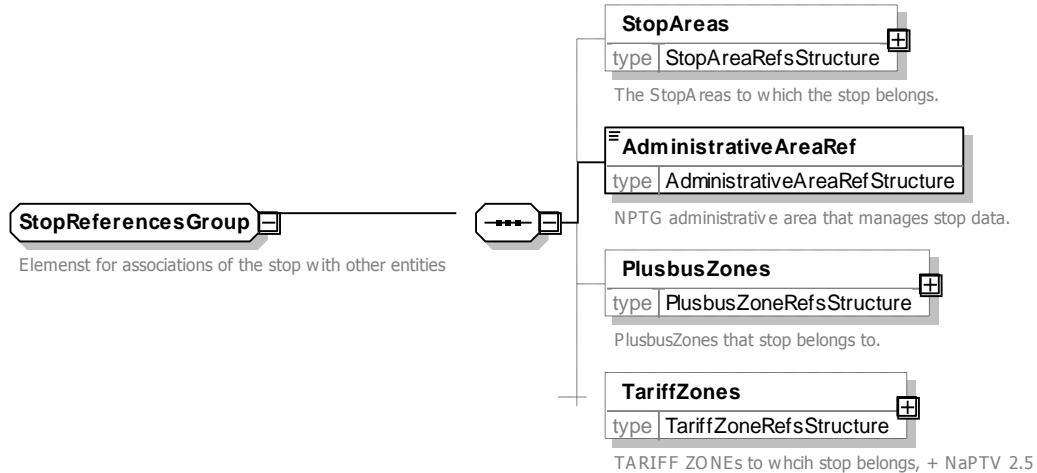
Figure 6-7 – Place Element

## 6.5 Associations of a Stop – StopReferencesGroup

The associations of a **StopPoint** allow it to be linked to other types of NPTG and NaPTAN entities (See Figure 6-8). The associated entity (e.g. **StopArea**, **AdministrativeArea**, **PlusbusZone**, **TariffZone**) should be active and valid at the time the association is created. If the associated entity is subsequently made inactive, the association (if not explicitly removed as well) is also considered to be inactive and may be ignored.

- StopAreas:** A collection of **StopAreaRef** instances identifying any **StopArea** elements with which the **StopPoint** is associated. The **StopArea** may be in a different administrative area to that of the **StopPoint** itself.
  - Note that this association can also be used to derive the locality of the **StopArea**. The **StopArea** is considered to be associated with all the NPTG localities (and alternative localities) of its member **StopPoint instances**. Different stop points in a given stop area may belong to different NPTG localities. Normally the stop points of a **StopArea** will belong to the same or descendant NPTG localities, but it is possible that the stops may be in different NPTG localities that are either adjacent or descendant to each other.

- **AdministrativeAreaRef:** NPTG **AdministrativeArea** responsible for managing data about the stop.
- **PlusbusZones:** A collection of **PlusbusZoneRef** instances identifying any **PlusbusZone** elements with which the **StopPoint** is associated.
- **TariffZones:** A collection of **TariffZoneRef** instances identifying any **TariffZone** elements with which the **StopPoint** is associated., i.e. fare zones to which it belongs (+NaPT v2.5).

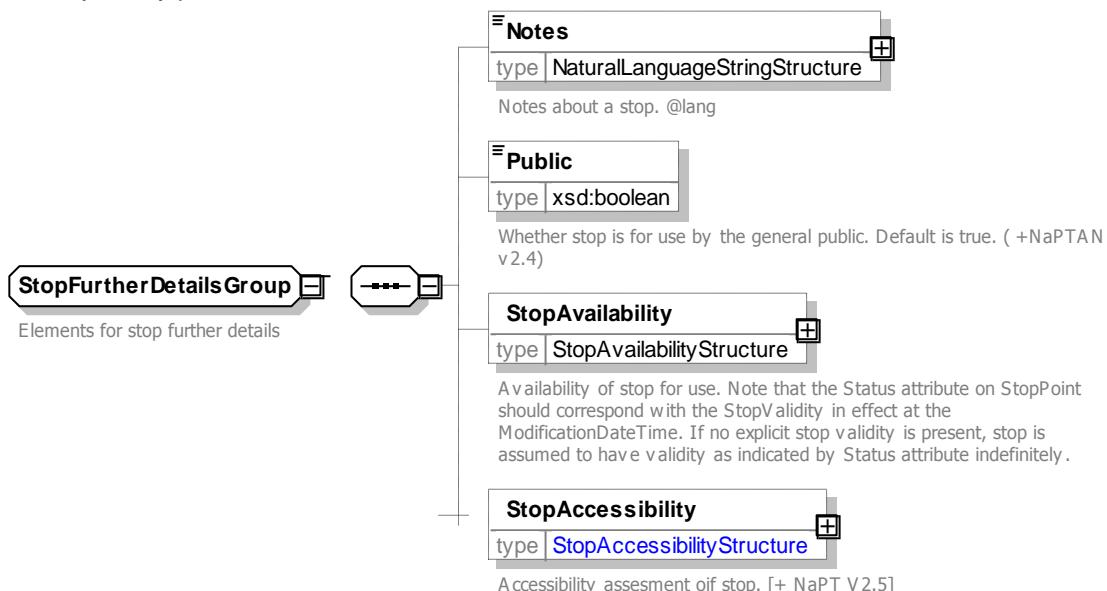


**Figure 6-8 – StopReferencesGroup Group**

## 6.6 Other Information – StopFurtherDetailsGroup

Other properties of a **StopPoint** describe it further (See Figure 6-9).

- **Notes:** Any notes about the PTAN. Notes should be used in particular to describe why a stop has been designated as deleted.
- **Public:** Whether stop is for use by general public. Default is true (+NaPT v2.4).
- The **StopAvailability** element defines when the stop is available for use. See below.
- The **StopAccessibility** element specifies the accessibility assessment of the stop for use. In journey planners. See below.



**Figure 6-9 – StopFurtherDetailsGroup Group**

## 6.7 StopClassification Element

A **StopClassification** element (Figure 6-10) describes the type of stop point, and any additional details associated with the specific stop type

- **StopType:** Type of stop: one of a limited number of values that summarises the stop type. See Table 6-1. Each **StopType** corresponds to a particular combination of **StopClassification** subelements (and as such is informationally redundant, but is retained for compatibility with NaPTAN 1.1). For example, **BCT** is the same as **OnStreet / Bus** stop classification. Most stop types are issued by individual Administrative areas. Some types, shown with the relevant numeric prefix of the National Area in the Nat column, are issued centrally by administrative areas that have a **National** scope.

Value	Long Value	Description	Nat		Mode	Type
<i>BCT</i>	<i>busCoachTrolleyStopOnStreet</i>  ( <i>busCoachTramStopOnStreet</i> is supported as a deprecated value)	On-street Bus / Coach / Trolley Stop.	--	<i>On street</i>	<i>BusCoach</i>	<i>MarkedPoint</i>
			--			<i>UnmarkedPoint</i>
			--			<i>HailAndRide</i>
			--			<i>FlexibleZone</i>
	<i>TXR</i>	Taxi Rank (head of).	--		<i>Taxi</i>	<i>TaxiRank</i>
	<i>STR</i>	Shared Taxi Rank (head of).	--			<i>Shared TaxiRank</i>
	<i>SDA</i>	Set down area	--			<i>Car</i>
	<i>AIR</i>	Airport Entrance.	--		<i>Air</i>	<i>Entrance</i>
	<i>GAT</i>	Airport Interchange Area.	920			<i>AccessArea</i>
<i>FTD</i>	<i>ferryTerminalDockEntrance</i>	Ferry Terminal / Dock Entrance.	--	<i>Ferry / Ship</i>	<i>Entrance</i>	
	<i>FER</i>	Ferry or Port Interchange Area	930			<i>AccessArea</i>
	<i>FBT</i>	Ferry or Port Berth	930		<i>Rail</i>	<i>Berth</i>
	<i>RSE</i>	Rail Station Entrance.	--			<i>Entrance</i>
	<i>RLY</i>	Railway Interchange Area.	910			<i>AccessArea</i>
	<i>RPL</i>	Railway Platform .	910		<i>Tram / Metro</i>	<i>Platform</i>
	<i>TMU</i>	Tram / Metro / Underground Entrance.	--			<i>Entrance</i>
	<i>MET</i>	Underground or Metro Interchange Area	940			<i>AccessArea</i>
	<i>PLT</i>	Underground or Metro platform	940			<i>Platform</i>
	<i>LCE</i>	Lift / Cable Car Entrance.	--	<i>Telecabine</i>	<i>Entrance</i>	
<i>LCB</i>	<i>liftOrCableCarAccessArea</i>	Lift / Cable Car Area	--			<i>AccessArea</i>
	<i>LPL</i>	Lift / Cable Car platform	--			<i>Platform</i>
	<i>BCE</i>	Bus / Coach Station Entrance.	--	<i>BusCoach</i>	<i>Entrance</i>	
	<i>BST</i>	Bus Coach Station Access Area.	900			<i>AccessArea</i>
	<i>BCS</i>	Bus / Coach bay / stand / stance within Bus / Coach Stations.	--			<i>Bay</i>
	<i>BCQ</i>	Bus Coach Station Variable Bay.	--			<i>VariableBay</i>

**Table 6-1 – Allowed Values for StopType**

- **OnStreet:** Grouping of on-street stop types. Divided into two groups. See below.
  - **Bus:** On-street bus & coach and trolley stops.
  - **Taxi:** Taxi ranks.
  - **Car:** Set Down and Pick up point (+NaPT v2.4)
- **OffStreet:** Grouping of off-street stop types.
  - **Air:** Airport terminal PTANs.

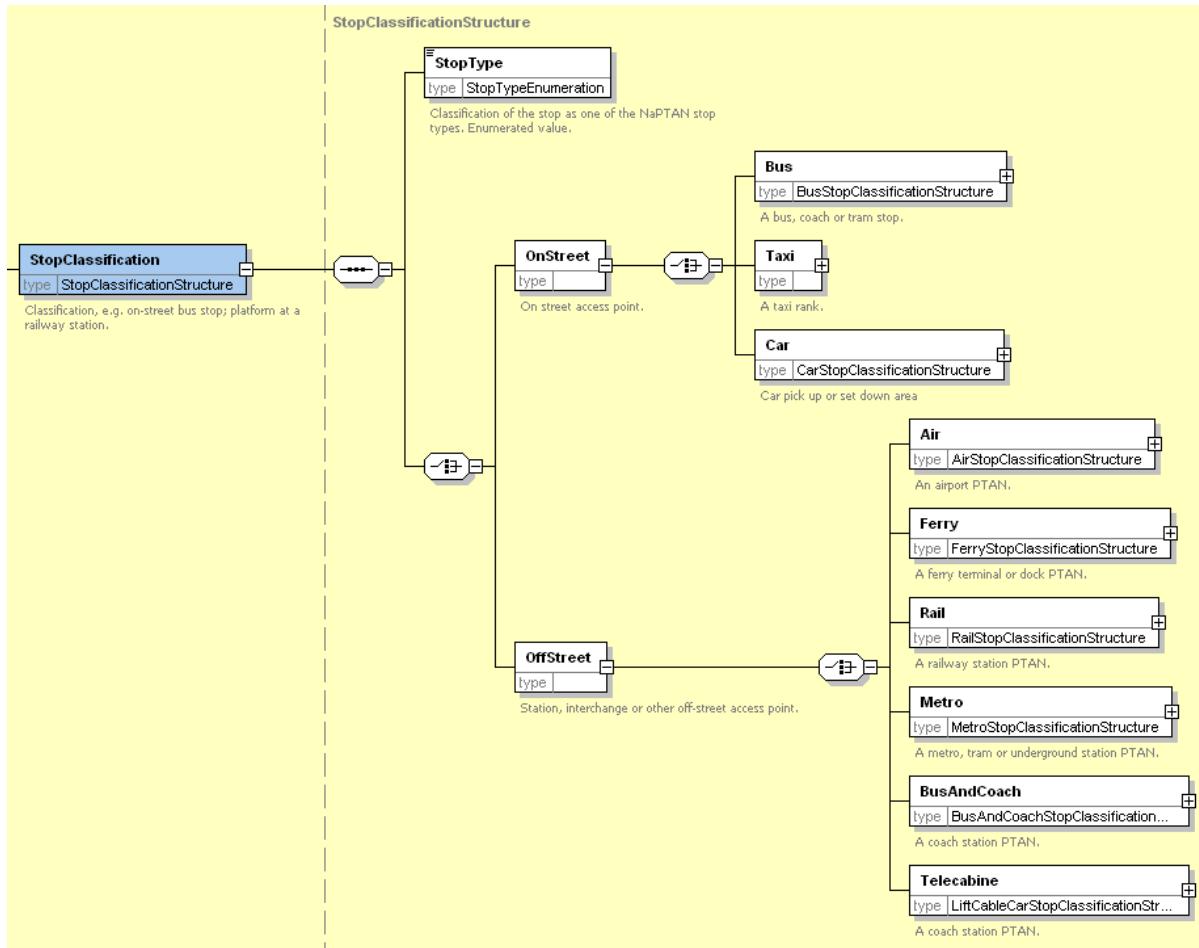
# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

- **BusAndCoach:** Bus & Coach Station PTANs.
- **Ferry:** Ferry or Dock PTANs.
- **Metro:** Metro, Underground or Tram Station Stops.
- **Rail:** Rail Station PTANs.
- **Telecabine:** Lift and Cable car PTANs (+NaPT v2.4)



**Figure 6-10 – StopClassification Element**

### StopClassification / On-Street Elements

#### 6.7.1 StopPoint / StopClassification / On-Street Bus Element

The **Bus** element (*Figure 6-11*) describes information about a stop point that is specific only to on-street bus coach or trolley stops (i.e. 'BCT' stops), and comprises:

- **BusStopType:** Classification of stop. See *Table 6-2*. Values must correspond to the **BusStopClassificationGroup** choice.

Value	Description		Bus PTAN subtype
MKD	marked	Marked (pole, shelter etc)	Point
CUS	custom	Custom (unmarked, or only marked on road)	Point
HAR	hailAndRide	Hail & Ride – requires Hail & Ride sub-record	Line
FLX	flexible	Flexible zone – Flexible Zone sub-record	Polygon

**Table 6-2 – Allowed Values for BusStopType**

- **TimingStatus:** Expected status of the bus stop in bus service registrations. See *Table 6-3*. Normally each journey pattern or vehicle journey of a *TransXChange* bus schedule will

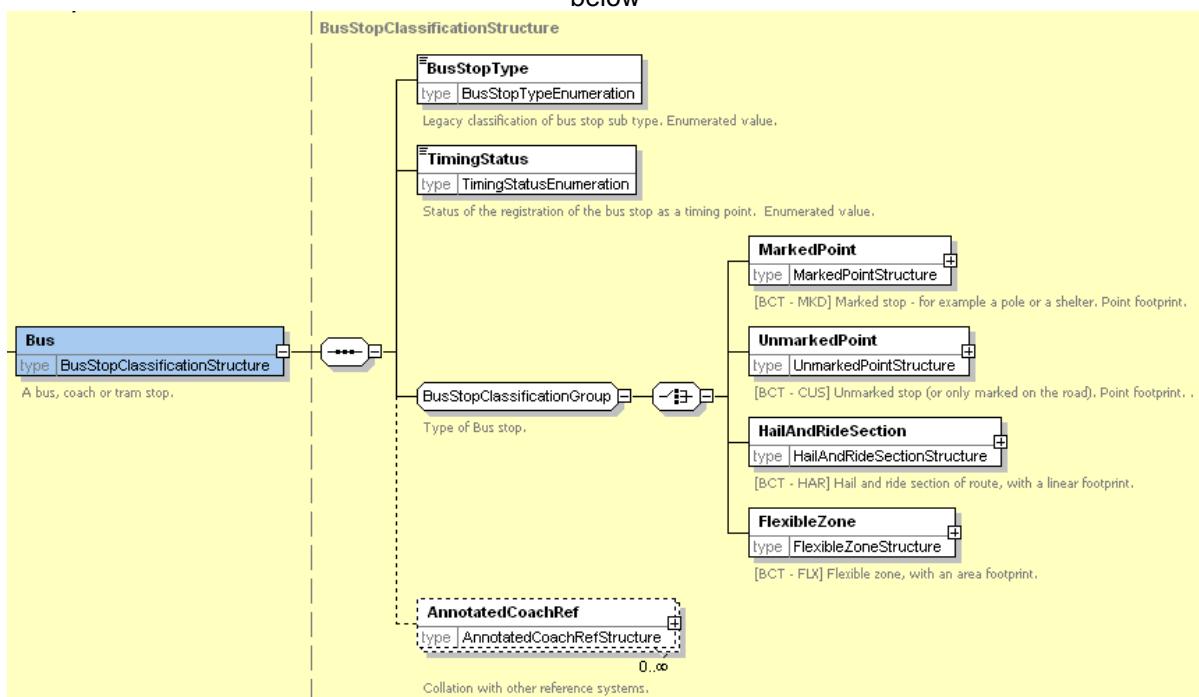
specify the specific timing status for the stop usage by an actual service that visits the stop. This is a default value that can be used to assist with the population of multiple services.

Value	Description
PTP	Principal and time info point.
TIP	Time Info Point.
PPT	Principal Point.
OTH	Other Bus Stop.

**Table 6-3 – Allowed Values for TimingStatus**

- **BusStopClassificationGroup:** The stop must be one of the following subtypes:
  - **MarkedPoint:** Stop is a marked point.
  - **UnmarkedPoint:** Stop is unmarked.
  - **HailAndRideSection:** Stop is a Hail & Ride stop. See below.
  - **FlexibleZone:** Stop is a flexible service zone.

**AnnotatedCoachRef:** Associates NaPTAN stop point with one or more a coach references. See 6.8.5: below

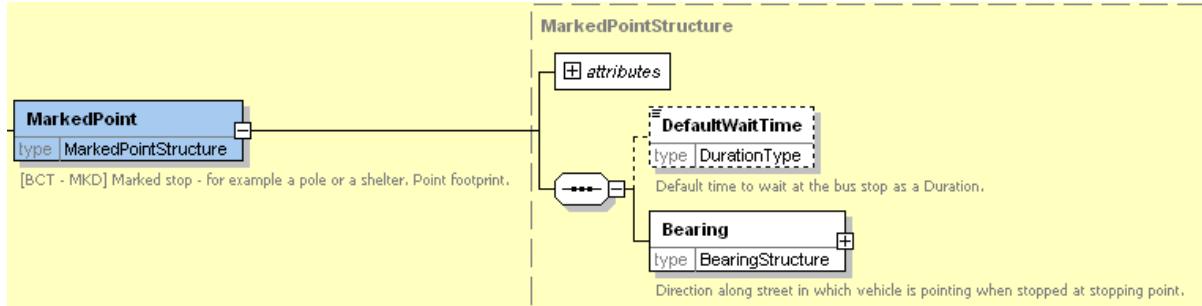


**Figure 6-11 – OnStreet / Bus Element**

#### 6.7.1.1 On-Street Bus MarkedPoint Element

The **MarkedPoint** element (Figure 6-12) describes the properties of a marked on-street bus, coach or trolley stop. (Stop type 'BCT-MKD').

- **DefaultWaitTime:** Default time to wait at the bus stop – See **Duration** common type. Normally each journey pattern or vehicle journey of a TransXChange bus schedule will specify the specific wait time for an actual service that visits the stop. This is a default value that can be used to assist with the population of multiple services.
- **Bearing:** Direction in which a vehicle is pointing when stopped at the stopping point on the road. See **Bearing** element type in *Common Schema Elements*.

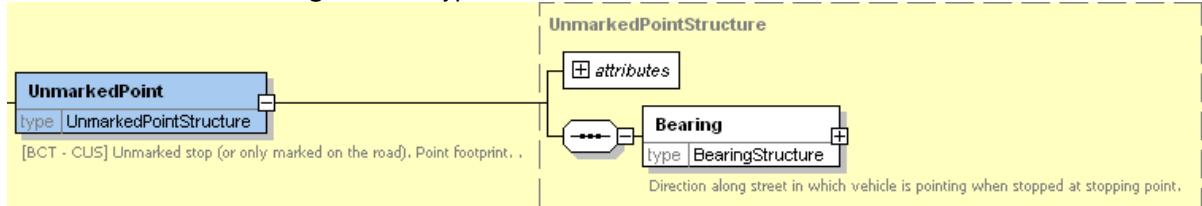


**Figure 6-12 – OnStreet / Bus / MarkedPoint Element**

#### 6.7.1.2 On-Street Bus MarkedPoint Element

The **UnmarkedPoint** element (Figure 6-12) describes the properties of an unmarked on-street bus, coach or trolley stop. (Stop type 'BCT-CUS').

- **Bearing:** Direction in which a vehicle is pointing when stopped at the stopping point on the road. See **Bearing** element type in *Common Schema Elements*.

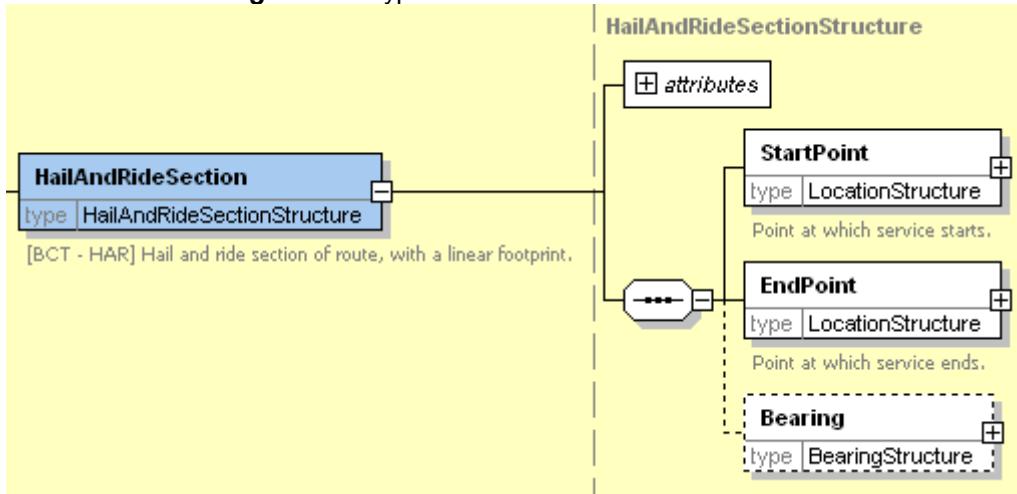


**Figure 6-13 – OnStreet / Bus / UnmarkedPoint Element**

#### 6.7.1.3 On-Street Bus HailAndRideSection Element

The **HailAndRide** element (Figure 6-14) describes the properties of a Hail-and-Ride stop section. (Stop type 'BCT-HAR').

- **StartPoint:** Location on-street at which section starts.
- **EndPoint:** Location on-street at which section ends.
- **Bearing:** Direction in which a vehicle is pointing when stopped at the anchor point of the section. See **Bearing** element type in *Common Schema Elements*.

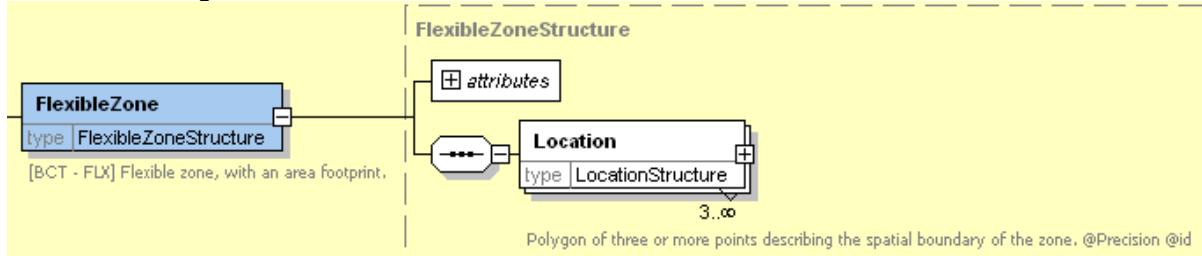


**Figure 6-14 – OnStreet / Bus / HailAndRideSection Element**

#### 6.7.1.4 On-Street Bus FlexibleZone Element

The **FlexibleZone** element (Figure 6-15) describes the properties of a flexible service stop zone. (Stop type 'BCT-FLX').

- **Location:** One or more location elements listed sequentially, describing the polygon bounding the flexible zone.

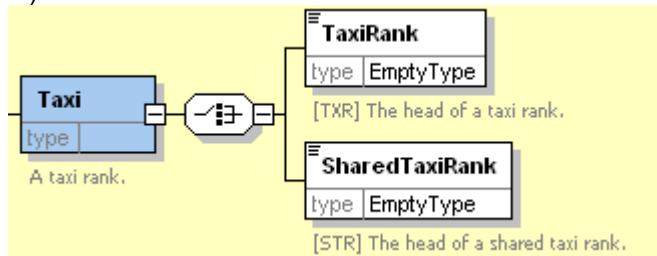


**Figure 6-15 – OnStreet / Bus / FlexibleZone Element**

### 6.7.2 On-Street Taxi Element

The **Taxi** element (Figure 6-16) describes the taxi service ‘stops’, i.e. ranks.

- **TaxiRank:** Stop is the head point of a Taxi Rank for normal taxis. (Stop type ‘TXR’).
- **SharedTaxiRank:** Stop is the head point of a Taxi Rank where shared taxis can be found. (Stop type ‘STR’).

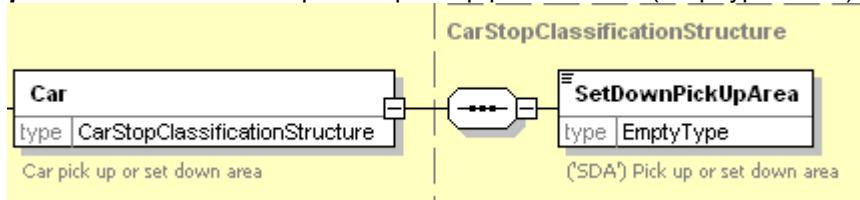


**Figure 6-16 – OnStreet / Taxi Element**

### 6.7.3 On-Street Car Element (+NaPT v2.4)

The **Car** element (Figure 6-16) describes the designated points for car passengers to access an interchange. (+NaPT v2.4).

- **PickUpandSetDownArea:** Stop is the pick-up point for cars (Stop type ‘SDA’).



**Figure 6-17 – OnStreet / Taxi Element**

## 6.8 StopClassification / Off-Street Elements

### 6.8.1 Off-Street Air Element

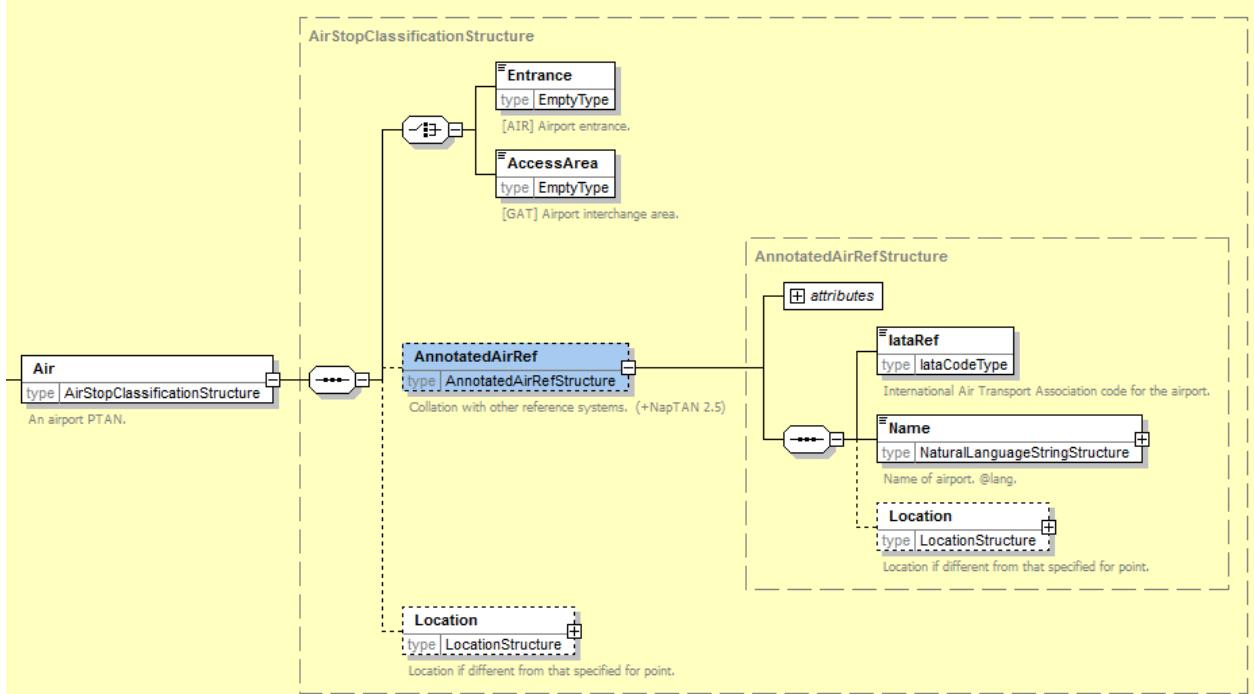
The **Air** element (Figure 6-18) categorises an airport stop . The stop points may be one of two types.

- **Entrance:** PTAN is an entrance – typically the check-in or departure area to the terminal. (Stop type ‘AIR’).
- **AccessArea:** PTAN is an airside interchange area. (Stop type ‘GAT’).

The stop may also be associated with other elements:

- **AnnotatedAirRef:** Translates NaPTAN stop point into an airport reference.
  - **IataRef:** IATA code for the airport.
  - **Name:** Short name of the airport location.

- **Location:** Optional Location of the airport if different from the NaPTAN value.



**Figure 6-18 – OffStreet / Air Element**

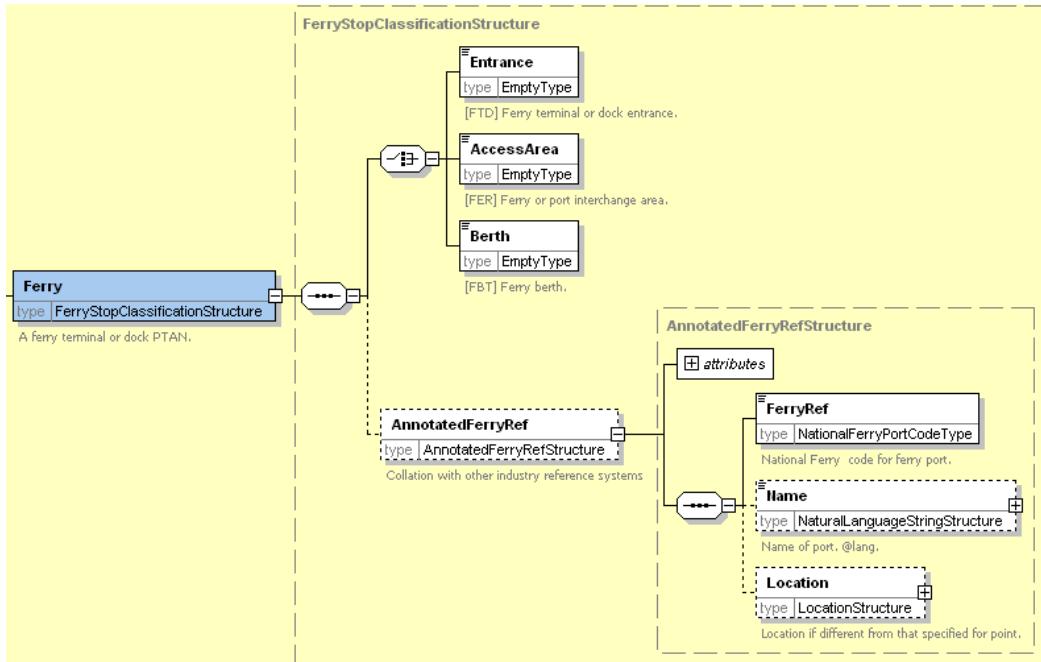
### 6.8.2 Off-Street Ferry Element

The **Ferry** element (*Figure 6-19*) categorises a ferry port or dock stop point. The stop points may be one of three types.

- **Entrance:** PTAN is an entrance – typically the entrance to the harbour area. (Stop type 'FTD').
- **AccessArea:** PTAN is an interchange area within the harbour – typically the main area of ship berths. (Stop type 'FER').
- **Berth:** PTAN is a berth within the harbour from which a boat is boarded. (Stop type 'FBT').

The stop may also be associated with other elements:

- **AnnotatedFerryRef:** Translates NaPTAN stop point into a ferry port reference:
  - **FerryRef:** Reference to the National Ferry/Port code of the ferry harbour or port.
  - **Name:** Short name of the ferry harbour or port.
  - **Location:** Optional Location of the ferry harbour or port.



**Figure 6-19 – OffStreet / Ferry Element**

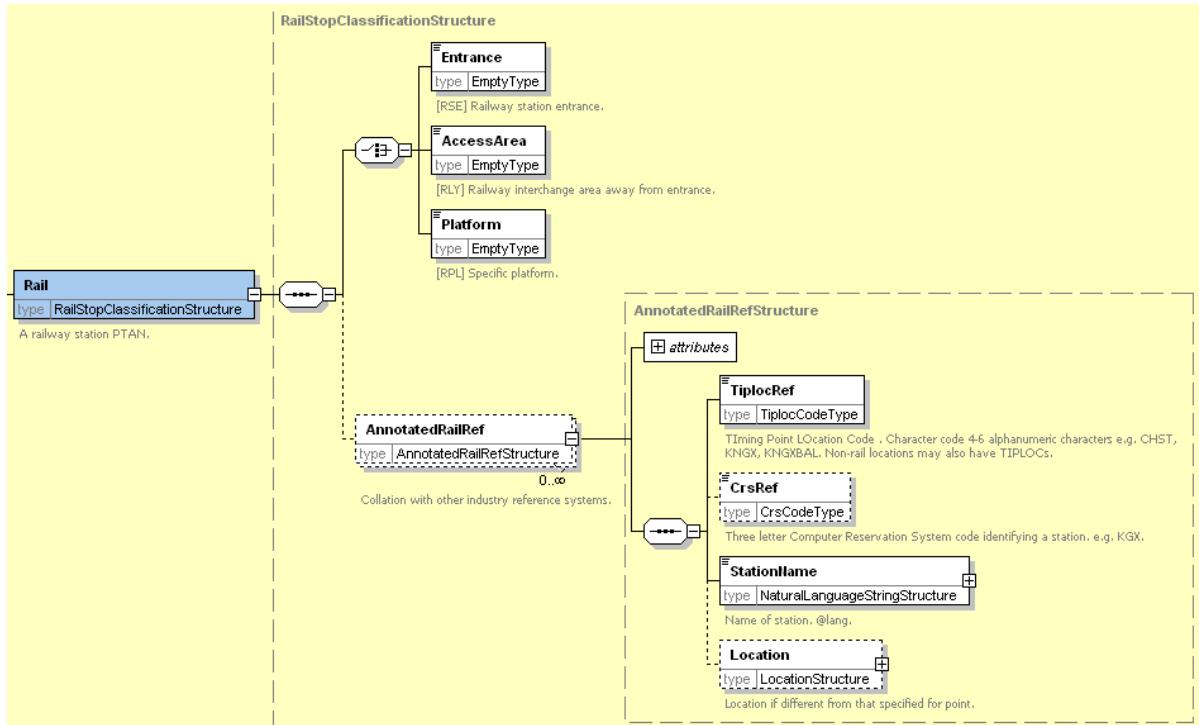
### 6.8.3 Off-Street Rail Element

The **Rail** element (Figure 6-20) categorises a railway stop. The stop points may be one of three types.

- **Entrance:** PTAN is an entrance – typically the entrance to the station. (Stop type ‘RSE’).
- **AccessArea:** PTAN is an interchange area within the station – typically the main area of platforms. (Stop type ‘RLY’).
- **Platform:** A specific platform within the station. (Stop type ‘RPL’).

The stop may also be associated with other elements:

- **AnnotatedRailRef:** Translates a *NaPTAN* stop point into the location coding system used by rail systems. May be more than one per *NaPTAN* point.
  - **TiplocRef:** Reference to the National Timing Point Location (TIPLOC) code of the station or rail-related location (locations other than stations may also have TIPLOCS). Alphanumeric code.
  - **CrsRef:** Reference to the National Computer Reservation System (CRS) code of the station. CRS codes are short three or four letter mnemonic codes for each station.
  - **StationName:** Text name of the station.
  - **Location:** Optional Location of the station.



**Figure 6-20 – RailExchange Element**

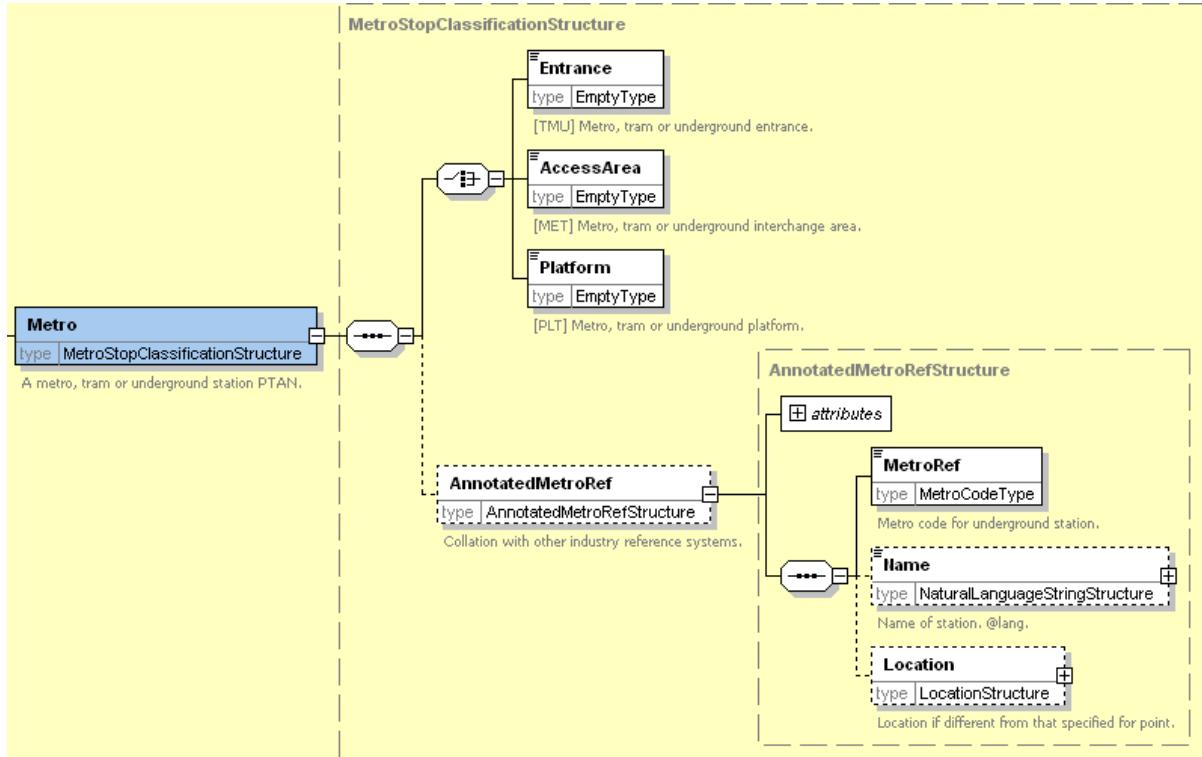
#### 6.8.4 Off-Street Metro Element

The **Metro** element (Figure 6-21) categorises a metro, light rail, or underground stop. The stop points may be one of three types.

- **Entrance:** PTAN is an entrance – typically the entrance to the station. (Stop type ‘TMU’).
- **AccessArea:** PTAN is an interchange area within the building – typically the main area of platforms. (Stop type ‘MET’).
- **Platform:** A specific platform within the station. (Stop type ‘PLT’).

The stop may also be associated with other elements:

- **AnnotatedMetroRef:** Translates NaPTAN stop point into a metro station reference:
  - **MetroRef:** Reference to the National Metro/ code of the station location.
  - **Name:** Short name of the metro station.
  - **Location:** Optional Location of the metro station.



**Figure 6-21 – OffStreet / Metro Element**

#### 6.8.5 Off-Street BusAndCoach Element

A **BusAndCoach** element (Figure 6-22) categorises a bus or coach stop. The stop points may be one of four types.

- **Entrance:** PTAN is an entrance – typically the entrance to the station. (Stop type ‘BCE’).
- **AccessArea:** PTAN is an unspecified bay in the general interchange area. The default **TimingStatus** of the stop may be specified. See *Table 6-3*. Services may use variable stop allocations to allocate. (Stop type ‘BST’).
- **Bay:** PTAN is a specific bay (Stop type ‘BCS’).
  - The default **TimingStatus** of the stop may be specified. See *Table 6-3*.
- **VariableBay:** PTAN is a variable bay. (Stop type ‘BCQ’). A variable bay indicates that the bus may be assigned to a different bay at run time.
  - The default **TimingStatus** of the stop may be specified. See *Table 6-3*.

The stop may also be associated with other elements:

- **AnnotatedCoachRef:** Translates NaPTAN stop point into a coach station reference:
  - **OperatorRef:** Reference to the operator code of the coach operator.
  - **CoachRef:** Unique identifier for the coach Stop Point used by a coach company. (Normally from the Nationally unique range including for example stop codes used by the National Express Group).
  - **Name:** Short name of the coach location.
  - **LongName:** Long name of the coach location.
  - **Location:** Optional Location of the coach location.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

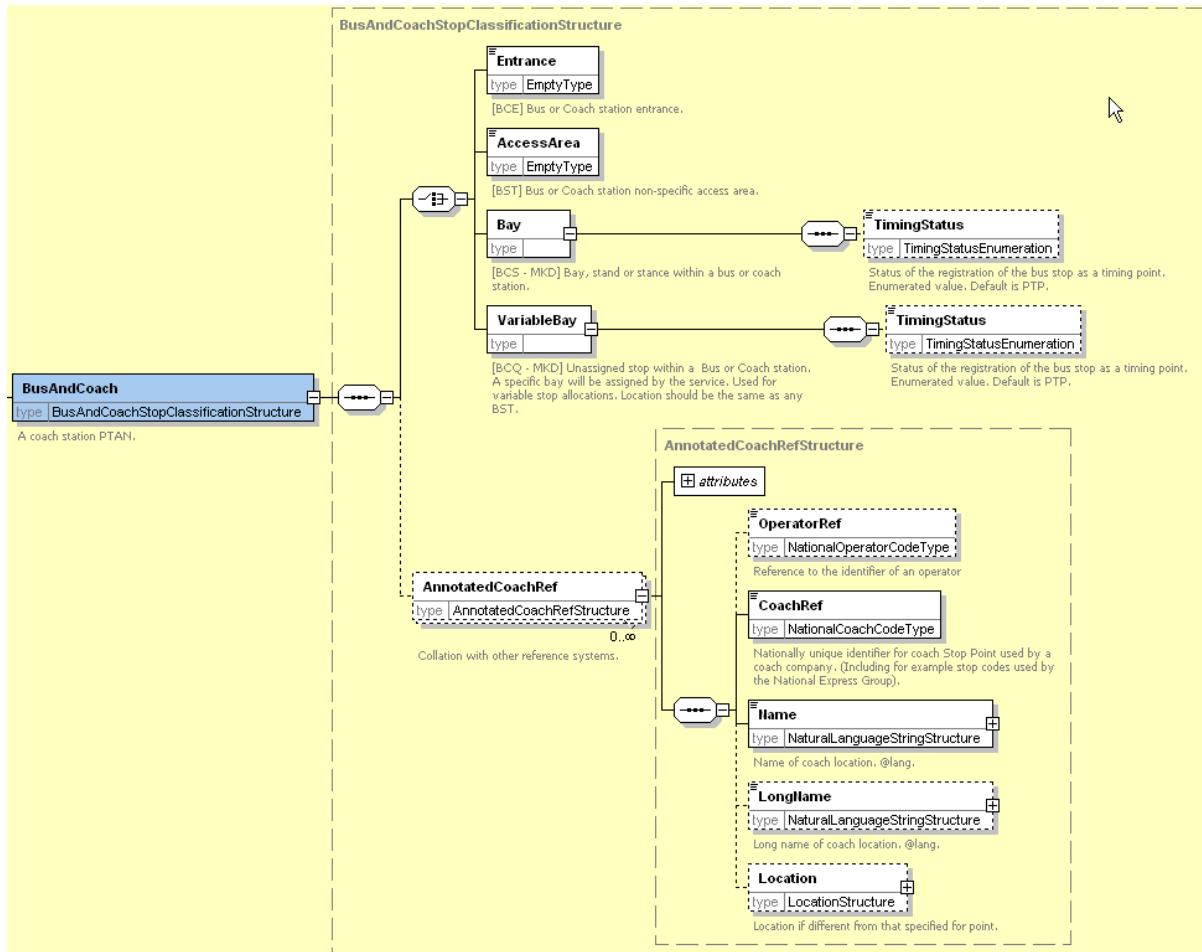


Figure 6-22 – OffStreet / Coach Element

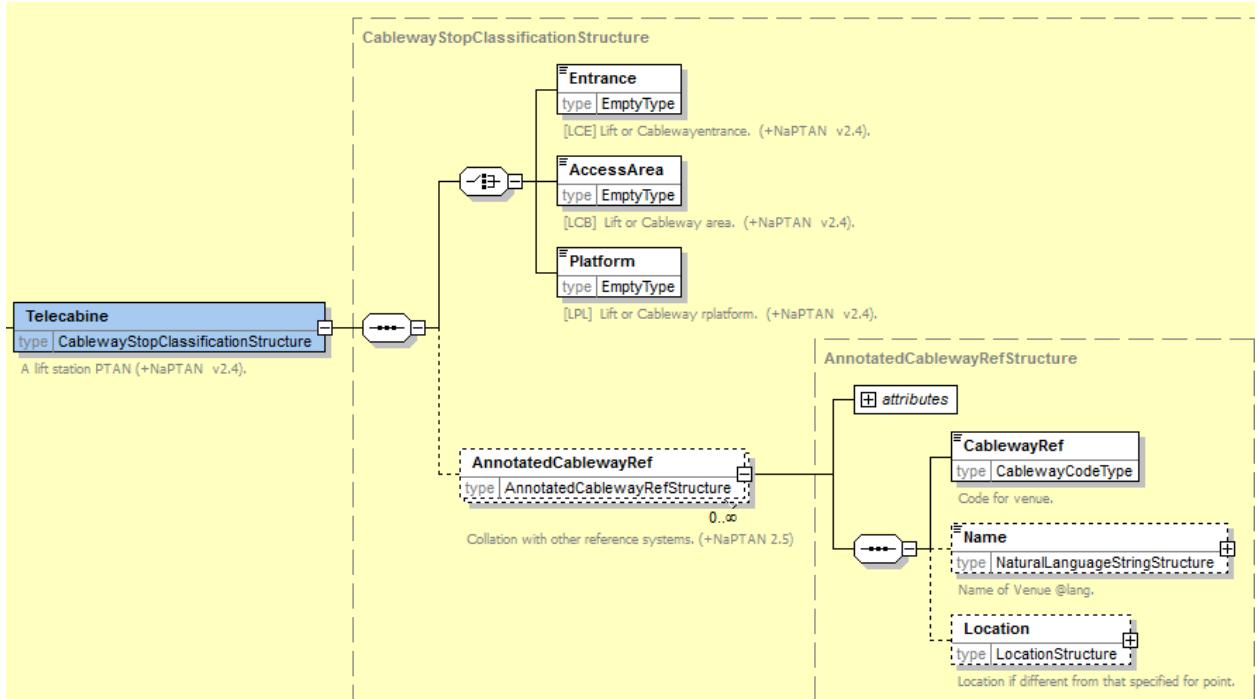
#### 6.8.6 Off-Street Telecabine (Lift & Cable Car) Element (+NaPT v2.4)

The **Telecabine** element (Figure 6-21) categorises a lift or cable car stop. The stop points may be one of three types. (+NaPT v2.4).

- **Entrance**: PTAN is an entrance – typically the entrance to the lift station. (Stop type ‘LCE’).
- **AccessArea**: PTAN is an interchange area within the lift station – typically the main area of platforms. (Stop type ‘LCB’).
- **Platform**: A specific platform within the lift station. (Stop type ‘LPL’).

The stop may also be associated with other elements:

- **AnnotatedCablewayRef**: Translates NaPTAN stop point into a lift station reference: (+NaPT v2.5).
  - **CablewayRef** : Unique identifier for the lift Stop Point used by a cableway operator.
  - **Name** Short name of the lift station location.
- **Location**: Optional Location of the lift station location



**Figure 6-23 – OffStreet / Telecabine Element**

## 6.9 StopAvailability Element

The **StopAvailability** element (Figure 6-24) specifies when the stop is available for use. It comprises one or more **StopValidity** instances, ordered in order of their start dates.

Each **StopValidity** instance comprises:

- A **DateRange**: Period for which status applies
  - **StartDate**: Date from which the specified stop validity status applies
  - **EndDate**: Date at which status ceases to apply. If omitted, state continues indefinitely or until the **StartDate** of the next **Validity**.

A status: one of the following:

- **Active**: Stop is active at its current location.
- **Suspended**: Stop is suspended from use.
- **Transferred**: Stop is suspended from use and activity transferred to the stop indicated by the **StopPointRef**. The referenced stop should be different to the current stop.
- **Note**: Any explanation accompanying the validity period.

Note that the **Status** attribute on **StopPoint** should correspond with any stop validity in effect at the time of export. If no explicit stop validity is present, the stop is assumed to have an implicit validity in effect indefinitely, as indicated by the stop's **Status** attribute: if the **StopPoint / Status** is '**active**', the validity status will be **Active**, if the **StopPoint / Status** is '**Inactive**' it will be **Suspended**.

From v2.4 the interpretation of StopAvailability is revised to ensure that a stop which may be currently suspended or transferred remains available to be used as a substantive stop point in the registration of a bus service. So StopAvailability is now associated with an ACTive stop – and it is an ACTive stop, therefore, that can be suspended or transferred (but remains ACTive in each case). StopAvailability has no effect on a stop which is already marked as DELETED.

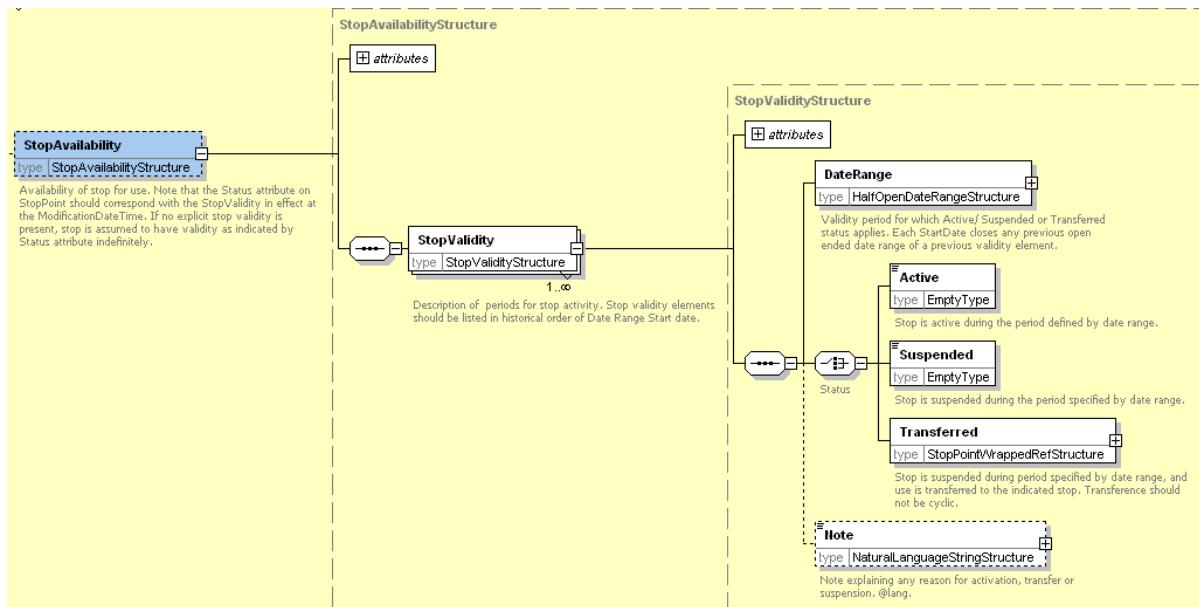


Figure 6-24 – Stop Availability Element

## 6.10 StopAccessibility Element (V2.5)

The **StopAccessibility** element (Figure 6-25) specifies the accessibility of the stop for mobility impaired users. It comprises an overall assessment and a number of criteria.:.

- A **MobilityImpairedAccess**: Overall assessment of the stop for accessibility. This can be used for example to indicate accessible and inaccessible stops on maps and in journey planners. See Limitation Status (Table 6-4) for allowed values. For a topologically simple stop such as an on-street bus stop, this will typically be the same as the **WheelchairAccess** status. For complex stops such as metro and rail stations it requires an overall judgement based on the accessibility of individual platforms. For example a station which requires the use of a flight of steps to reach the main platform would be considered inaccessible.
- **SiteAccessibilityGroup**: General accessibility properties of a location. See below.
- **StopAccessibilityGroup**: Specific accessibility properties of a stop. See below.

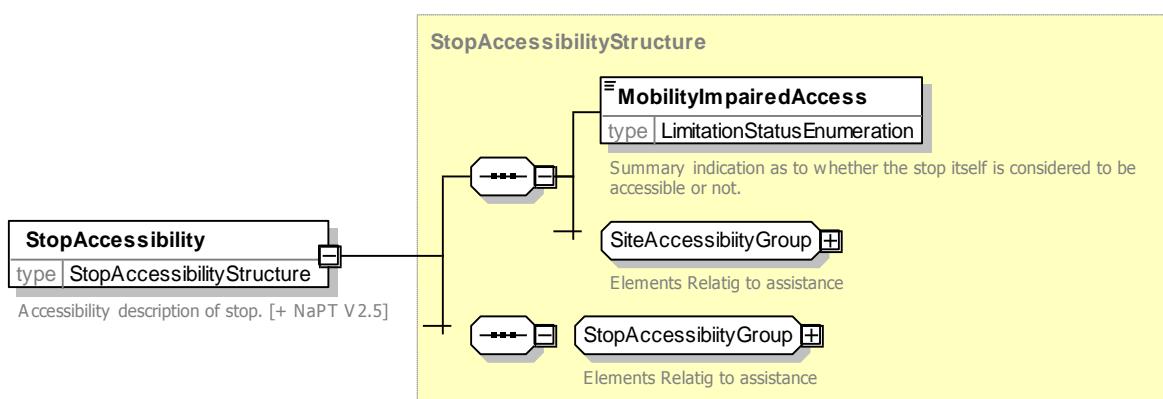


Figure 6-25 – StopAccessibility Element

#### 6.10.1 SiteAccessibility Group (V2.5)

The **SiteAccessibilityGroup** element (Figure 6-26) groups elements specifying the general accessibility of the site for mobility impaired users. It comprises:

Specific assessments:

- **WheelchairAccess:** Whether stop is accessible to wheelchair users. See Limitation Status (Table 6-4) for allowed values. Normally if there is Step free access there will be wheelchair access. However wheelchair access may additional require assistance, use of a boarding ramp etc.
- **StepFreeAccess:** Whether stop is accessible without the use of steps. See Limitation Status (Table 6-4) for allowed values.
- **EscalatorFreeAccess:** Whether stop is accessible without the use of escalator. See Limitation Status (Table 6-4) for allowed values.
- **LiftFreeAccess:** Whether stop is accessible without the use of lifts. See Limitation Status (Table 6-4) for allowed values. Lift free access may be of concern to sufferers from claustrophobia, autism and other conditions.

Limitation Status (Table 6-4).shows the allowed values for accessibility assessments. Note that a value of unknown should be used if the accessibility is not known.

Value	Description
<i>true</i>	Stop is considered accessible according to criteria.
<i>false</i>	Stop is not considered accessible according to criteria.
<i>partial</i>	Stop is partial accessible according to criteria: some areas are not accessible.
<i>unknown</i>	The accessibility of the stop according to the criteria a not known.
<i>defaultByType</i>	If no explicit value is specified then value will be assumed by stop type. See below.

**Table 6-4 – Allowed Values for LimitationStatus**

- The Limitation Status includes an “unknown” value which can be used when the accessibility status is not known. It is reasonable to assume that Air, Bus and Coach Stops will usually be accessible even if a value is not specified. See Table 6-5.

	Value to assume if unspecified			
Mode	Wheelchair	StepFree	EscalatorFree	LiftFree
Air	True	unknown	True	unknown
Rail	unknown	unknown	True	True
Metro	unknown	unknown	unknown	unknown
Ferry	unknown	unknown	True	True
Tram	unknown	unknown	True	True
Bus	True	True	True	True
Coach	True	True	True	True

**Table 6-5 – Accessibility defaults by mode**

Assistance values:

- **AccessVehicle:** Details on accessibility for wheelchair users. See below
- **AssistanceServiceAvailability:** Availability of an assistance service available for disabled users. See Assistance ServiceAvailability (Table 6-6 for allowed values).

Value	Description
<i>none</i>	Assistance service is not available from Operator.
<i>available</i>	Assistance is available from Operator.
<i>availableIfBooked</i>	Assistance is available if booked.
<i>availableAtCertainTimes</i>	Assistance is available at certain times.
<i>unknown</i>	Not known if available.

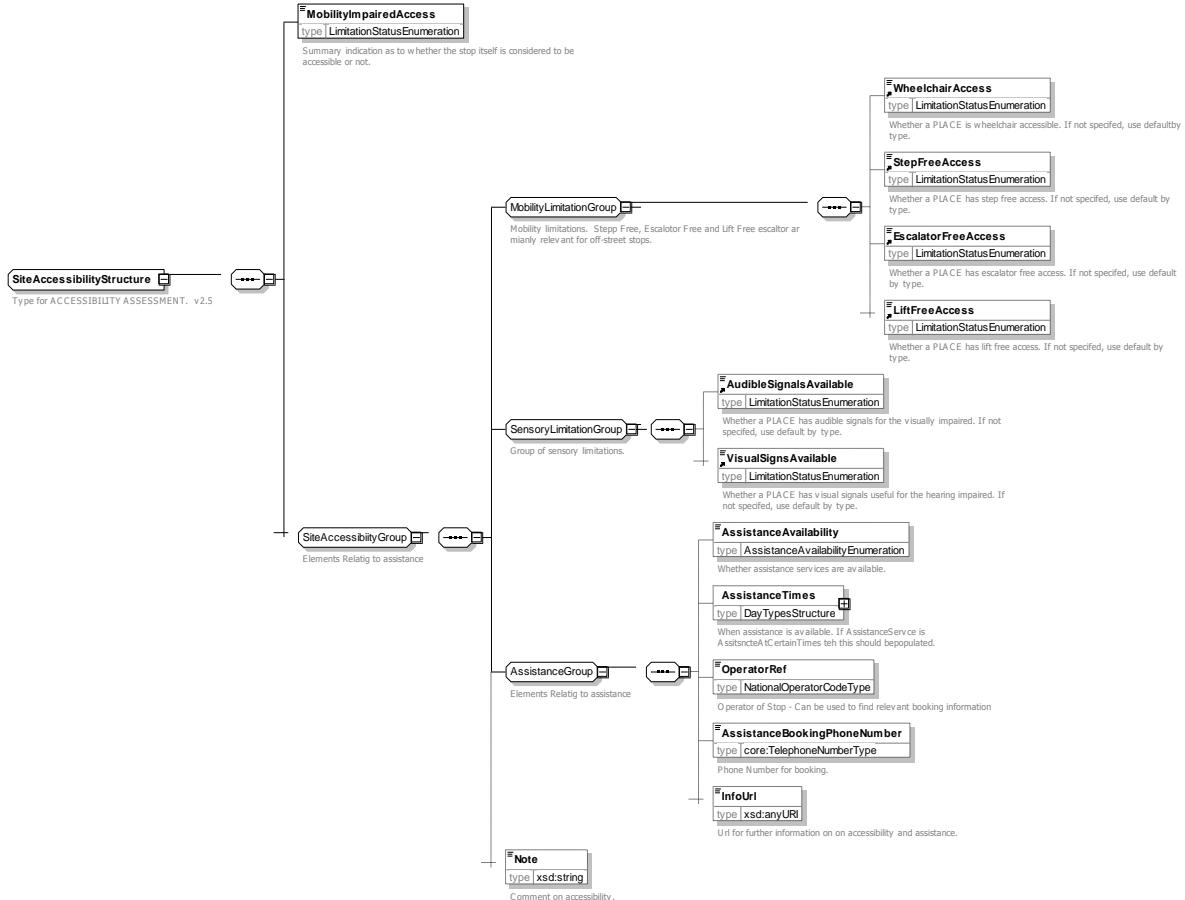
**Table 6-6 – Allowed Values for AssistanceServiceAvailability**

- **AssistanceTimes:** Times when assistance is available.
  - **DayType:** Type for day and Timeband. See below.

- **OperatorRef:** Identifier of operator who provides service. This can be used to integrate booking details and other information.
- **AssistanceBookingPhoneNumber:** Phone number to book assistance at the stop.
- **InfoUrl:** Public URL with information about accessibility at the stop.

Further details

- **Note:** Any comment accompanying the accessibility.

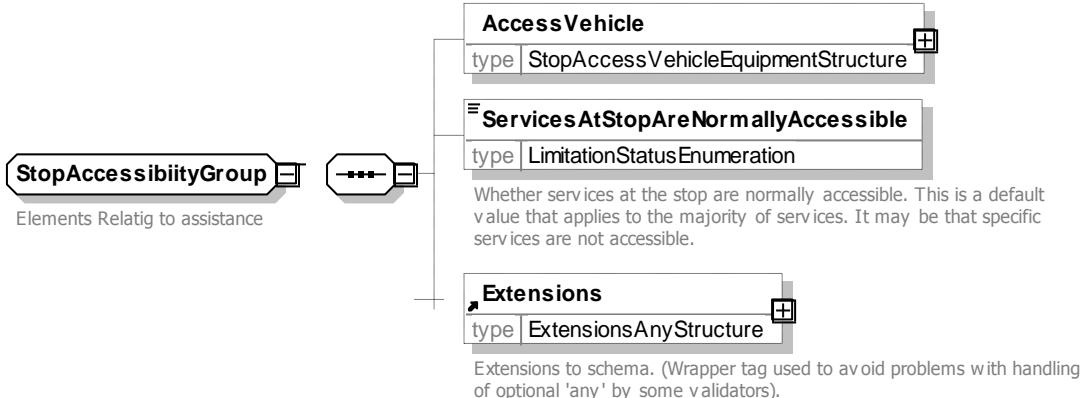


**Figure 6-26 – SiteAccessibilityGroup Group**

#### 6.10.1 StopAccessibility Group (V2.5)

The **StopAccessibility** element (Figure 6-27) groups elements specifying the general accessibility of the site for mobility impaired users. It comprises:

- The **AccessVehicle** element describes some properties relevant for wheelchair access to vehicles at the stop. See below
- **ServicesAtStopAreNormallyAccessible:** Whether services at the stop are normally accessible, for example the vehicle type has low floor, a wheelchair hoist, etc. This is a default value for indicative guidance only. It may be that specific services are not accessible. See Limitation Status (Table 6-4) for allowed values.



**Figure 6-27 – StopAccessibilityGroup Group**

#### 6.10.2 AccessVehicle Element

The **AccessVehicle** element (Figure 6-28) describes some properties relevant for wheelchair access at the stop.

- **LowFloor**: Normal access at stop is with a low floor vehicle.
- **Hoist**: Normal access to vehicle at stop is with a hoist.
- **HoistOperatingRadius** : Distance from vehicle needed to operate hoist.
- **Ramp**: Normal access to vehicle at stop is with a ramp.
- **RampBearingCapacity** : Maximum weight allowed on ramp or Hoist.
- **NumberOfSteps** : Number of steps to board.
- **BoardingHeight** : Height of vehicle to board above platform
- **GapToPlatform** : Gap between carriage and platform. Where this varies this should be for the best boarding position.
- **WidthOfAccessArea** : Width of access area – e.g. train door.
- **HeightOfAccessArea** : Height of access area – e.g. train door.
- **AutomaticDoors** : Whether vehicle or carriage has automatic doors
- **SuitableFor** : Mobility need for which access is suitable. See Table 6-7 below.

Value	Description
wheelchair	Wheelchair
assistedWheelchair	Wheelchair pushed by companion
motorizedWheelchair	Motorized Wheelchair
mobilityScooter	Small mobility Scooter: A Class 2 scooter under the CPT classification with 3 or 4 wheels, not more than 600mm wide and 1000 mm long and with a turning radius not exceeding 1200mm. Normally weigh about 65 kg.
roadMobilityScooter	Large Mobility Scooter: A Class 3 scooter under the CPT classification. Class 3 scooters are bigger and have light for road use. They are not normally allowed on buses.
walkingFrame	Walking Frame
restrictedMobility	Restricted Mobility
normal	Normal mobility

**Table 6-7 – Allowed Values for MobilityNeed**

- **AssistanceNeeded** : Nature of assistance needed to board See (Table 6-8).

Value	Description
levelAccess	Level access – passenger can propel themselves
rampRequired	Assistance with ramp needed.
hoistRequired	Assistance with hoist needed.
unknown	Not known.

**Table 6-8 – Allowed Values for AssistanceNeeded**

## Department for Transport

### NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

#### Part II

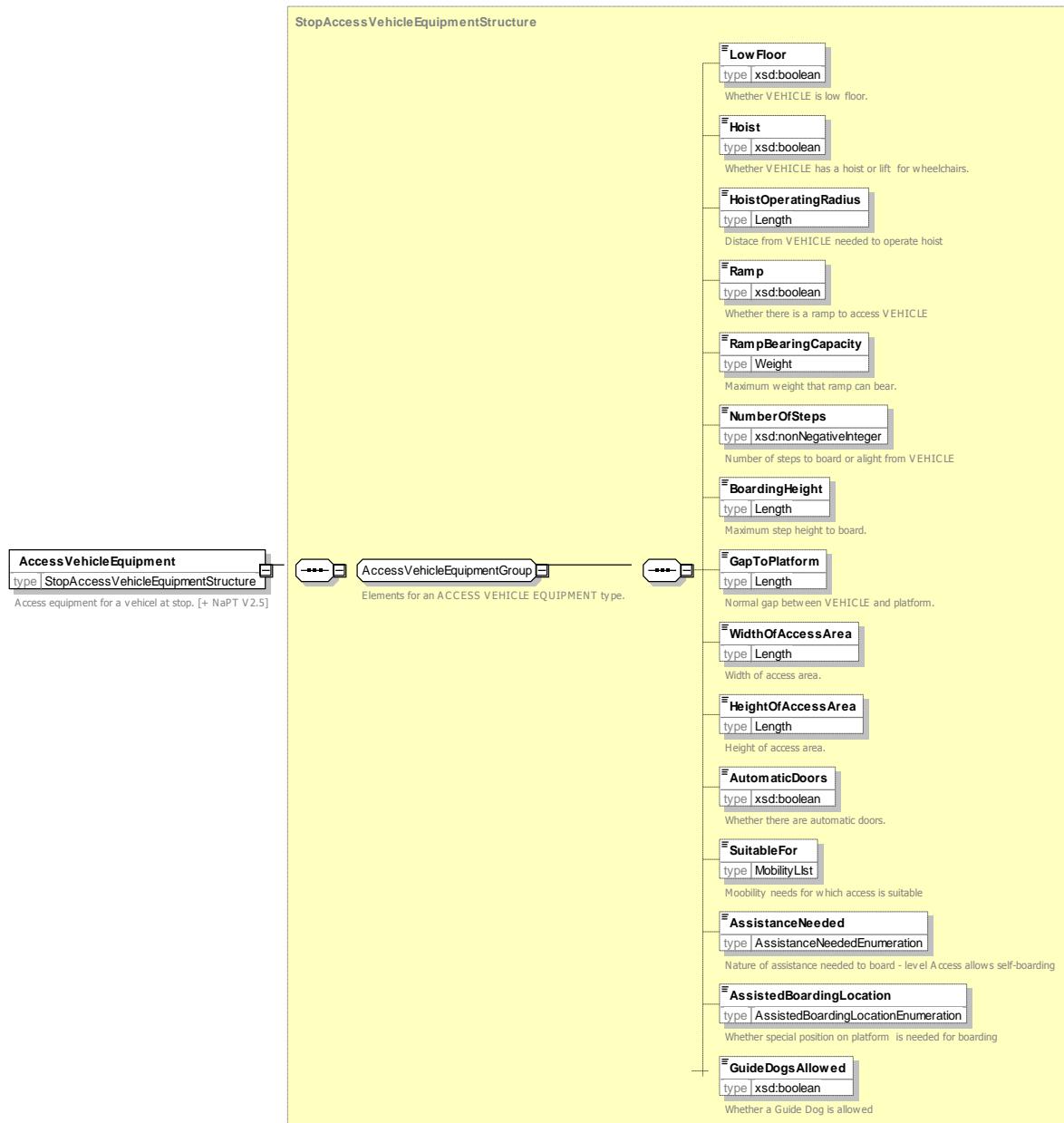
#### Schemas

- **AssistedBoardingLocation** : Whether boarding has to be done at a specific position on the platform. See Table 6-9).

Value	Description
<i>boardAtAnyDoor</i>	Boarding can be at any location
<i>boardOnlyAtSpecifiedPositions</i>	Boarding must be at specific positions on platform
<i>unknown</i>	Not known.

**Table 6-9 – Allowed Values for AssistedBoardingLocation**

- **GuideDogsAllowed** : Whether guide dogs are allowed.



**Figure 6-28 – AccessVehicle Element**

#### 6.10.3 DayType Element

The **DayType** element (Figure 6-29) describes a day type including Timeband.

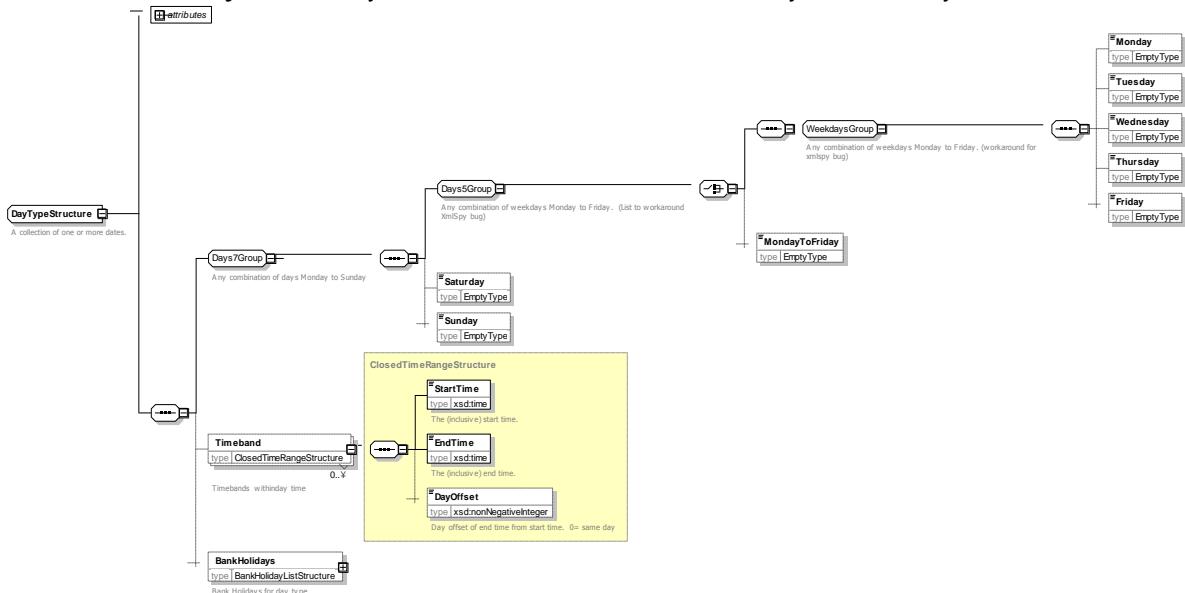
# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

- **DaysOfWeek:** The days of week can be specified **Monday Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday MondayToFriday**
- **PublicHolidays:** The bank holidays to which the day type applies.
- **Timeband:** Timeband within day.
  - **StartTime:** Time that band starts.
  - **EndTime :** Time that band ends.
  - **DayOffset:** Day of set if **EndTime** is in the next day. 0=same day.



**Figure 6-29 – DayType Element**

#### 6.10.4 BankHolidays Element

The **BankHolidays** element (Figure 6-30) specifies the bank holidays that apply to a **DayType**.

- **AllBankHolidays:** Other elements are all assumed.
- Specific holidays **ChristmasDay**, **BoxkingDay**, **GoodFriday**, etc.



**Figure 6-30 – BankHolidays Element**

## 6.11 StopArea Element

A **StopArea** (Figure 6-31) groups stops. A **StopArea** comprises the following elements:

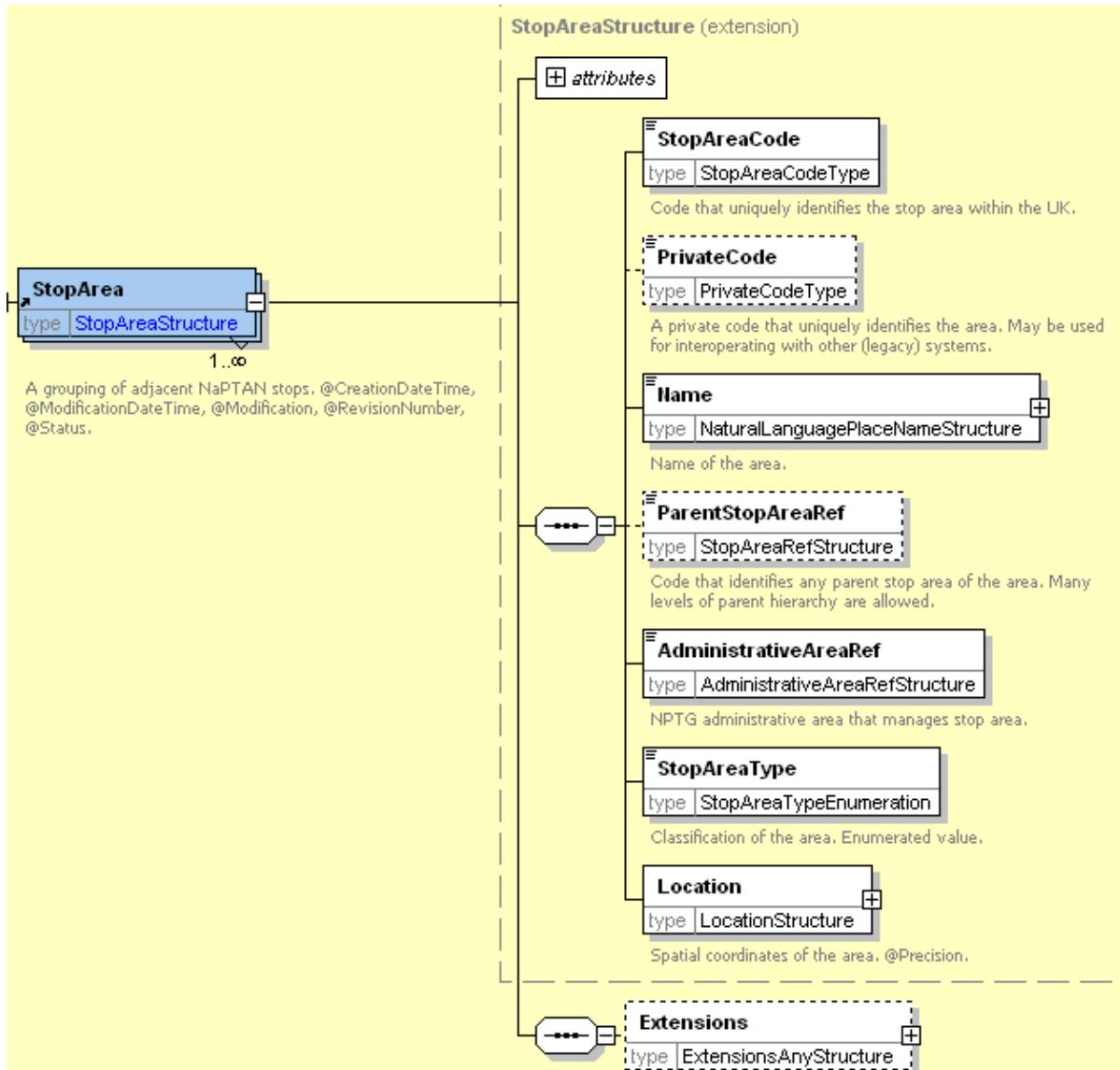
- **StopAreaCode**: Unique *NaPTAN* system identifier of stop area.
- **PrivateCode**: Unique identifier with which to associate a *NaPTAN StopArea* with other identifiers used by other systems. This element is to support the general exchange of stop data, and is not part of the *NaPTAN* database. For example when **StopArea** definitions are exchanged in *TransXChange* or for AVL systems, it may be useful to annotate them with private identifiers.
- **ParentAreaRef**: Code of parent **StopArea**. Stop areas may be organised into a hierarchy (see earlier discussion of the *NaPTAN* model). Each **StopArea** can have a single parent, which may in turn have a parent and further ancestors. Each **StopArea** can be referenced as a parent by many other stop areas, i.e. have many children, each of which may have further descendants. References must not be cyclic, i.e. a **StopArea** cannot be its own ancestor or descendant.

- **Name:** Name of the **StopArea**.
- **AdministrativeAreaRef:** NPTG **AdministrativeArea** responsible for managing stop area.
- **StopAreaType:** Type of **StopArea**. See Table 6-10.

Value	Description	Use
GAIR	Airport Building.	1.0
GFTD	Ferry Terminal or Dock Building	1.0
GRLS	Rail Station.	1.0
GTMU	Tram / Metro / Underground Station.	1.0
GBCS	Bus / Coach Station.	1.0
GCCH	Coach Service Coverage	2.0
GCLS	On-street Bus / Coach / Trolley stops cluster (more than two stops in the same general location).	1.0
GLCB	Lift or Cable car station	+NaPT v2.4
GPBS	On-street Bus/ Coach / Trolley stop pair (one in each direction).	1.0
(GMLT)	Multimode Interchange	DEPRECATED 2.0
(GOTH)	Other Interchange.	DEPRECATED 2.0

**Table 6-10 – Allowed Values for StopArea Classification**

- **Location:** Spatial location of the centre of the area.
  - **Location** is given as point with an optional approximate precision to indicate the **StopArea** size. An exact polygon of the **Stop Area**'s boundaries is not provided. The **StopArea** can be considered to include at least the area defined by the **Place** / **Location** points all of its own immediate **StopPoint** member instances.
  - In addition to this **Location**, the **StopArea** is considered to be associated with all the NPTG localities (and alternative localities) of its member stops. This is a derived relationship. Different stops in a given stop area may belong to different **NptgLocality** instances, although it is best to avoid this if possible..

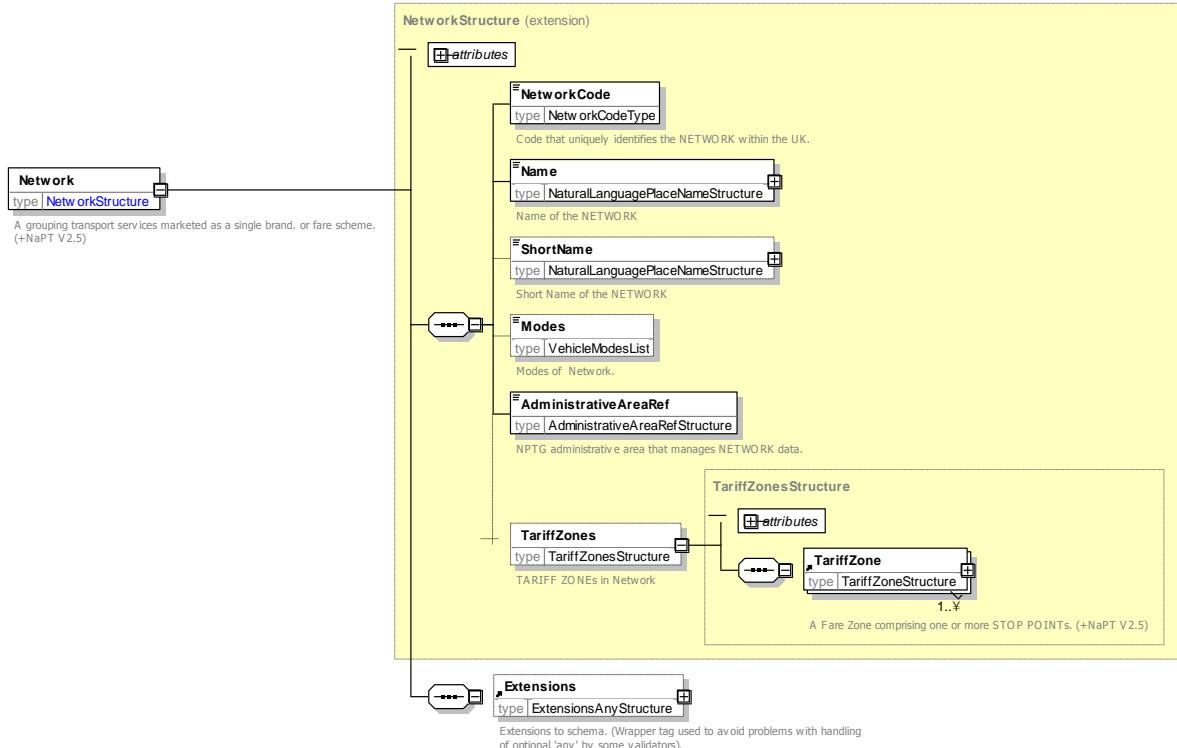


**Figure 6-31 – StopArea Element**

## 6.12 Network Element (+NaPT v2.5)

A **Network** (Figure 6-32) groups the **TariffZones** of a fare scheme. A **Network** comprises the following elements:

- **NetworkCode**: Unique NaPTAN identifier of **Network**.
- **Name**: Name of the **Network**.
- **ShortName**: Name of the **Network**.
- **Modes**: Transport Modes of the **Network**.
- **AdministrativeAreaRef**: NPTG **AdministrativeArea** responsible for managing Network.
- **TariffZones**: A list of TariffZone elements that belong to the Network's Fare scheme.

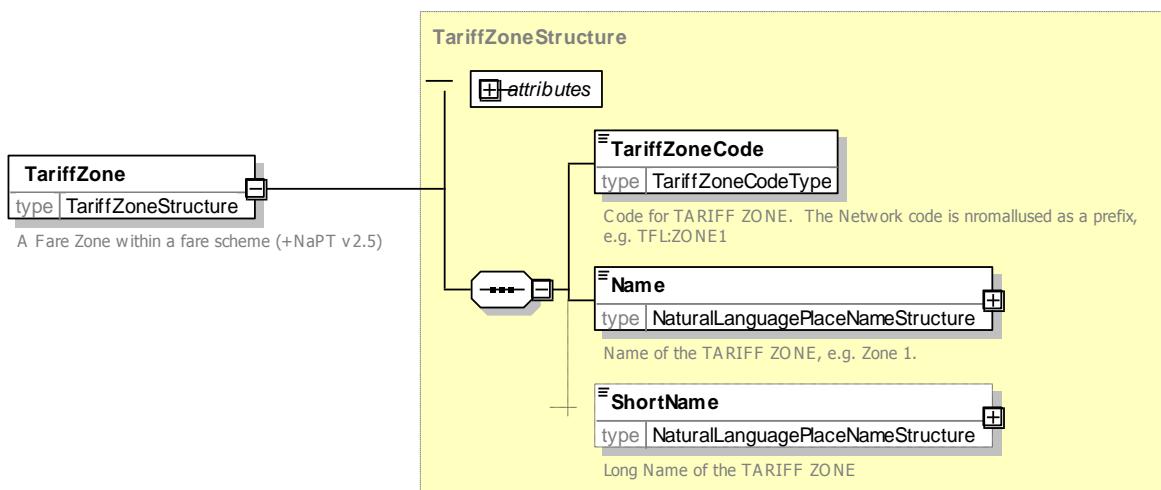


**Figure 6-32 – Network Element**

### 6.13 TariffZone Element (+NaPT v2.5)

A **TariffZone** (Figure 6-32) identifies an individual **TariffZone**. A **TariffZone** comprises the following elements:

- **TariffZone Code:** Unique NaPTAN identifier of Network., for example “TfL:ZONE1”
- **Name:** Name of the **TariffZone**.
- **ShortName:** Name of the **TariffZone**.

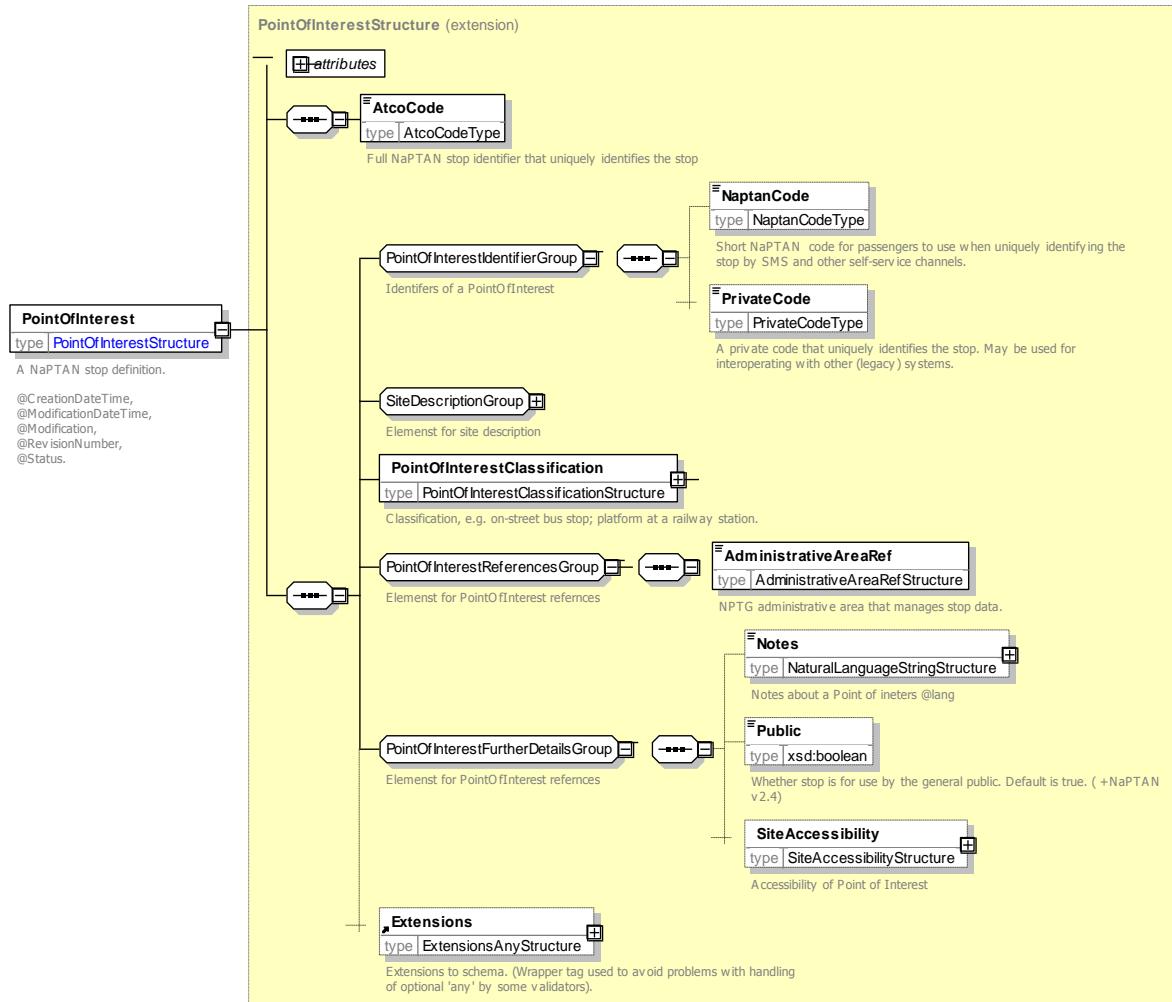


**Figure 6-33 – TariffZone Element**

## 6.14 PointOfInterest Element (+NaPT v2.5)

A **PointOfInterest** (Figure 6-32) identifies an individual **PointOfInterest**. A **PointOfInterest** comprises the following elements:

- **AtcoCode**: Unique NaPTAN system identifier of **PointOfInterest**. Codes are unique within the NaPTAN database for Great Britain. **PointOfInterest** codes begin with “8”.
- **NaptanCode**: Unique NaPTAN public identifier of **PointOfInterest**.
- **PrivateCode**: Unique identifier for associating stop with other identifiers used by other systems.
- **SiteDescriptionGroup**: Groups together elements describing the name and whereabouts of a **PointOfInterest**. See earlier.
- **PointOfInterestClassification**: categorizes the **PointOfInterest**. See below.
- **AdministrativeAreaRef**: NPTG **AdministrativeArea** responsible for managing data about the point of interest.
- **Notes**: Any notes about the Point of Interest.
- **Public**: Whether Point of Interest is for use by general public. Default is true.
- The **SiteAccessibility** element specifies the accessibility assessment of the point of interest for use. In journey planners. See earlier.



**Figure 6-34 – PointOfInterest Element**

## 6.15 PointOfInterestClassification / Off-Street Elements

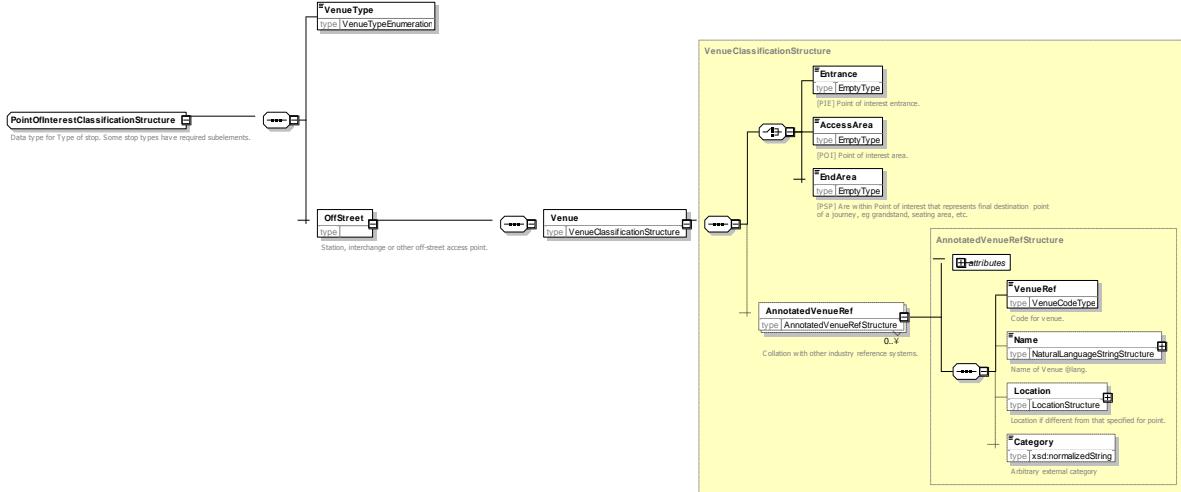
### 6.15.1 PointOfInterestClassification Element (+NaPT V2.5)

The **PointOfInterestClassification** element (Figure 6-35) categorises a point of interest.

- **Venue Type:** Point is an entrance. (Type '*P/E*').
- **Entrance:** Point is an entrance. (Type '*P/E*').
- **AccessArea:** Point is an access area. (Stop type '*POI*').
- **EndArea:** Point is destination area within the point of interest, such as a particular grandstand. (Venue Type '*PSP*').

The point may also be associated with other elements:

- **AnnotatedVenueRef:** Translates NaPTAN stop point into an external reference.
  - **VenueRef:** External code for the venue.
  - **Name:** Short name of the venue location.
  - **Location:** Optional Location of the venue if different from the NaPTAN value.
  - **Category:** Arbitrary categorisation of the element.



**Figure 6-35 – PointOfInterestClassification Element**

## 7 NPTG DISCOVERY SCHEMA, STRUCTURE AND ELEMENTS

*NPTG Discovery* XML schema (*Figure 7-1*) describes web services associated with NPTG entities as a model of XML elements, contained within an ***NptgDiscovery*** root element. It references entities defined in the *NPTG* schema.

### 7.1 ***NptgDiscovery* Root Element**

#### 7.1.1 *NptgDiscovery* Element Attributes

The ***NptgDiscovery*** root element uses the NaPT standard schema attributes for versioning, and also has standard attributes to indicate the default data reference systems used: See discussion of versioning later on.

- *Versioning*
  - ***CreationDateTime***: Timestamp of document creation date and time.
  - ***ModificationDateTime***: Timestamp of document last modification date, and time.
  - ***FileName***: Name of file containing the document as created. (If the document is renamed this will not change).
  - ***Modification***: Nature of change: *new*, *revision*. Normally 'revision'. Other possible values are *delete* or *archive*.
  - ***RevisionNumber***: Optional sequence number for versioning overall document content.
  - ***SchemaVersion***: Schema version identifier used for the document content model.
- *Data Reference*
  - ***Xml:lang***: Default language of document. ISO language identifier. Default is English.
  - ***LocationSystem***: Data system to use for location coordinate references within the document: *WGS84* or *Grid*. Normally *Grid* is used.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

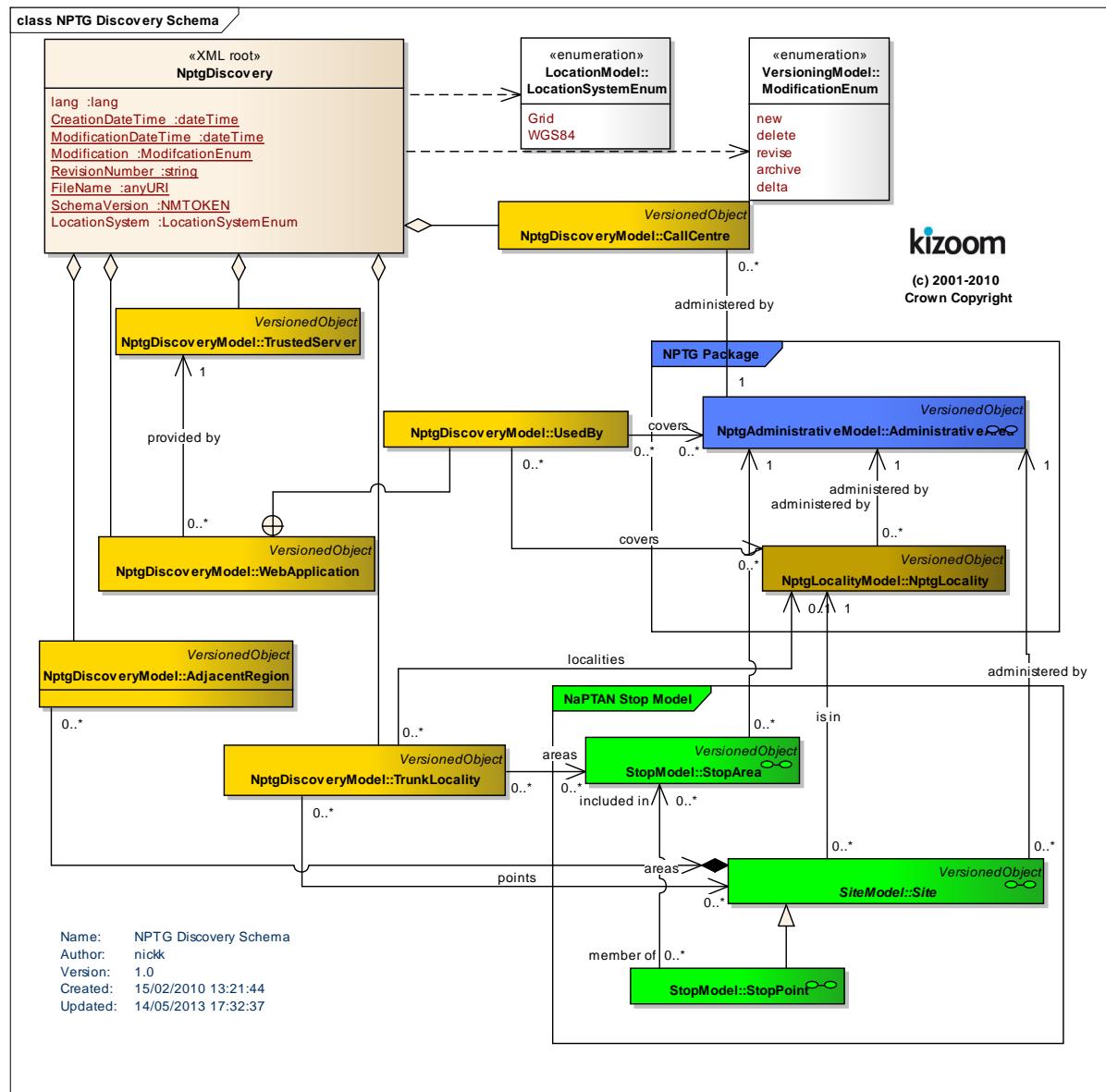
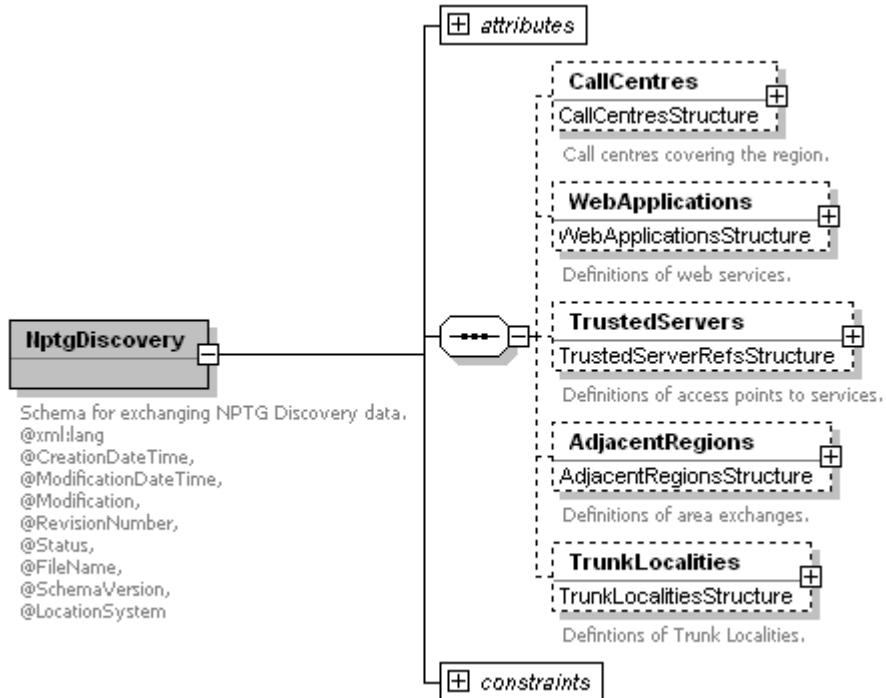


Figure 7-1 – UML Diagram of the NPTG Discovery Schema

#### 7.1.2 NptgDiscovery Child Elements

The **NptgDiscovery** element (Figure 7-2) contains the following child elements, each of which is described in more detail later in this document:

- **CallCentres**: A collection of **CallCentre** elements, used to represent available voice information services.
- **WebApplications**: A collection of **WebApplication** elements, used to represent available on-line information services.
- **TrustedServers**: A collection of **TrustedServer** elements, used to represent available access points to information services.
- **AdjacentRegionPoints**: A collection of **AdjacentRegionPoints** used to define shared boundary points between regions for journey planning purposes.
- **TrunkLocalities**: A collection of **TrunkLocality** elements used to define access points to the Trunk network for journey planning purposes.



**Figure 7-2 – NptgDiscovery Root Element**

## 7.2 WebApplication Element

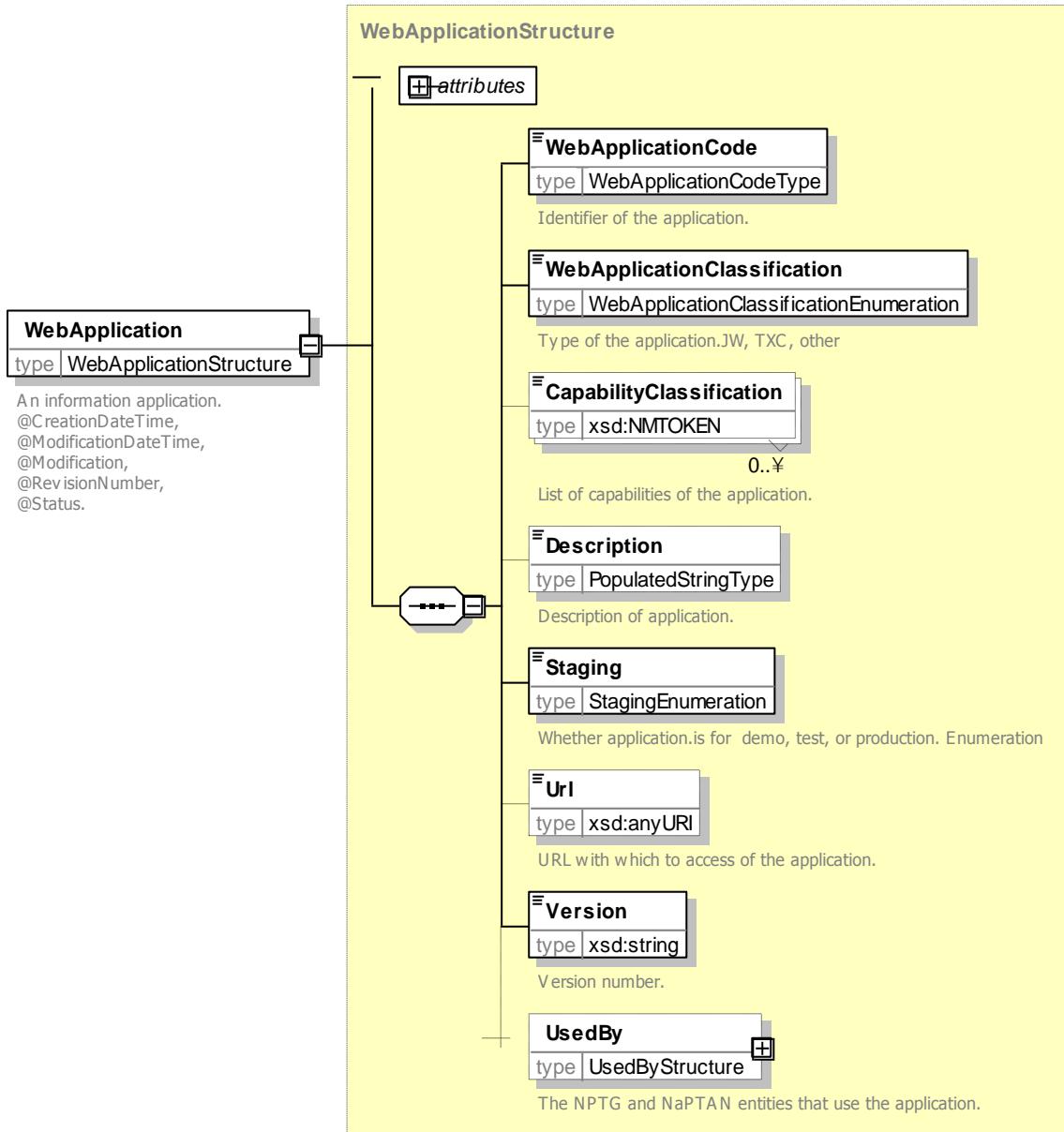
A **WebApplication** (Figure 5-7) represents an available system resource.

- **WebApplicationCode:** Unique identifier of the service.
- **WebApplicationClassification:** Classifier of the service. See *Table 7-1*.

Value	Description
<i>JourneyWeb</i>	Supports JourneyWeb Protocol
<i>RtigXml</i>	Supports RtigXml Protocol
<i>Traveline</i>	Online WWW Journey Planner
<i>Departures</i>	Online WWW Stop Departures
<i>SIRI</i>	Supports SIRI for real-time information
<i>NeTEx</i>	Supports NeTEx Protocol (in the future)
<i>Other</i>	Other unspecified service

**Table 7-1 – Allowed Values for WebApplicationClassification**

- **CapabilityClassification:** Capability string.
- **Description:** Description of application.
- **Staging:** Whether service is for demo, test, or production.
- **Version:** Version number of service.
- **URL:** URL with which to access the service.



**Figure 7-3 – WebApplication Element**

### 7.2.1 UsedBy Element

A **UsedBy** (Figure 5-7) associates an available system resource with an *NPTG* or *NaPTAN* entity.

- **RegionRefs:** Regions associated with service. Collection of **RegionRef** instances.
- **AdministrativeAreaRefs:** Administrative Areas associated with service, if different from Region. Collection of **AdministrativeAreaRef** instances.
- **NptgLocalityRefs:** *NPTG* Localities associated with service, if different from Administrative Area. Collection of **NptgLocalityRef** instances.
- **StopPointRefs:** Stops associated with service, if different from *NPTG* Locality. Collection of **StopPointRef** instances.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

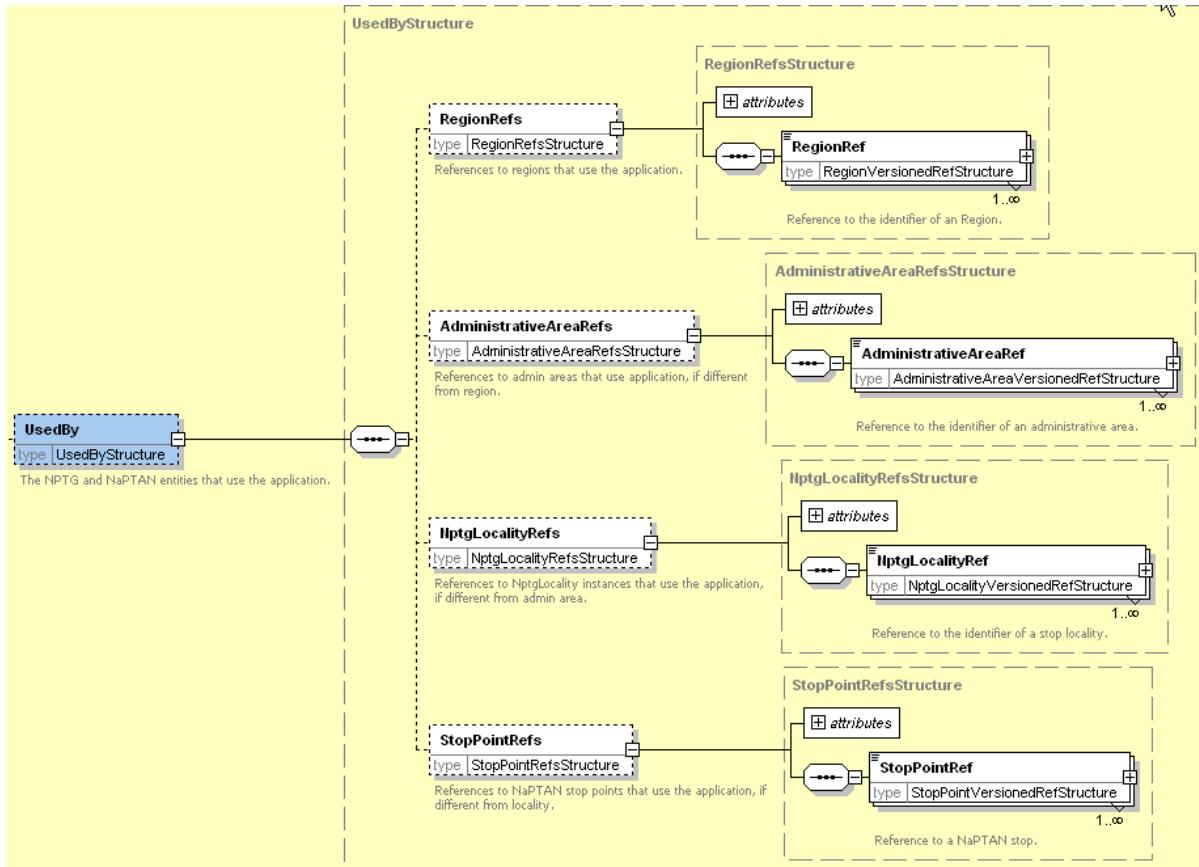


Figure 7-4 – UsedBy Element

### 7.3 TrustedServer Element

A **TrustedServer** (Figure 7-5) represents a point of access to the web services described by **WebApplication** instances.

- **ServerCode**: Unique identifier of the district.
- **IpAddressRange**: Range of IP addresses of access point.
  - **FirstIp**: First IP number in range. Standard internet address got example, 212.04.123.17.
  - **LastIp**: Last IP number in range.

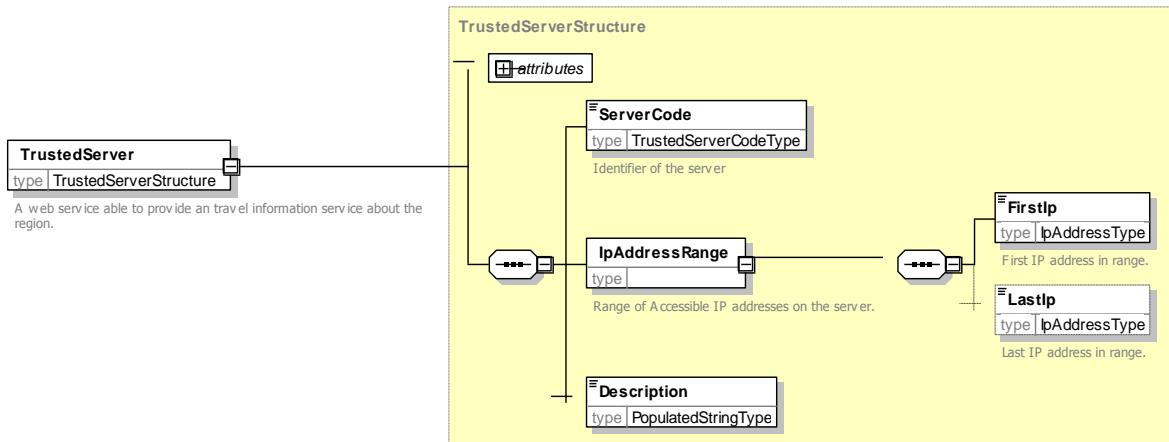


Figure 7-5 – TrustedServer Element

#### 7.4 AdjacentRegionPoint Element

An **AdjacentRegionPoint** (Figure 7-6) is a different type of exchange point, and are used to establish shared boundary points for journey planning purposes. **AdjacentRegionPoint** instances are grouped within an **AdjacentRegionPoints** container. Each point comprises:

- **StopPointRef**: NaPTAN system identifier, i.e. **AtcoCode** of exchange point.
- **FromRegionRef**: Identifier of **Region** that shares point with **Region** identified by **ToRegionRef**.
- **ToRegionRef**: Identifier of **Region** that shares point with **Region** identified by **FromRegionRef**.
- **Location**: Spatial coordinates of point.

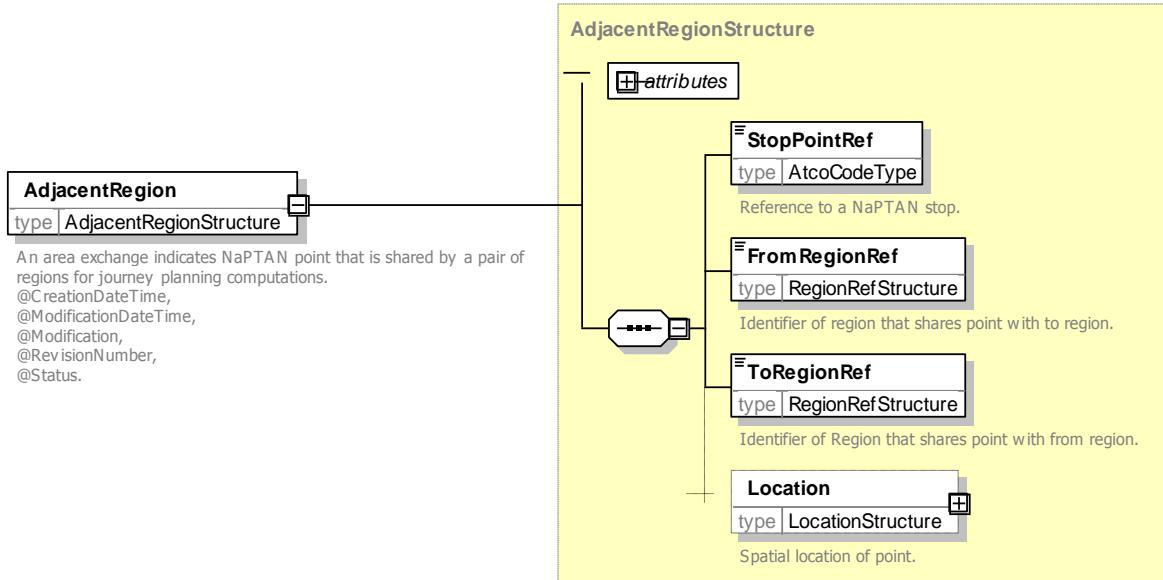


Figure 7-6 – AdjacentRegionPoint Element

#### 7.5 CallCentre Element

A **CallCentre** element (Figure 7-7) represents a call centre providing travel information about a **Region** or **Regions**

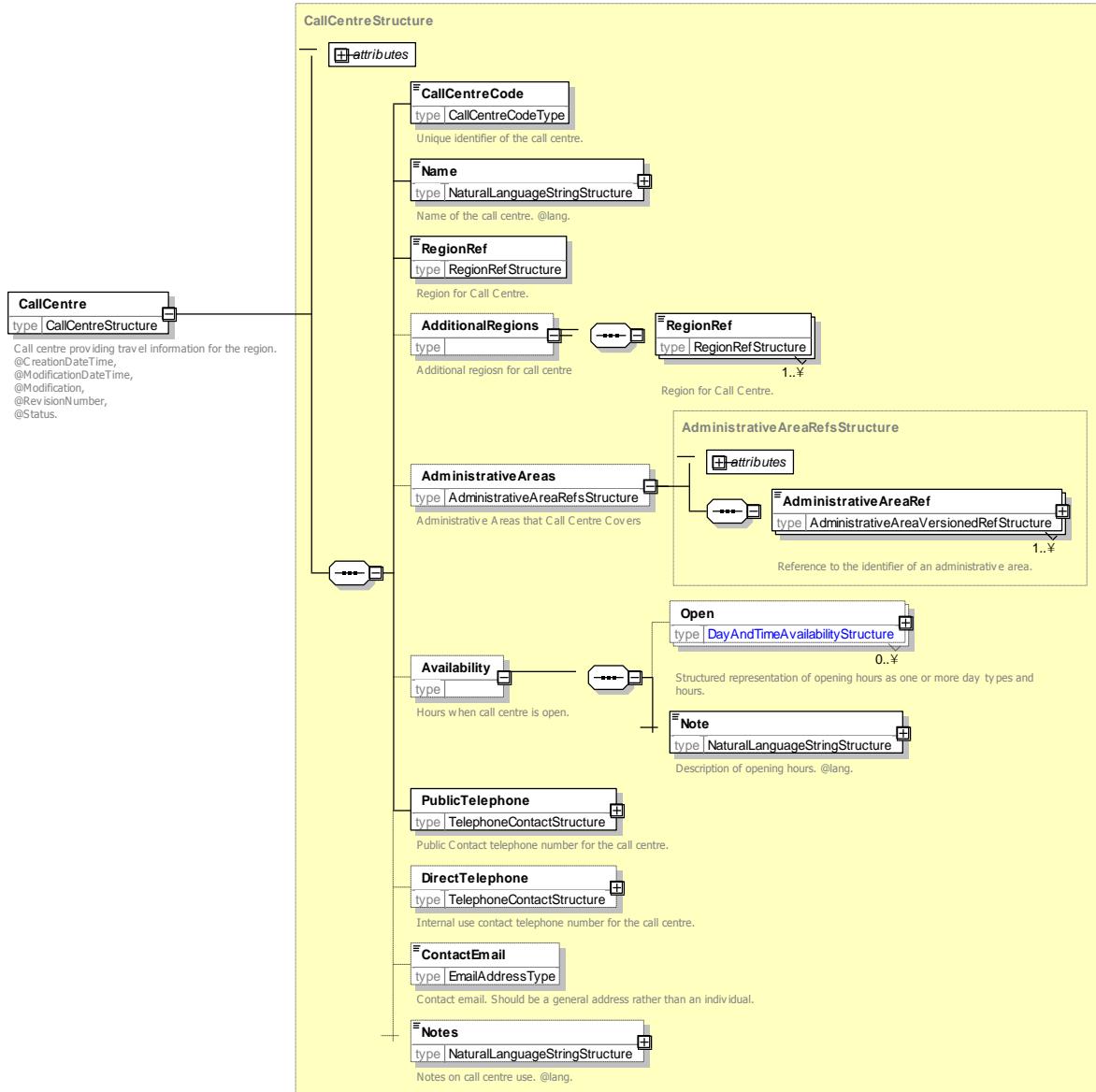
- **CallCentreCode**: Unique *NPTG* code for **CallCentre**.
- **Name**: Name of call centre.
- **RegionRef**: Identifier of region of **CallCentre**.
- **AdditionalRegions**: Additional regions that the CallCentre..
- **AdministrativeArea**: References to One or more **AdministrativeArea** covered by call centre.
- **Availability**: Opening hours for call centre. See **Availability** Below
- **PublicTelephone**: Public telephone contact number for call centre. See **TelephoneContactStructure** below.
- **DirectTelephone**: Ex-directory telephone contact number for call centre. See **TelephoneContactStructure** below.
- **ContactEmail**: Email contact address for call centre.
- **Notes**: Notes attached to call centre.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas

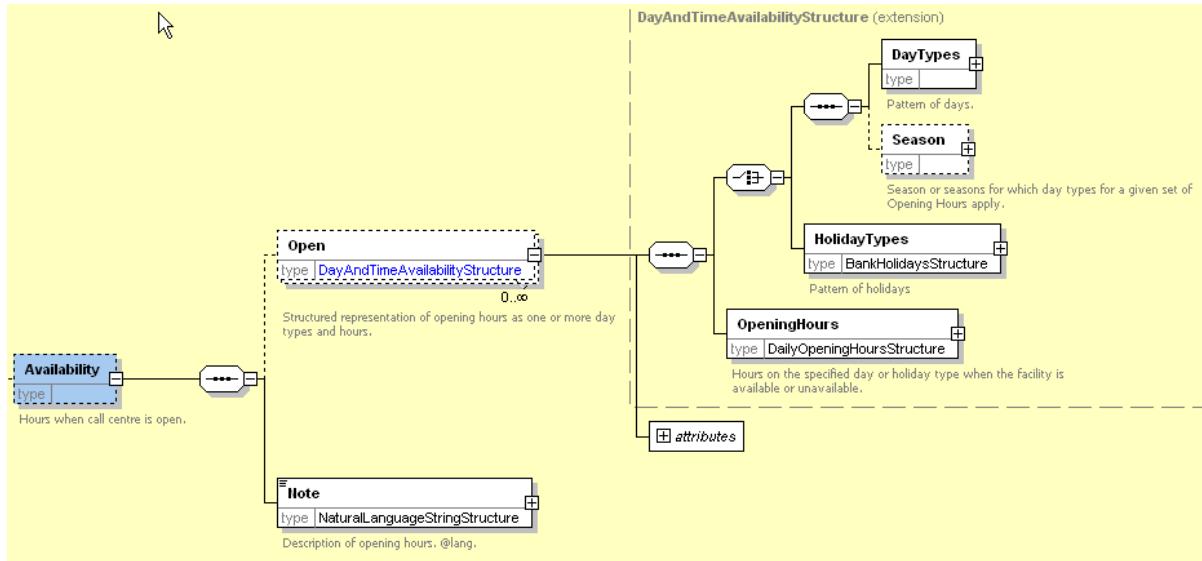


**Figure 7-7 – CallCentre Element**

#### 7.5.1 Availability Element

The **Availability** element (Figure 7-8) specifies when the call centre is open. It comprises:

- **Open**: One or more opening times for the call centre. Each time consists of a day type and an **OpeningHours**.
  - ❖ **DayTypes** the days when the call centre is open. See **DayTypes**.
  - ❖ **Season**: Any seasons for which specified opening hours apply – if none, all seasons. One or more of **Spring**, **Summer**, **Autumn**, **Winter**.
  - ❖ **HolidayTypes** the holiday days when the call centre is open. See **HolidayTypes**.
- **Note**: Text description of availability.

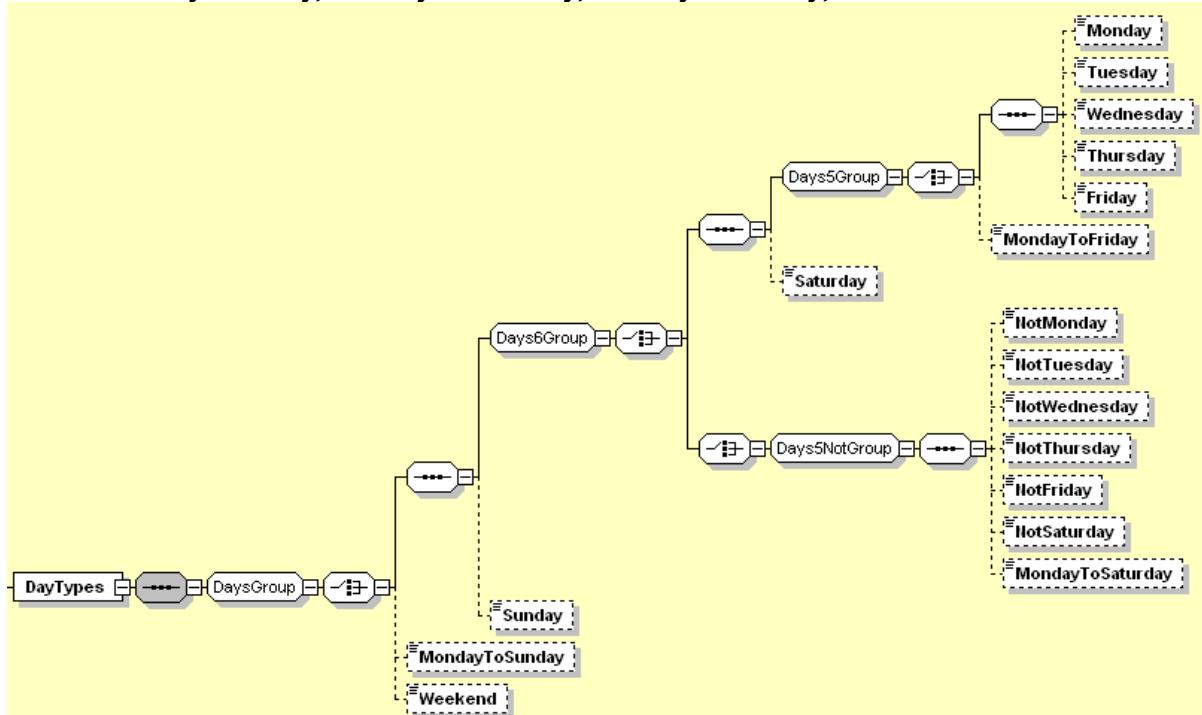


**Figure 7-8 – CallCentre / Availability Element**

### 7.5.2 Day Types Element

The **DayTypes** element (Figure 7-9) specifies the days when a service is available or not available (e.g. when a call centre is open). It comprises named day types and day type combinations.

- **Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday.**
- **NotMonday, NotTuesday, NotWednesday, NotThursday, NotFriday, NotSaturday, Sunday.**
- **MondayToFriday, MondayToSaturday, MondayToSunday, Weekend.**



**Figure 7-9 – DayTypes Element**

### 7.5.3 Holiday Types Element

The **HolidayTypes** element (*Figure 7-10*) specifies the holiday days when a service is available or not available (e.g. when a call centre is open). It comprises named day and day combinations:

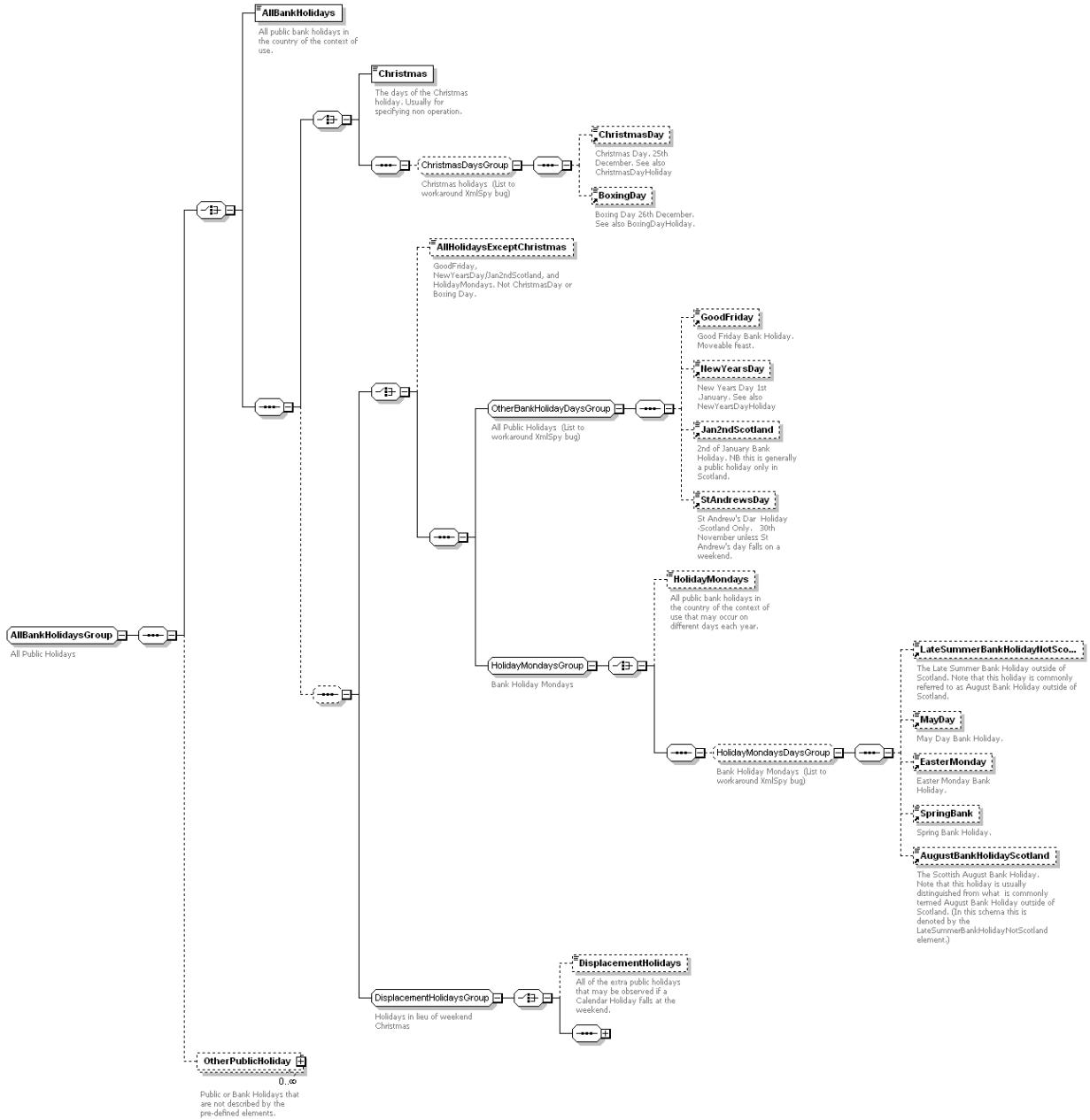
- **Christmas, BoxingDay, NewYearsDay, Jan2ndScotland, StAndrewsDay**
- **ChristmasEve, NewYearsEve,**
- **DisplacementHolidays**
- **ChristmasDayHoliday, BoxingDayHoliday, NewYearsDayHoliday, Jan2ndScotlandDayHoliday, StAndrewsDayHoliday,**
- **GoodFriday, EasterMonday, MayDay, AugustBankHoliday, Spring Bank, AugustBankHolidayNotScotland.**
- **AllBankHolidays, AllBankHolidaysExceptChristmas, HolidayMondays**
- **Other PublicHoliday:**
  - ❖ **Description:** Description of holiday.
  - ❖ **Date:** Date of other holiday.

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Part II

### Schemas



**Figure 7-10 – HolidayTypes Element**

#### 7.5.4 OpeningHours Element

The **OpeningHours** element (Figure 7-11) specifies the times of day when a service is available or not available (e.g. when a call centre is open). It comprises:

- **TwentyFourHours:** Call centre is open all the time on the specified day.
- **OpenPeriod:** Period of opening the specified day; **StartTime** to **EndTime**.
- **Unavailable:** Call centre is not open at all on the specified day.

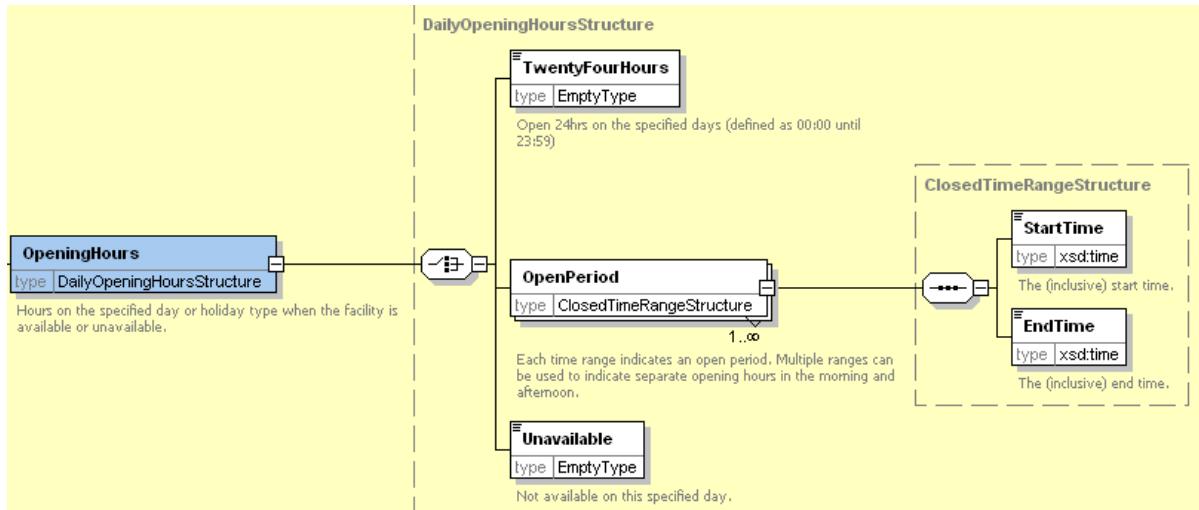


Figure 7-11 – OpeningHours Element

### 7.5.5 TelephoneContactStructure Element

The **TelephoneContactStructure** element (Figure 7-12) specifies telephone number details. It comprises:

- **TelNationalNumber**: Full telephone number.
- **TelExtensionNumber**: Extension suffix.
- **TelCountryCode**: Two character country prefix.

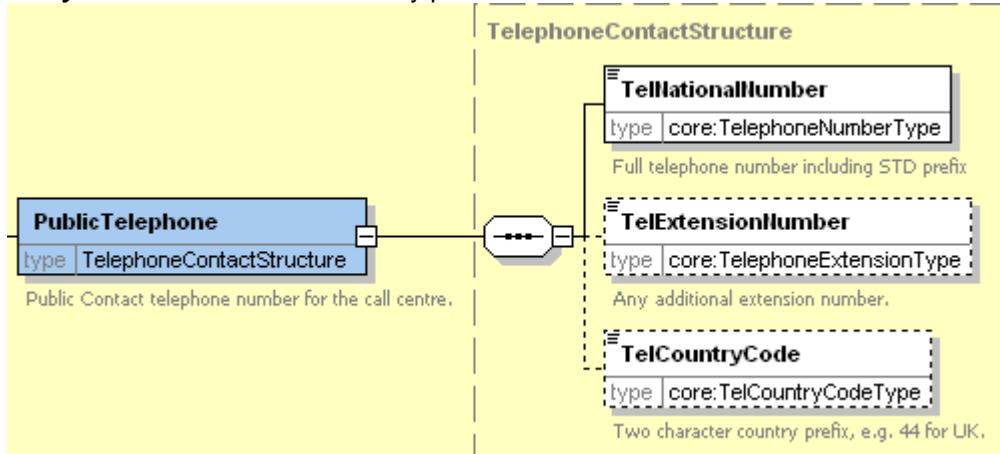
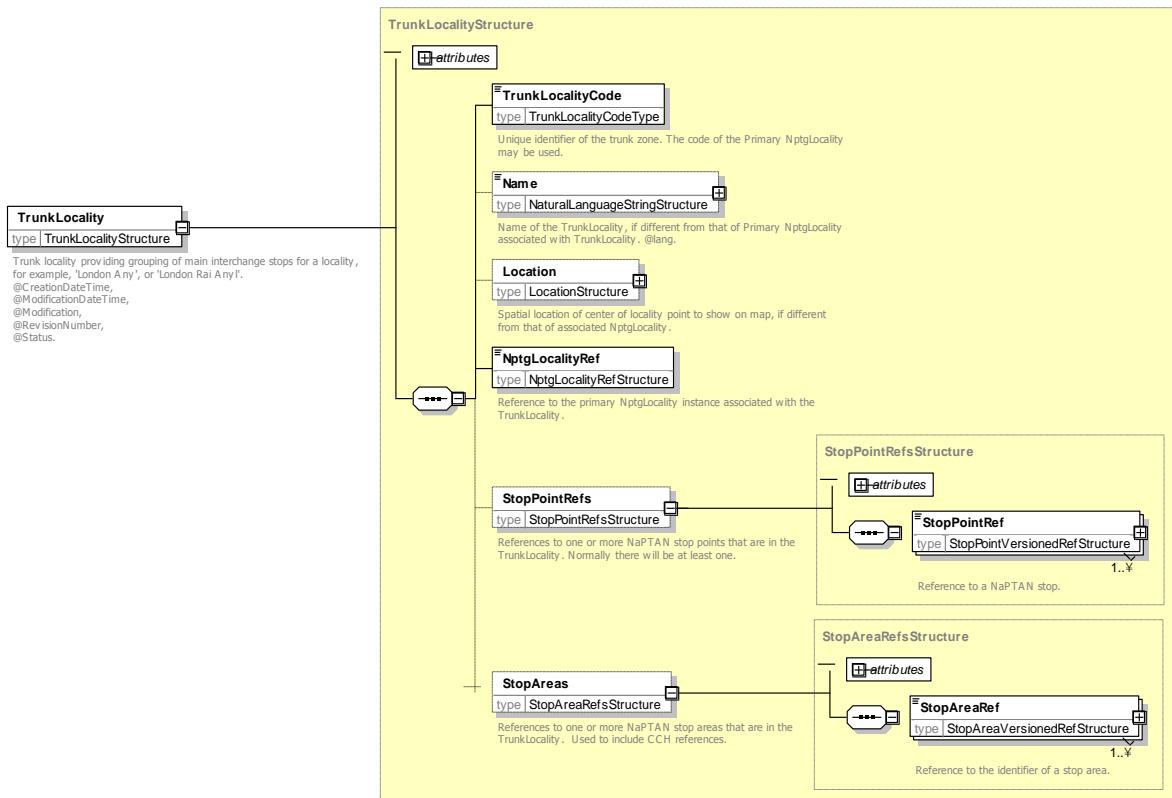


Figure 7-12 – PrimaryTelephoneNumber Element

### 7.6 TrunkLocality Element

A **TrunkLocality** element (Figure 7-7) represents a geographical grouping of stops relevant for making trunk journeys. It can be used by Journey Planners to find the trunk access points for a place.

- **TrunkLocality Code**: Unique NPTG code for **TrunkLocality**.
- **Name**: Optional name of **TrunkLocality** if different from that of the associated **NptgLocality**.
- **Location**: Location of **TrunkLocality**. Optional geospatial Location of **TrunkLocality** if different from that of the associated **NptgLocality**.
- **NptgLocalityRef**: Reference to an **NptgLocality** instance associated with **TrunkLocality**.
- **NptgStopPointRefs**: References to one or more **StopPoint** instances grouped by the **TrunkLocality**.
  - ❖ **StopPointRef**: Identifier of a **StopPoint** grouped by the **TrunkLocality**.



**Figure 7-13 – TrunkLocality Element**

## 8 COMMON SCHEMA ELEMENTS

Some elements and types are common to a number of different elements in the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* schemas. These are described here.

### 8.1 Duration Simple Type

The **Duration** simple type is used to specify a relative time in minutes and seconds. It uses a standard W3C type. Times are encoded in the form *PT999M99S*, for example, ‘*PT12M22S*’ to denote twelve minutes and twelve seconds. The seconds may be omitted, thus *PT99M*, for example, or *PT5M* or *PT3H12M*.

### 8.2 Location Element

The **Location** element (*Figure 8-1*) describes the spatial position of a stop. Coordinates may be specified in Grid or WGS84 formats, or both. The primary coordinates used can be indicated by the **LocationSystem** value (*Grid* or *WGS84*) specified on the **NaPTAN** & **NationalPublicTransportGazetteer** document root elements.

Location coordinates must be supplied for all elements in the specified primary coordinates and may optionally be provided in the other system as well. *NaPTAN* data should be submitted in *Grid* format. *NaPTAN* data will normally be distributed in both formats.

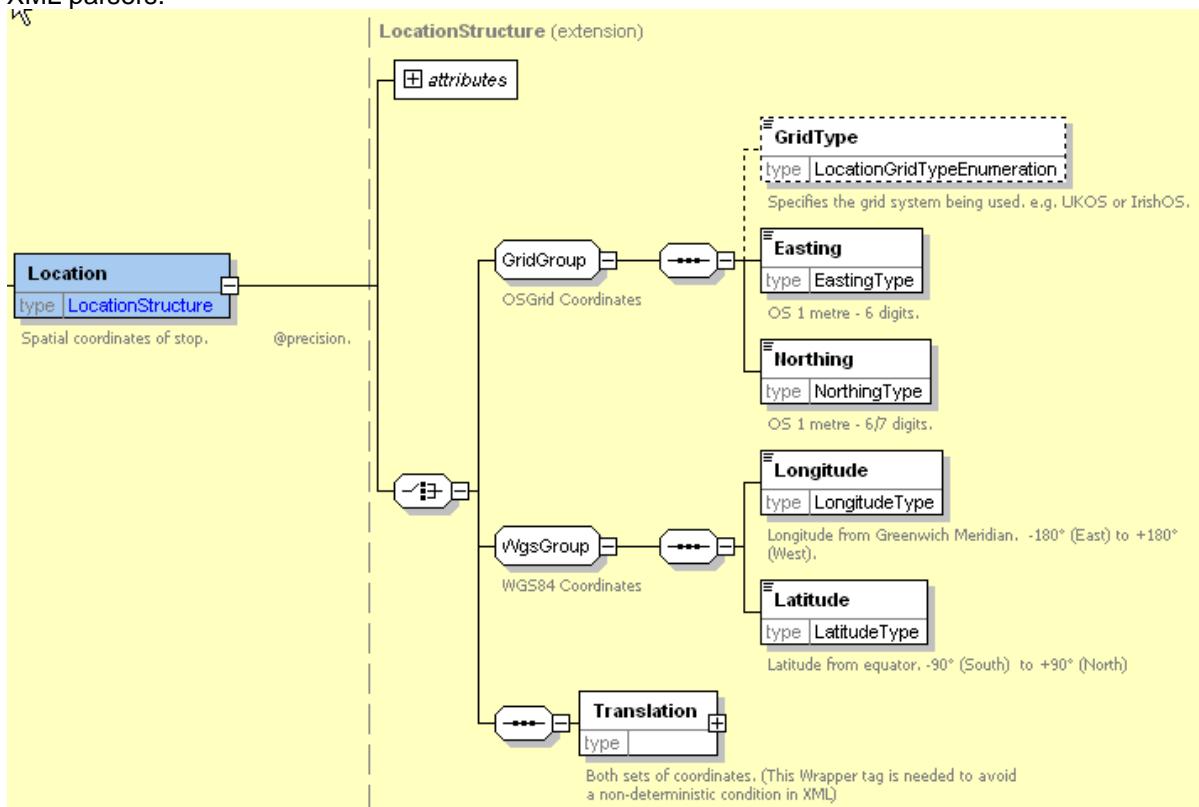
If *Grid* coordinates are provided:

- **GridType:** Nominated grid system e.g. UKOS, IrishOS or ITM (Irish Transverse Mercator); UKOS is assumed by default.
- **Easting:** Easting grid coordinates of stop.
- **Northing:** Northing grid coordinates of stop.

If WGS84 coordinates are provided:

- **Latitude:** Latitude of stop in WGS84 coordinates.
- **Longitude:** Longitude of stop in WGS84 coordinates.]

If both Grid and WGS84 coordinates are specified, then an additional **Translation** tag must be specified around both coordinate groups. This is needed to avoid undecidable condition in some strict XML parsers.

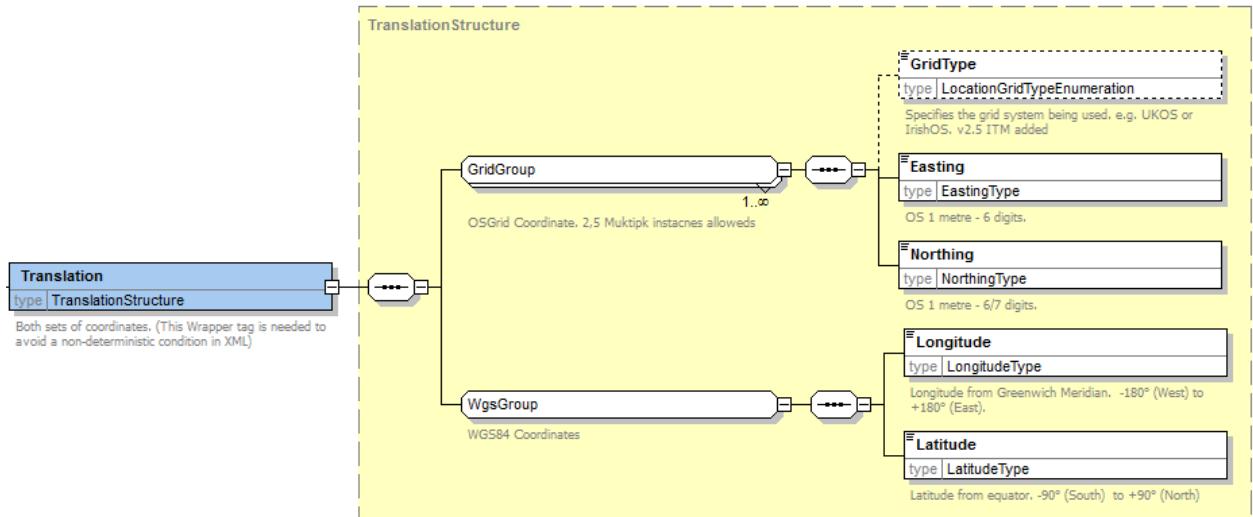


**Figure 8-1 – Location Element**

### 8.2.1 Translation Element

The **Translation** element (*Figure 8-1*) describes the spatial position of a stop in multiple coordinate systems. At least one grid system and one set of WGS84 coordinates must be used.

Coordinates are as described above. More than one set of Grid Coordinates (e.g. IrishOs and ITM) may be provided at the same time (+NaPT v2.5)



**Figure 8-2 – Translation Element**

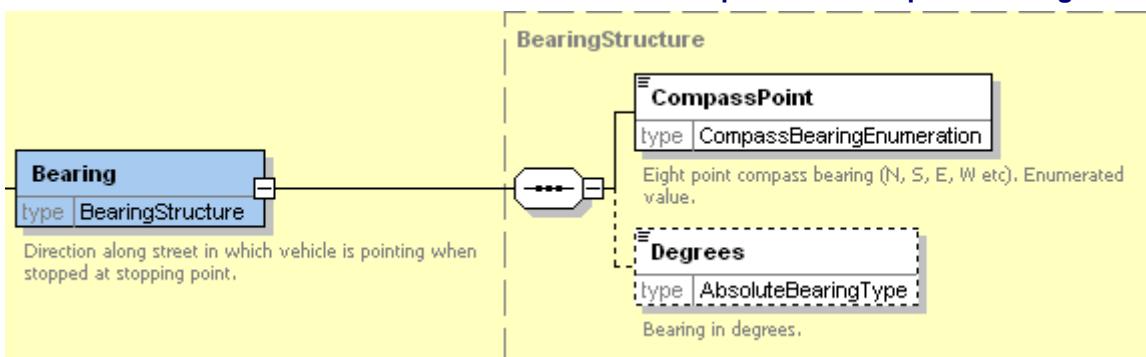
### 8.3 Bearing Element

The **Bearing** element (Figure 8-3) describes a relative direction.

- **CompassPoint**: Compass direction. See Table 8-1. Eight point compass bearing (N, S, E, W etc). Suitable for creating a simple text description to passengers.
- **Degrees**: Direction in degrees 0-360. 0 is North. This allows a precise additional bearing to be given for use in some applications. If present, should be consistent with the CompassPoint enumeration which will be an approximation of the exact bearing ). Note however that this correspondence is not validated or enforced by the Landmark import processes). Bearing only needs to be populated if the degree values are different from the cardinal point values (i.e. if it is other than 0, 45, 90, 135, 180, 225, 270, 315 degrees),

Value	Description
N	North
NW	North-West
W	West
SW	South-West
S	South
SE	South-East
E	East
NE	North-East

**Table 8-1 – Allowed Values for StopPoint / Descriptor /Bearing**



**Figure 8-3 – Bearing Element**

## 9 NAPTAN EXAMPLES

The following examples are intended to illustrate the naming and grouping of stops. Examples 1-6 were taken originally from the *NaPTAN* Specification v1.0 but have been updated.

The examples used have been chosen to reflect the common occurrences and naming 'styles' of PTANs:

1. A bus stop on each side of a road, with only one landmark.
2. A bus stop on each side of a road, each with a different landmark.
3. A bus stop on one side of the road, with a recognisable landmark.
4. A bus stop one side of a road, with no landmark.
5. A bus 'Interchange' or on-street group of bus stops.
6. A bus 'Hail & Ride' section or route.
7. A bus 'Flexible' stop zone.
8. A metro station and light rail interchange.
9. A railway station with surrounding stops.
10. A major airport with rail, coach, metro, taxi and bus interchanges.

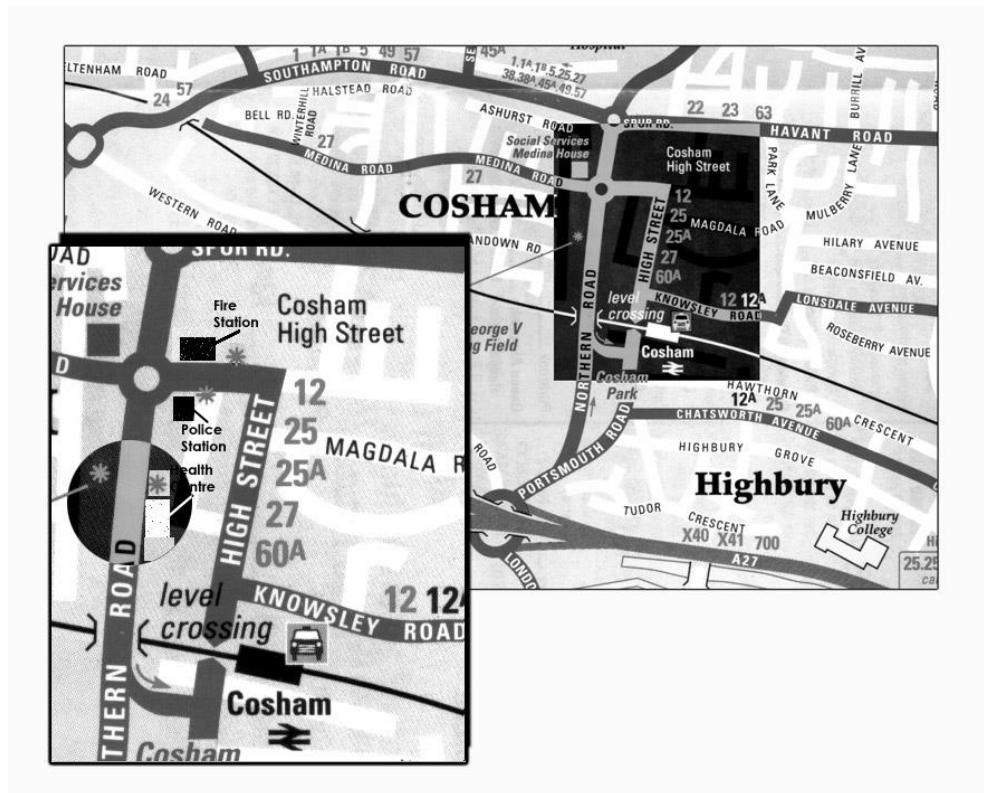
Each example includes a detailed map and a location map, from which one can judge how important the area served is, and how one has to describe each stop.

Most of the examples include stop areas to group stop points as an interchange comprising several stop points.

Although correct in their application of *NaPTAN* principles, these examples are for illustrative purposes only and not be regarded as the definitive *NaPTAN* stop details for the stops shown.

Note that AtcoCode and the NPTG code for an *AdministrativeArea* are different. In the examples generally both are shown together with the text name of the area in the form *AtcoCode* (*NptgAdminAreaCode*) → *Name*, for example '199 (44) → Portsmouth'.

### 9.1 Example 1: Poles Both Sides of the Road with One Landmark



Map taken from City of Portsmouth publication Public Transport Maps

**Figure 9-1 – Example 1: Poles Both Sides of the Road with One Landmark**

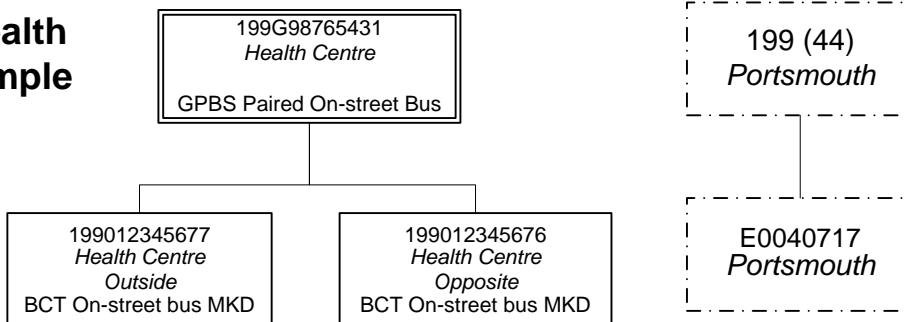
In *Figure 9-1*, there are two stops, on either side of the road in a small town, ‘Cosham’, with the ‘Health Centre’ as the nearest landmark.

- Both stops are named after the Landmark, with different indicators.
- The two stops are linked as a pair with a stop area called ‘Health Centre’ of type ‘GPBS’ (Paired On-Street Bus).
- Neither stop is considered to be at the centre of the locality.
- The two stops have been agreed as Principal Timing Points between the local authority and the bus operators.

Figure 9-2 shows the stop hierarchy – with the single stop area and the pair of stops.

### Cosham Health Centre Example

**kizoom**  
© 2001-2010  
Crown  
Copyright



**Figure 9-2 – Example 1: Stop Hierarchy for Cosham Health Centre**

### 9.1.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definition: Example 1

Element	Subelement	Stop Area
<b>StopAreaCode</b>		199G98765431
<b>StopArea / Name</b>		Health Centre
<b>StopAreaType</b>		GPBS (Paired on street bus)
<b>Location</b>	<b>Grid Type</b>	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	466312
	<b>Northing</b>	105510
<b>ParentAreaRef</b>		--
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		199 (44) → Portsmouth
Change Attributes	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	2004-04-14T14:20:00-05:00
	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	2004-04-14T14:20:00-05:00
	<b>Modification</b>	new
	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	0
	<b>Status</b>	Active

### 9.1.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 1

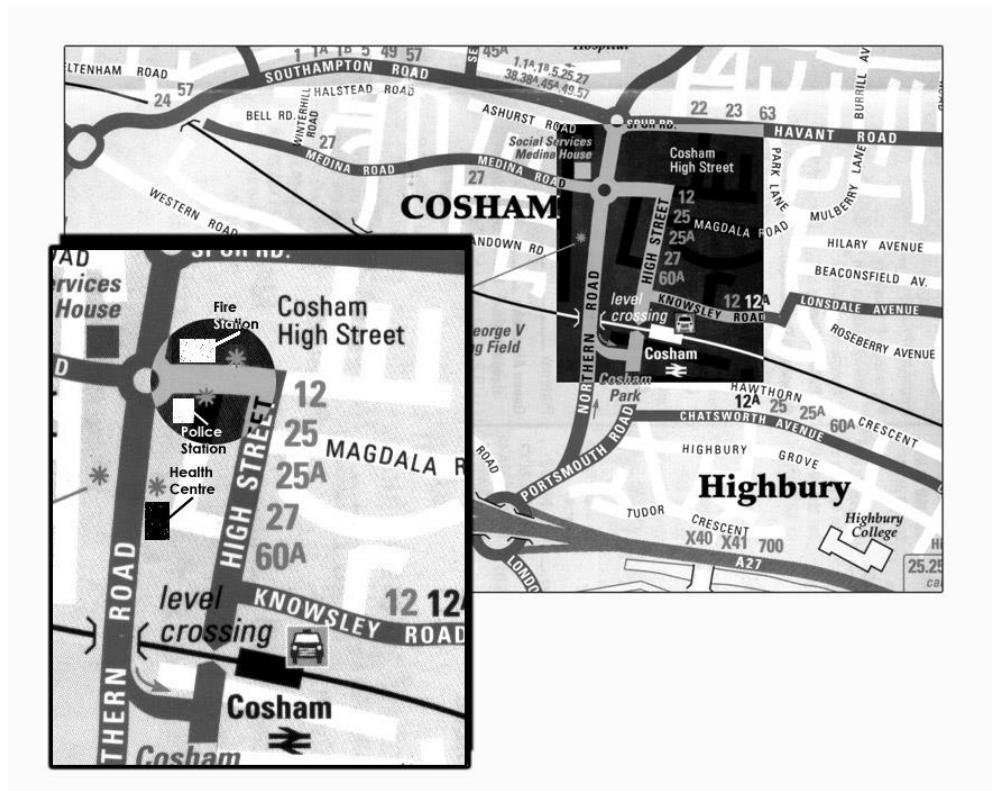
Element	Subelement	Stop Points	
		<i>East Side Stop</i>	<i>West Side Stop</i>
<b>AtcoCode</b>		199012345677	199012345676
<b>NaptanCode</b>		porpapa	pormama
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	466315	466310
	<b>Northing</b>	105515	105505
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Health Centre	Health Centre
	<b>Short CommonName</b>	Health Ctr	Health Ctr
	<b>Landmark</b>	Health Centre	Health Centre
	<b>Street</b>	Northern Road	Northern Road
	<b>Crossing</b>	--	--
	<b>Indicator</b>	o/s	opp
<b>Bearing</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>	S	N
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0040717 → Cosham [NPTG]	E0040717 → Cosham [NPTG]
	<b>Town</b>	--	--
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--
	<b>Country</b>	England	England
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	N	N
<b>StopClassification</b>	<b>StopType</b>	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	PTP (Principal Timing point)	PTP (Principal Timing point)
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	0	0
<b>Notes</b>		--	--
<b>*StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	199G98765431 → Health Centre	199G98765431 → Health Centre
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		199 (44) → Portsmouth [NPTG]	199 (44) → Portsmouth [NPTG]

### 9.1.3 Names in Context

Depending on application and the other data present, the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows:

- → Cosham, Health Centre
- → Cosham, Health Centre (o/s)
- → Cosham, Health Centre (opp)
- → Cosham, Northern Road - Health Centre
- → Cosham, Northern Road - Health Centre (o/s)
- → Cosham, Northern Road - Health Centre (opp)
- → Cosham, o/s Health Centre, on Northern Road
- → Cosham, opp Health Centre (on Northern Road)

**9.2 Example 2: Poles Both Sides with Different Common Names and Landmarks**



Map taken from City of Portsmouth publication Public Transport Maps

**Figure 9-3 – Example 2: Poles Both Sides with Different Common Names**

In Figure 9-3 there are two stops on either side of the road in ‘Cosham’; one outside the police station and the other outside the fire station. The names *Police Station* and *Fire Station* are used interchangeably by the public for the location.

- Each stop could be named after the landmark on its respective side of the road, with alternative common names to relate the stop to the other landmark. However, the preferred option is that one of the names is applied to the **StopArea** and as the **CommonName** for both of the stops – and the other of the names is used as an alternative name for all of the records.
- The two stops are grouped as a pair using a stop area of type ‘GBPS’ (Paired On-Street Bus). One of the Landmarks - ‘Fire Station’ – is used as the stop area name.
- The stops are considered to serve the centre of the locality, ‘Cosham’.
- The nearest cross-street is Wootton Street.
- The two stops have been agreed as a Time Info Point between the local authority and the bus operators.

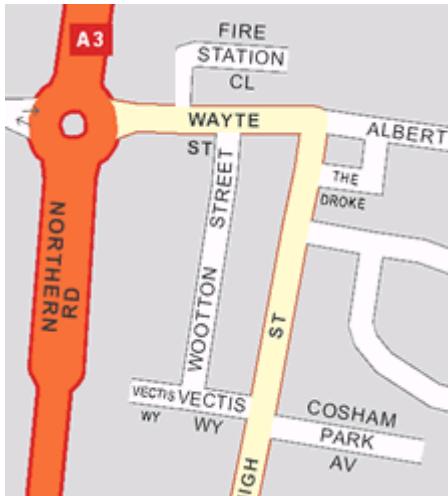


Figure 9-4 – Example 2: Street Names in Central Cosham

### Cosham Fire Station Example

**kizoom**  
© 2001-2010  
Crown  
Copyright

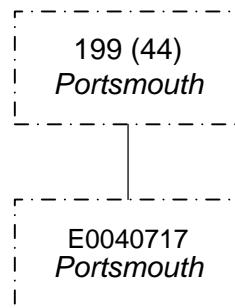
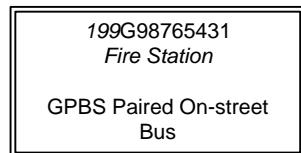


Figure 9-5 – Example 2: Stop Hierarchy for Cosham Fire & Police Stations

#### 9.2.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 2

Element	Subelement	Stop Area
<i>StopAreaCode</i>		199G98765432
<i>StopArea / Name</i>		Fire Station
<i>AlternativeNames</i>	<i>Name</i>	Police Station
<i>StopAreaType</i>		GPBS (Paired on-street bus)
<i>Location</i>	<i>Grid Type</i>	UKOS
	<i>Easting</i>	466370
	<i>Northing</i>	105847
<i>ParentAreaRef</i>		--
<i>AdministrativeArea</i>		199 (44) →Portsmouth [NPTG]

#### 9.2.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 2

Element	Subelement	Stop Points	
		Eastbound Stop	Westbound Stop
<i>AtcoCode</i>		199012345678	199012345679
<i>NaptanCode</i>		poraga	porpaw
<i>Descriptor</i>	<i>CommonName</i>	Fire Station	Fire Station
	<i>Landmark</i>	Fire Station	Fire Station
	<i>Street</i>	Wayte Street	Wayte Street
	<i>Crossing</i>	Northern Road	Northern Road
	<i>Indicator</i>	o/s	opp
<i>*AlternativeDescriptor</i>	<i>CommonName</i>	Police Station	Police Station
	<i>Landmark</i>	Police Station	Police Station
	<i>Street</i>	Wayte Street	Wayte Street
	<i>Crossing</i>	Wootton Street	Wootton Street
	<i>Indicator</i>	opp	o/s

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Part III

Examples

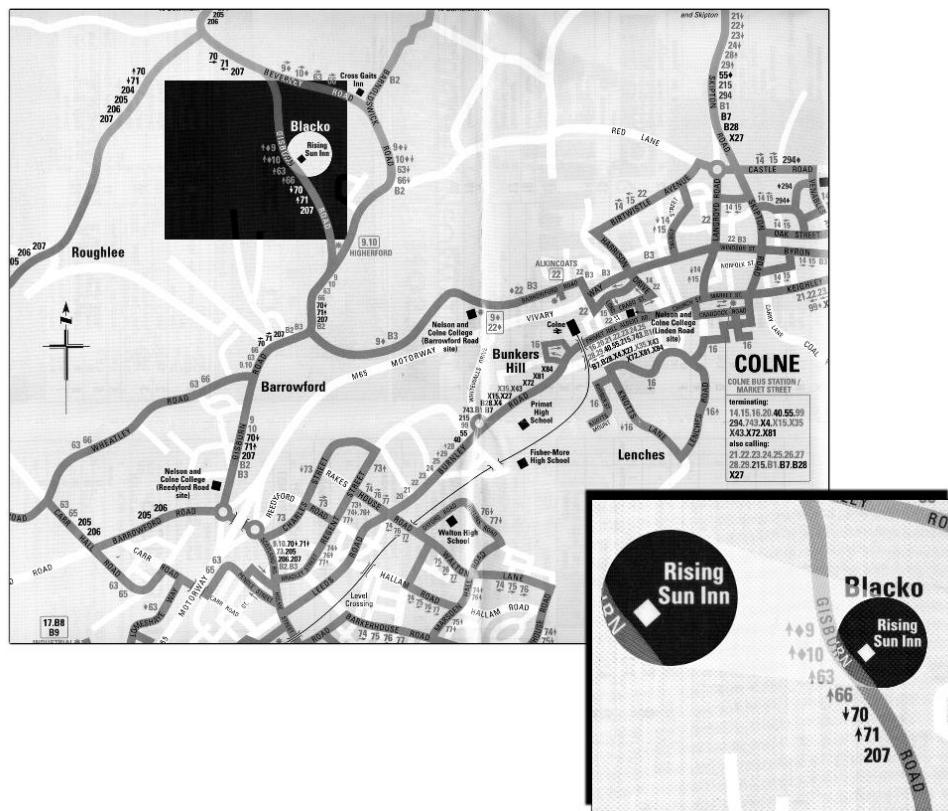
<b>Bearing</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>	<i>E</i>	<i>W</i>
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	<i>E0040717</i> →Cosham	<i>E0040717</i> →Cosham
	<b>Town</b>	--	--
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--
	<b>Country</b>	England	England
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	Y	Y
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	466375	466365
	<b>Northing</b>	105850	105845
<b>StopClassification</b>	<b>StopType</b>	<i>BCT</i> (On-street bus)	<i>BCT</i> (On-street bus)
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	<i>TIP</i> (Time info point)	<i>TIP</i> (Time info point)
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	0	0
<b>Notes</b>		--	--
* <b>StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	199G98765432→Fire Station	199G98765432→Fire Station
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		199 (44)→Portsmouth [NPTG]	199 (44)→Portsmouth [NPTG]

### 9.2.3 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows:

- →Cosham, Fire Station (pair)
- →Cosham, Fire Station (o/s)
- →Cosham, Fire Station (opp)
- →Cosham, Police Station (pair)
- →Cosham, Police Station (opp)
- →Cosham, Police Station (o/s)
- →Cosham, WayteStreet - Police Station (opp)
- →Cosham, O/s WayteStreet - Police Station (opp)
- →Cosham, o/s Fire Station (on Wayte Street) {SMS: porgaga}

### 9.3 Example 3: Pole One Side Only with Landmark



Map taken from Lancashire publication Burnley Bus Map & Guide

**Figure 9-6 – Example 3: Pole, One Side Only with Landmark**

In *Figure 9-6*, the stop is a single pole on one side of the road, outside ‘*The Rising Sun*’ public house in the village of ‘*Blacko*’, which serves for both directions. As can be seen in *Figure 9-7*, there are no nearby cross streets, so the location can best be described by the pub as a landmark:

- Two stops are defined, even though there is physically only one pole. One is of type BCT-MKD, the other of type BCT-CUS.
  - The two stops are linked as a pair by a ‘GPBS’ stop area.
  - The stops are neither principal timing points, nor time info points.



Figure 9-7 – Example 3: Blacko Village map

### Blacko Rising Sun Example

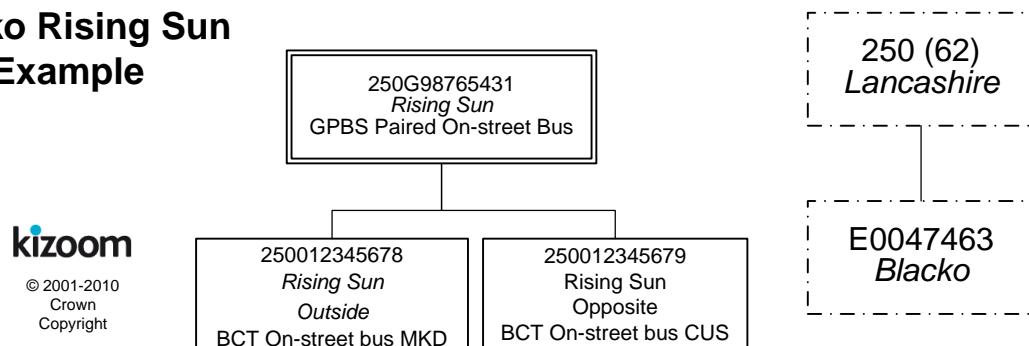


Figure 9-8 – Example 3: Stop Hierarchy for Blacko Rising Sun

#### 9.3.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 3

Element	Subelement	Value
<b>StopAreaCode</b>		250G98765431
<b>StopArea / Name</b>		Rising Sun
<b>StopAreaType</b>		GPBS (Paired on-street bus)
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	387497
	<b>Northing</b>	442100
<b>ParentAreaRef</b>		--
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		250 (62) → Lancashire [NPTG]

#### 9.3.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 3

Element	Subelement	Stop Points	
		Marked Side	Unmarked Side
<b>AtcoCode</b>		250012345678	250012345679
<b>NaptanCode</b>		lanadaga	lanamam
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Rising Sun	Rising Sun
	<b>Landmark</b>	Rising Sun Inn	Rising Sun Inn

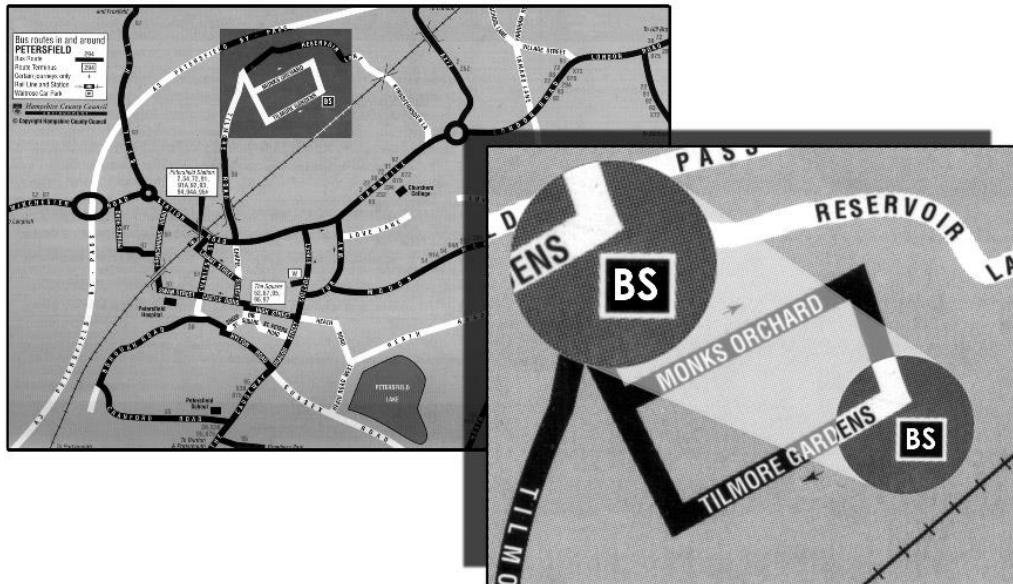
	<b>Street</b>	Gisburn Road	Gisburn Road
	<b>Indicator</b>	o/s	opp
	<b>Bearing</b>	SE	NW
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0047463→Blacko	E0047463→Blacko
	<b>Town</b>		
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--
	<b>Country</b>	England	England
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	N	N
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	387500	387495
	<b>Northing</b>	442100	442100
<b>StopClassification</b>	<b>StopType</b>	BCT (On street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	MKD (Marked)	CUS (Custom)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	OTH	OTH
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	0	0
	<b>Notes</b>	--	--
* <b>StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	250G98765431→Rising Sun	250G98765431→Rising Sun
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		250 (62)→Lancashire [NPTG]	250 (62)→Lancashire [NPTG]

### 9.3.3 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, the stop names might appear variously in context stop finders as follows:

- →Blacko, Rising Sun (pair).
- →Blacko, Rising Sun (o/s).
- →Blacko, Rising Sun (opp).
- →Blacko, Gisburn Road - Rising Sun (o/s).
- →Blacko, Gisburn Road - Rising Sun (opp).
- →Blacko, o/s Rising Sun (on Gisburn Road)

**9.4 Example 4: Unmarked Bus Stop on One Side of a Road with No Landmark**



Map taken from Hampshire CC publication Connections – Petersfield

**Figure 9-9 – Example 4: Bus Stop on One Side of a Road with No Landmark**

In *Figure 9-9*, 'Tilmore Gardens' is a low frequency stop in a quiet housing estate, with no other stops nearby.

- The stop is named after the street, and is an unmarked stop.
- There are no nearby road junctions or distinguishing landmarks, so the **Landmark** element is left blank.
- 'o/s 57' is used as an **Indicator** value to show where in the street the stop is found.
- This stop does not form part of any stop area.
- The stop is not a principal timing point nor a time info point.
- Between 10/07/2005 and 08/08/2005 the stop will be moved temporarily to another stop in the adjacent Monks Orchard street. 'Tilmore Garden' has a **StopAvailability** of suspended during this period; both 'Tilmore Gardens' and 'Monks Orchard' have an active status.

### Tilmore Example

**kizoom**

© 2001-2010  
Crown  
Copyright

190012345671
Tilmore Gardens
BCT On-street bus CUS

190 (52)
Hampshire

E0046774
Petersfield

**Figure 9-10 – Example 4: Stop Hierarchy for Tilmore Gardens**

#### 9.4.1 NaPTAN StopPoint Definition: Example 4

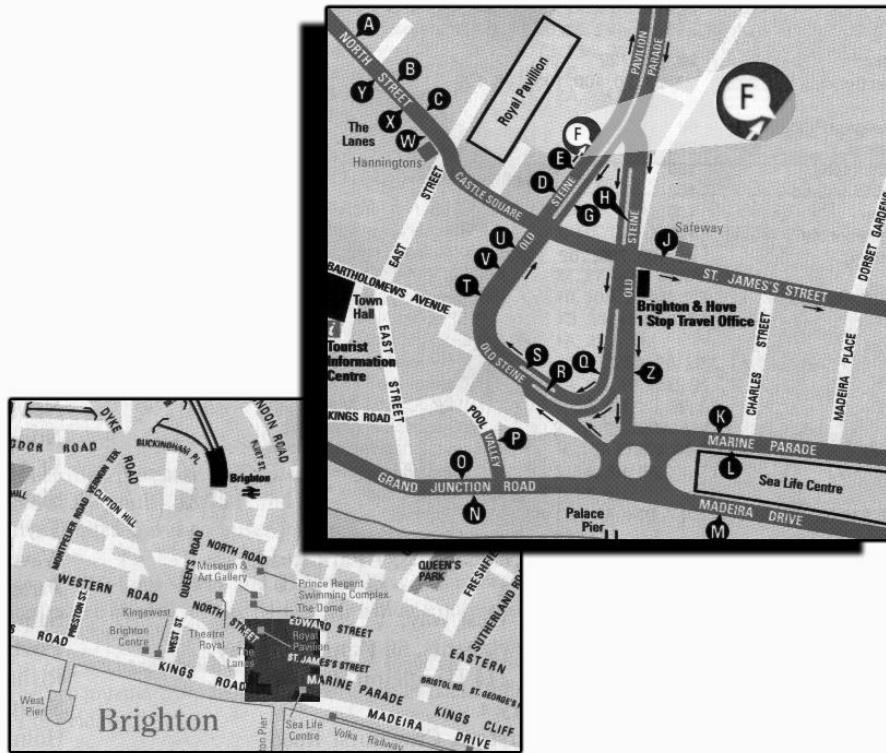
			Stop Point	
<b>Element</b>	<b>Subelement</b>		<b>Tilmore Gardens</b>	<b>Monks Orchard</b>
<b>AtcoCode</b>			190012345671	190012345675
<b>NaptanCode</b>			hamamat	
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>		Tilmore Gardens	Monks Orchard
	<b>Landmark</b>		Tilmore Gardens	Tilmore Gardens
	<b>Street</b>		Tilmore Gardens	Monks Orchard
	<b>Indicator</b>		o/s 57	o/s 22
<b>Bearing</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>		SW	SE
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>		E0046774→Petersfield	E0046774→Petersfield
	<b>Town</b>		--	--
	<b>Suburb</b>		--	--
	<b>Country</b>		England	England
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>		N	N
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>		UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>		474506	474306
	<b>Northing</b>		124867	124997
<b>StopClassification</b>	<b>StopType</b>		BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>		CUS (Custom)	CUS (Custom)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>		OTH	OTH
	<b>WaitTime</b>		0	0
<b>Notes</b>			--	--
<b>*StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>		--	--
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>			190→(52) →Hampshire [NPTG]	190→(52) →Hampshire [NPTG]
<b>StopAvailability</b>	<b>StopValidity</b>	<b>DateRange / StartDate</b>	10/07/2005	10/07/2005
		<b>DateRange / EndDate</b>	08/08/2005	08/08/2005
		<b>Status</b>	<b>Suspended</b>	<b>Active</b>
		<b>Transferred</b>	190012345675	

#### 9.4.2 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, the stop name might appear variously in context in a finder as follows:

- → Petersfield, Tilmore Gardens (o/s 57)
- → Petersfield. o/s 57 Tilmore Gardens (on Tilmore Gardens)

### 9.5 Example 5: Bus Interchange



Map taken from Brighton & Hove Bus Company publication Bus Times

**Figure 9-11 – Example 5 – Bus Interchange**

In *Figure 9-11*, based on the *Royal Pavilion* area of *Brighton Town Centre*, stops 'D', 'E' and 'F' comprise an on-street clustered 'GCLS' stop area with individually identified poles. Depending on the pattern of bus turning movements at the junction of 'Old Steine' and 'Castle Square', stops 'T', 'U' and 'V' and even 'G', 'H', & 'J' could also be included in the stop area. Similarly, other stop areas could be used to group other stop clusters such as 'A', 'B', 'C', 'Y', 'X', 'W'. A single stop area probably should not be used, as the stops at the extremities (e.g. A and M) are more than 250m apart, and do not constitute an obvious interchange: the general association of all the stops with a common *NPTG* locality of *Brighton Town Centre* may suffice to indicate a degree of relatedness. Alternatively a further stop area containing this and other adjacent stop areas may be required.

- A stop area is defined for the interchange, and the three stops are assigned to it.
- The stops are all Principal Timing Points.

*Figure 9-12 shows a stop hierarchy – with a stop area and three stops.*

## Brighton Example

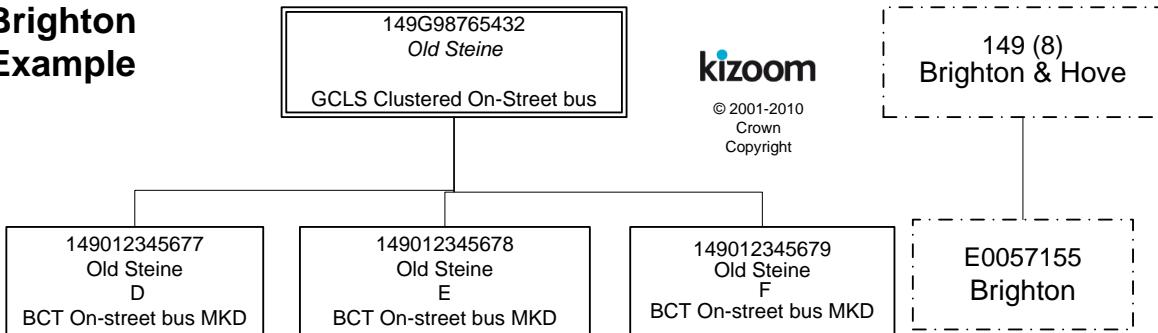


Figure 9-12 – Example 5: Stop Hierarchy for Brighton Old Steine

### 9.5.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definition: Example 5

Element	Subelement	Stop Area
<b>StopAreaCode</b>		149G98765432
<b>StopArea / Name</b>		Old Steine
<b>StopAreaType</b>		GCLS (Clustered on-street bus)
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	531210
	<b>Northing</b>	105485
<b>ParentAreaRef</b>		--
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		149 (8) → Brighton & Hove [NPTG]

### 9.5.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 5

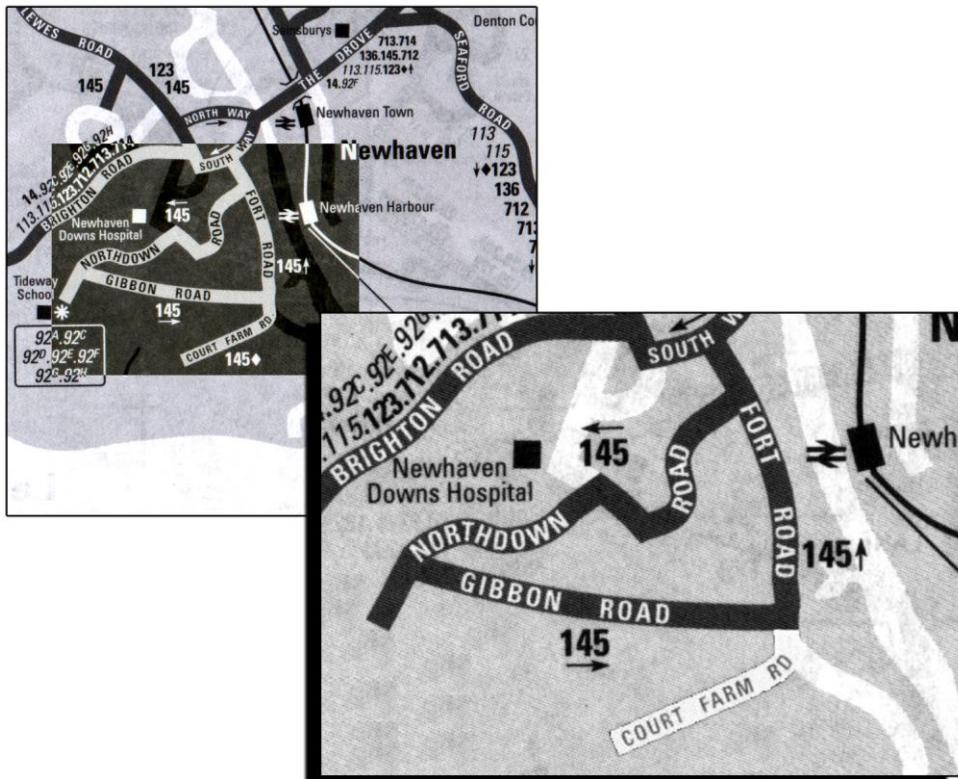
Element	Subelement	Stop Points		
		Stop D	Stop E	Stop F
<b>AtcoCode</b>		149012345677	149012345678	149012345679
<b>NaptanCode</b>		briwaga	briwagd	briwagg
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Old Steine	Old Steine	Old Steine
	<b>Landmark</b>	Royal Pavilion	Royal Pavilion	Royal Pavilion
	<b>Street</b>	Old Steine	Old Steine	Old Steine
	<b>Indicator</b>	Stop D	Stop E	Stop G
<b>Bearing</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>	NE	NE	NE
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0057155 → Brighton	E0057155 → Brighton	E0057155 → Brighton
	<b>Town</b>	--	--	--
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--	--
	<b>Country</b>	England	England	England
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	Y	Y	Y
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	531205	531210	531215
	<b>Northing</b>	105475	105485	105495
<b>StopClassification</b>	<b>StopType</b>	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	PTP (Principal Timing Point)	PTP (Principal Timing Point)	PTP (Principal Timing Point)
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	0	0	0
	<b>Notes</b>	--	--	--
<b>*StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	149G98765432 → Old Steine	149G98765432 → Old Steine	149G98765432 → Old Steine
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		149 (8) → Brighton & Hove [NPTG]	149 (8) → Brighton & Hove [NPTG]	149 (8) → Brighton & Hove [NPTG]

### 9.5.3 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows:

- → Brighton, Old Steine, Stop D
- → Brighton, Old Steine, Stop E
- → Brighton, Old Steine, Stop F

### 9.6 Example 6: Hail & Ride Stop Sections



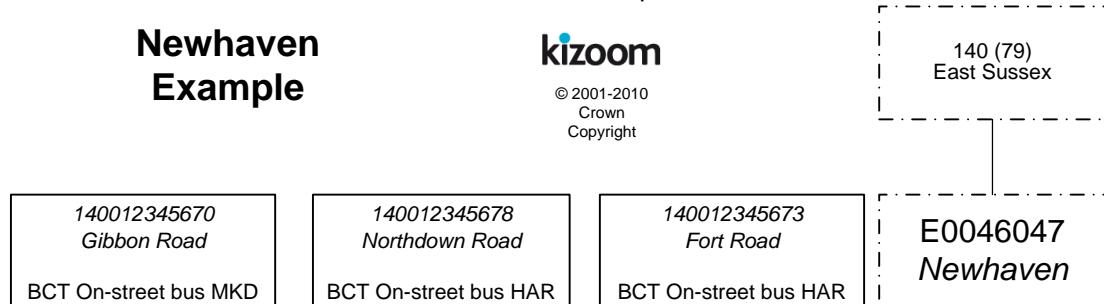
Map taken from East Sussex publication Bus Timetables

**Figure 9-13 – Example 6: Hail & Ride**

To name the zones covered by Hail & Ride services, a NaPTAN stop point entry is required for each road on the Hail & Ride section. In the example in *Figure 9-13*, Hail & Ride sections are defined for 'Northdown Road', and 'Fort Road', with a time info point bus stop on *Gibbon Road*.

- Each Hail & Ride entry corresponds to a section of the Hail & Ride route, so there are two Hail & Ride entries with a **StopClassification** of **HailAndRide** (HAR).
- Each Hail & Ride stop point has **HailAndRide / Start** and **End** elements.
- Hail & Ride and regular bus stop entries can be mixed; there is also one regular bus stop entry.
- *Gibbon Road* is a time info point.

Note that if the '*Gibbon Road*' had been a Hail & Ride road as well, it would be represented by two Hail & Ride sections, one each side of the marked stop in '*Gibbon Road*'.



**Figure 9-14 – Example 6: Stop Hierarchy for Newhaven Hail & Ride**

### 9.6.1 NaPTAN StopPoint Definition: Example 6

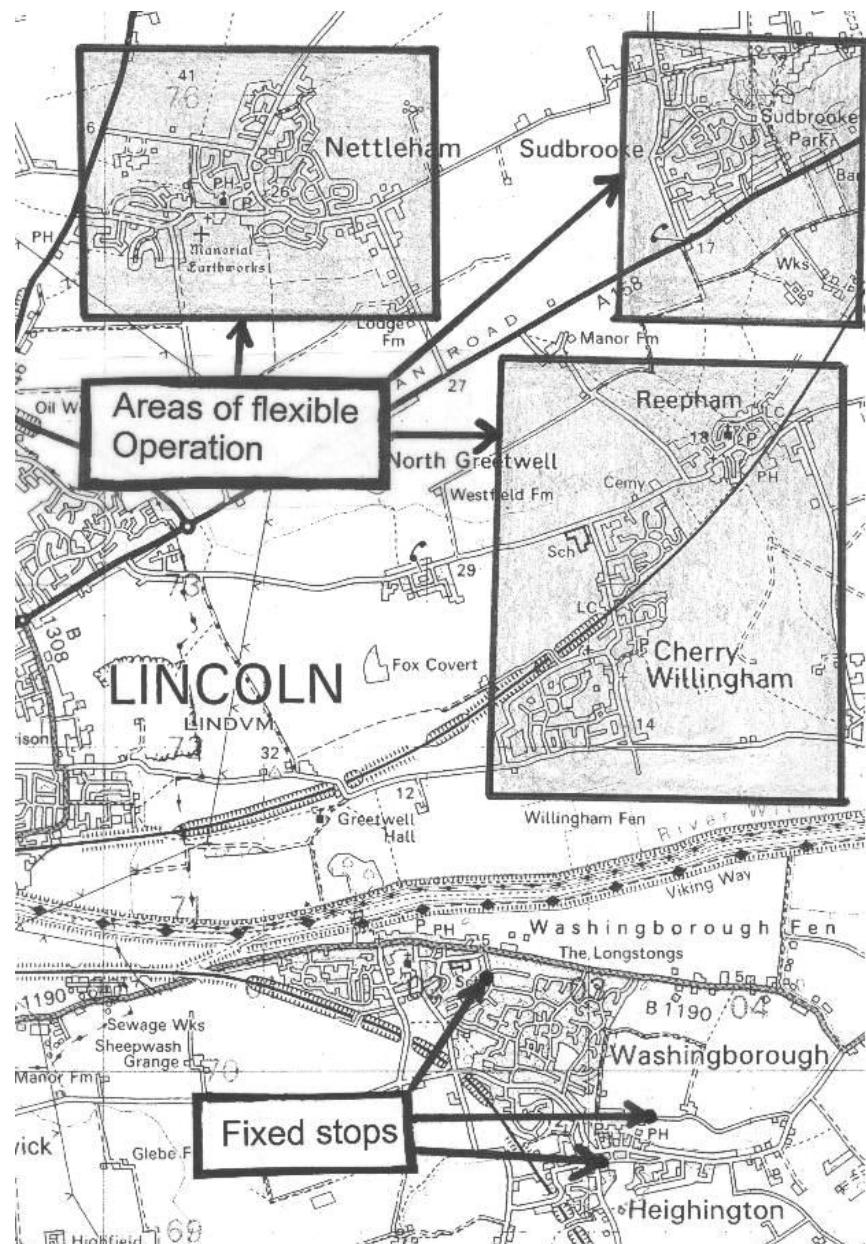
		Stop Points		
Element	Subelement	Gibbon Road Stop	Northdown Road	Fort Road
<i>AtcoCode</i>		140012345670	140012345678	140012345673
<i>NaptanCode</i>		brimgdt	brimgpdt	brigaga
<i>Descriptor</i>	<i>CommonName</i>	Gibbon Road	Northdown Road	Fort Road
	<i>Landmark</i>	Gibbon Road	Newhaven Downs Hospital	Station
	<i>Street</i>	Gibbon Road	Northdown Road	Fort Road
	<i>Indicator</i>	E-bound	W-bound	N-bound
	<i>NamingStyle</i>	Street	Street	Street
<i>Bearing</i>	<i>CompassPoint</i>	E	SW	N
<i>Place</i>	<i>NptgLocalityRef</i>	E0046047 → Newhaven	E0046047 → Newhaven	E0046047 → Newhaven
	<i>Town</i>	--	--	--
	<i>Suburb</i>	--	--	--
	<i>Country</i>	England	England	England
	<i>LocalityCentre</i>	N	N	N
<i>Location</i>	<i>GridType</i>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<i>Easting</i>	543975	543915	544528
	<i>Northing</i>	100555	100785	100858
<i>StopClassification</i>	<i>StopType</i>	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<i>OnStreet / Bus</i>	<i>BusStopType</i>	MKD (Marked)	HAR (Hail & Ride)	HAR (Hail & Ride)
	<i>TimingStatus</i>	TIP (Timing Info Point)	OTH	OTH
	<i>DefaultWaitTime</i>	0	0	0
<i>HailAndRide / Start</i>	<i>GridType</i>		UKOS	UKOS
	<i>Easting</i>		544300	544536
	<i>Northing</i>		101000	100516
<i>HailAndRide / End</i>	<i>Grid Type</i>		UKOS	UKOS
	<i>Easting</i>		543531	544520
	<i>Northing</i>		100571	101200
<i>Notes</i>		--	--	--
* <i>StopAreaRefs</i>	<i>StopAreaRef</i>	--	--	--
<i>AdministrativeArea</i>		140 (79) → East Sussex	140 (79) → East Sussex	140 (79) → East Sussex

### 9.6.2 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows (where Hail-and-Ride is added by the output system because the stop concerned is of stop type HAR):

- → Newhaven, Gibbon Road, E-bound
- → Newhaven, Northdown Road (Hail-and-Ride), W-bound
- → Newhaven, Fort Road (Hail-and-Ride), N-bound

### 9.7 Example 7: Flexible Service Stop Zones



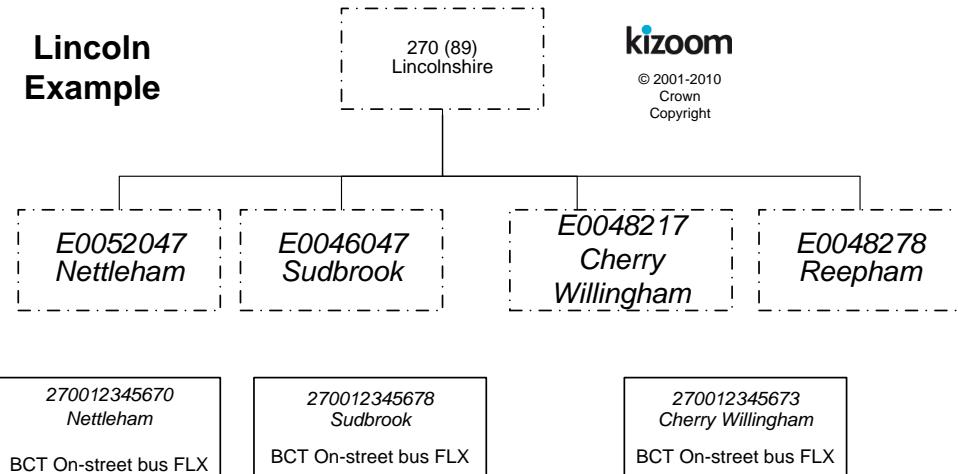
**Figure 9-15 – Example 7: Flexible Zones**

Flexible services may have two types of stops: *flexible zones* and *fixed stops*. To name the zones covered by flexible services, a *NaPTAN* stop point is required for each flexible zone.

In the example there are three flexible zones shown. The location attribute corresponds to the centre of the zone:

- Flexible zone stops ('FLX') are defined for 'Nettleham', 'Sudbrook' and 'Cherry Willingham',
  - The 'Cherry Willingham' area falls into two different *NPTG* localities so the stop is assigned to the main zone, *Cherry Willingham*, but has the other zone 'Reepham' specified as an alternative *NPTG* locality, so that it will also be in the gazetteer as an available transport service for the *Reepham* area.
  - For each zone, a bounding polygon is defined. This does not necessarily have to be rectangular – normally it will not be!
- In addition, three fixed stops are defined in 'Washingborough' and 'Heighington'.

- No stop areas are needed.
- **NaptanCode** instances have not yet been allocated to the zones.



**Figure 9-16 – Example 5: Stop Hierarchy for Lincoln Flexible Service**

### 9.7.1 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 7

Stop Points				
Element	Subelement	Nettleham	Sudbrooke	Cherry Willingham
<b>AtcoCode</b>		270023345670	270065345678	27006345673
<b>NaptanCode</b>		--	--	--
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Nettleham	Sudbrook	Cherry Willingham
	<b>Landmark</b>	Nettleham	Sudbrook	Cherry Willingham
	<b>Street</b>	--	--	--
	<b>Indicator</b>			
<b>Bearing</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>	-	-	-
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0052047 → Nettleham	E0046047 → Sudbrooke	E0048217 → Cherry Willingham
	<b>AlternativeNptgLocality</b>			E0048278 → Reepham
	<b>Town</b>	--	--	--
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--	--
	<b>Country</b>	England	England	England
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	Y	Y	Y
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	543975	543915	544528
	<b>Northing</b>	100795	100785	100858
<b>StopClassification</b>	<b>Stop Type</b>	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	FLX (Flexible)	FLX (Flexible)	FLX (Flexible)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	OTH	OTH	OTH
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	0	0	0
<b>*FlexibleZone</b> (multiple records to define polygon)	<b>*GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>*Easting</b>	543975.	543915.	544528.
	<b>*Northing</b>	100795.	100785.	100858.
<b>Notes</b>		--	--	--
<b>*StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	--	--	--
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		270 (89) → Lincolnshire NPTG	270 (89) → Lincolnshire NPTG	270 (89) → Lincolnshire NPTG

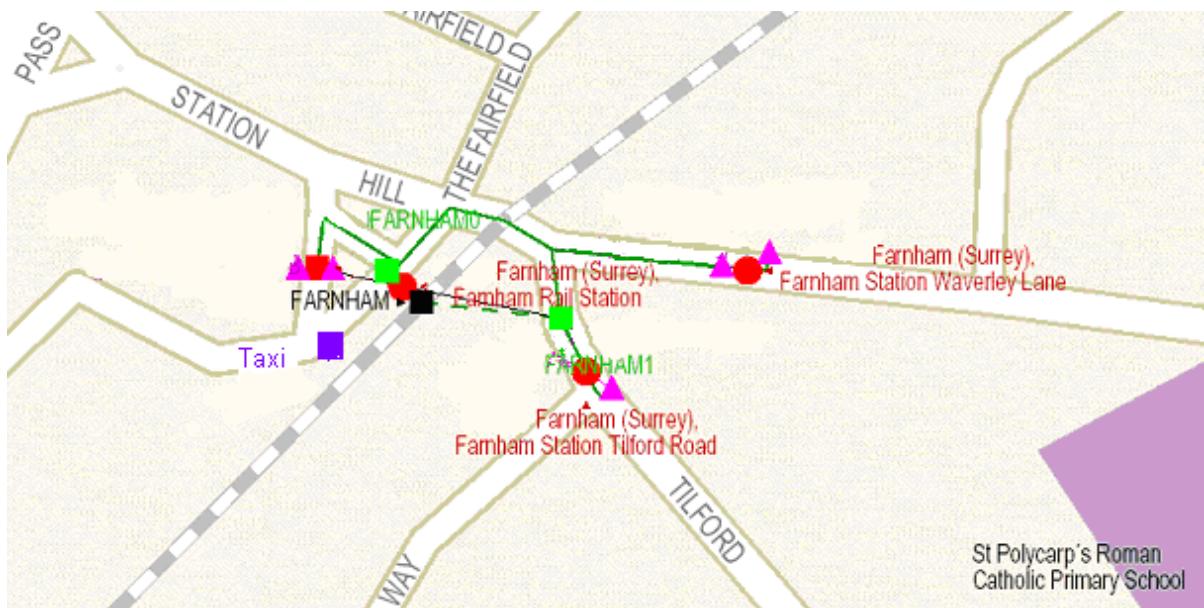
### 9.7.2 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows. The phrase (flexible zone) would be added by an output system based on the fact that the stop type is FLX:

- → Nettleham, Nettleham (flexible zone)
- → Sudbrook, Sudbrook (flexible zone).

- → Cherry Willingham, Cherry Willingham (flexible zone)
- → Reepham, Cherry Willingham (flexible zone)

**9.8 Example 8: Railway Station with Bus and Taxi**



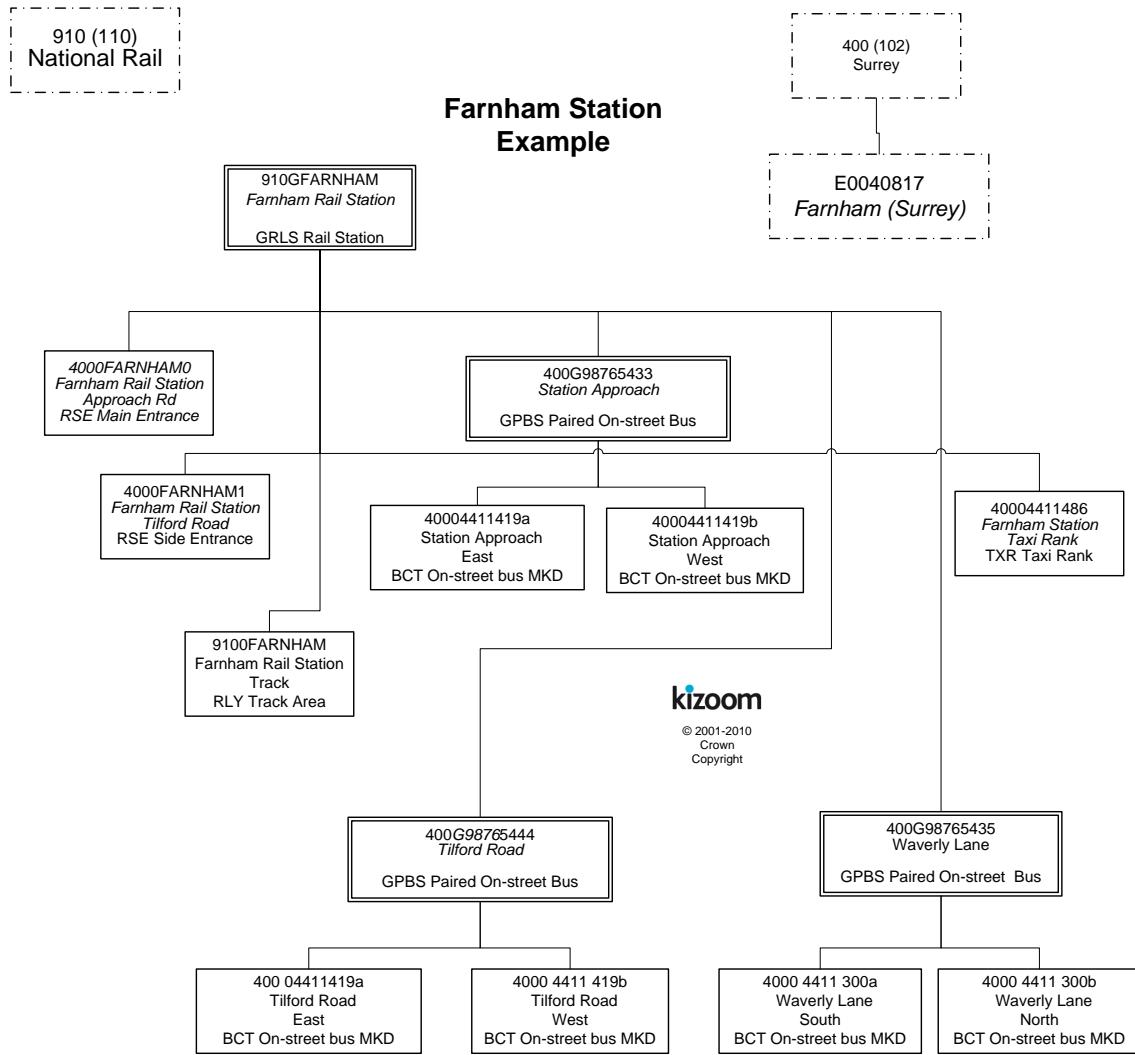
Map courtesy of Dr Hans Mentz, MDV from SELTA region data

**Figure 9-17 – Example 8: Railway Station Interchange.**

Railway stations are usually not only stop points in their own right, but also important interchange points. In NaPTAN a station always consists of at least of two points; a track area, and a main entrance, and very often includes also one or more adjacent bus stops and a taxi rank. *Figure 9-17* shows an example for ‘Farnham Station’; there are three pairs of bus stops in the vicinity which can usefully be associated with the station. Note that the Stop Area for the station Group is created centrally as part of the 910 data set, and so has a different AtcoAreaCode to the other groups.

- Rail - ‘GRLS’
  - *Farnham Rail Station* – Access Area ‘RLY’
  - *Farnham Rail Station* – Main Entrance on Station Approach ‘RSE’.
  - *Farnham Rail Station* – Tilford Road Entrance ‘RSE’.
- Bus
  - ‘Station Approach’ Pair - ‘GPBS’
    - *Station Approach East*
    - *Station Approach West*
  - ‘Waverley Lane’ Pair - ‘GPBS’
    - *Waverley Lane, E-bound.*
    - *Waverley Lane, W-bound*
  - ‘Tilford Road’ Pair - ‘GPBS’
    - *Tilford Road, S-bound*
    - *Tilford Road, N-bound*
- Taxi
  - *Farnham Rail Station* – Taxi Rank ‘TXR’

*Figure 9-18* shows a possible hierarchy - a stop area is used for each group of stops, and a Rail Station stop area (GRLS) clusters the whole ensemble.



**Figure 9-18 – Example 9: Stop Hierarchy for Farnham Station**

NOTE: the 9100FARNHAM RLY element is the Access Area – the logical location for a passenger using the station. If the station is a major interchange, this would be where interchange takes place. If the station is mainly used for boarding and alighting, the main booking hall or its equivalent, inside the station entrance, would be appropriate. Note the GRLS and the RLY elements have national prefixes (910) and are managed nationally; all other elements have local prefixes (400 in this case) and are managed locally.

### 9.8.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 8

Stop Areas					
Element	Subelement	Rail	Bus Pair 1	Bus Pair 2	Bus Pair 3
<b>StopAreaCode</b>		910GFARNHAM	400G98765433	400G9876544	400G98765435
<b>StopArea / Name</b>		Farnham Rail Station	Station Approach	Tilford Road	Waverley Lane
<b>StopArea Classification</b>		GRLS Rail Station	GPBS On-street bus	GPBS On-street bus	GPBS On-street bus
<b>Location</b>	<b>Grid Type</b>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	466312	466312	466412	466512
	<b>Northing</b>	105510	105511	105519	105510
<b>ParentAreaRef</b>		--	400GFARNHAM	400GFARNHAM	400GFARNHAM
<b>Administrative Area</b>		910 (NR) →National Rail	400 (102) →Surrey	400 (102) →Surrey	400 (102) →Surrey

### 9.8.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 8

#### 9.8.2.1 Rail Station Stop Points

Stop Points						
Element	Subelement	Main Entrance	Side Entrance	AccessArea	Platform 1	Platform 2
<b>AtcoCode</b>		4000FARNHAM0	4000FARNHAM1	9100FARNHAM	9100-FARNHAM1	9100-FARNHAM2
<b>NaptanCode</b>						
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Farnham Rail Station	Farnham Rail Station	Farnham Rail Station	Platform 1	Platform 2
	<b>Landmark</b>	Station	Station	Station	Station	Station
	<b>Street</b>	Station Approach	Tilford Road	Station Approach		
	<b>Indicator</b>	Main Entrance	Side Entrance		1	2
<b>Bearing</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>	--	--	--		
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0040817→ Farnham (Surrey)				
	<b>Town</b>	--	--	--		
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--	--		
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	466315	466316	466310	466315	466316
	<b>Northing</b>	105515	105518	105505	105515	105518
<b>Stop-Classification</b>	<b>StopType</b>	RSE	RSE	RLY	RSE	RSE
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	--	--	--	--	--
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	--	--	--	--	--
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	--	--	--	--	--
<b>Notes</b>		--	--	--	--	--
* <b>StopArea-Refs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	400GFARNHAM → Farnham Rail Station	400GFARNHAM M → Farnham Rail Station			
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		400 (102)→Surrey	400 (102)→Surrey	910 (NR) →National Rail	910 (NR) →National Rail	910 (NR) →National Rail

#### 9.8.2.2 Bus Stop Points- #1

Stop Points					
Element	Subelement	Tilford Road a	Tilford Road b	Waverley Lane a	Waverley Lane b
<b>AtcoCode</b>		40004411419a	40004411419b	40004411300a	40004411300b
<b>NaptanCode</b>		surpadgm	surpjadw	surpwdgm	surpjwdw
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Tilford Road	Tilford Road	Waverley Lane	Waverley Lane
	<b>Landmark</b>	Station	Station	Station	Station
	<b>Street</b>	Tilford Road	Tilford Road	Station Hill	Station Hill
	<b>Indicator</b>	N-bound	S-bound	E-bound	W-bound
<b>Bearing</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>	NW	SE	E	W

<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0040817→ Farnham (Surrey)	E0040817→ Farnham (Surrey)	E0040817→ Farnham (Surrey)	E0040817→ Farnham (Surrey)
	<b>Town</b>	Farnham	Farnham	Farnham	Farnham
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--	--	--
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	N	N	N	N
<b>Location</b>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	466315	466310	466315	466310
	<b>Northing</b>	105515	105505	105615	105605
<b>StopClassification</b>	<b>StopType</b>	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<b>Bus</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	TIP (Time info point)	TIP (Time info point)	TIP (Time info point)	TIP (Time info point)
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	0	0	0	0
<b>Notes</b>		--	--	--	--
* <b>StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	400G98765432 →	400G98765432→	400G98765432→	400G98765432→
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		400 (102)→Surrey	400 (102)→Surrey	400 (102)→Surrey	400 (102)→Surrey

#### 9.8.2.3 Bus Stop Points- #2

Stop Points			
Element	Subelement	Station Approach a	Station Approach b
<i>AtcoCode</i>		40004411338a	40004411338b
<i>NaptanCode</i>		surpadgm	surjadw
<i>Location</i>	<b>GridType</b>	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	466315	466310
	<b>Northing</b>	105515	105505
<i>Descriptor</i>	<b>CommonName</b>	Station Approach East	Station Approach West
	<b>Landmark</b>	Station	Station
	<b>Street</b>	Station Approach	Station Approach
	<b>Indicator</b>	on	on
<i>Bearing</i>	<b>CompassPoint</b>	S	N
<i>Place</i>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0040817→ Farnham (Surrey)	E0040817→ Farnham (Surrey)
	<b>Street</b>	Station Approach	Station Approach
	<b>Town</b>	Farnham	Farnham
	<b>Suburb</b>	--	--
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	N	N
<b>StopClassification</b>		BCT (On-street bus)	BCT (On-street bus)
<b>BusStop</b>	<b>BusStopType</b>	MKD (Marked)	MKD (Marked)
	<b>TimingStatus</b>	TIP (Time info point)	TIP (Time info point)
	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	0	0
<b>Notes</b>		--	--
* <b>StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	400G98765433→	400G98765433→
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		400 (102)→Surrey	400 (102)→Surrey

#### 9.8.3 Names in Context

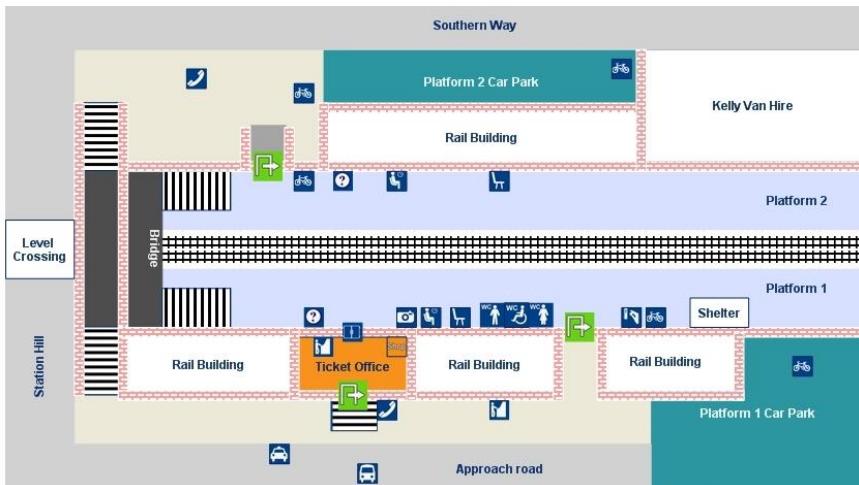
Depending on the application and the other stops data present, the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows

- → 'Farnham, Farnham Rail Station'
- → 'Farnham, Farnham Rail Station, Tilford Road'
- → 'Farnham, on Station Approach East'
- → 'Farnham, on Station Approach West'
- → 'Farnham, Waverley Lane, E-bound'
- → 'Farnham, Waverley LaneW-bound'
- → 'Farnham, Tilford Road,S-bound'
- → 'Farnham, Tilford Road, N-bound'

#### 9.8.4 Simple Accessibility

#### 9.8.4.1 Rail Station Stop Points Accessibility (+Napt V2.5)

Stop data may also include Accessibility data. The following map of Farnham Station (courtesy National Rail Enquiries) shows that Farnham Station has two platforms, both of which may be reached by wheelchair and without steps. However not all areas of the station are accessible.



**Figure 19 Farnham Rail Example (Copyright National Rail Enquiries)**

The following table shows an encoding of some accessibility data for the station stop points.

Stop Points						
Element	Subelement	Main Entrance	Side Entrance	AccessArea	Platform 1	Platform2
<b>AtcoCode</b>		4000 FARNHAM0	4000 FARNHAM1	9100 FARNHAM	9100- FARNHAM1	9100- FARNHAM2
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Farnham Rail Station	Farnham Rail Station	Farnham Rail Station	Platform 1	Platform 2
<b>Stop-Accessibility</b>	<b>MobilityImpaired-Access</b>	true	true	true	true	true
	<b>WheelchairAccess</b>	true	true	partial	true	true
	<b>StepFreeAccess</b>	true	true	partial	true	true
	<b>AudibleSignsAvailable</b>	--	--	true	true	true
	<b>VisualSignsAvailable</b>	--	--	true	true	true
	<b>AssistanceAvailability</b>	available	available	available	available	available
	<b>InfoUrl</b>			http://www.nationalrail.co.uk/stations/FNH/details.html		
	<b>Note</b>	.		Both platforms have level access. Step free interchange is via a level crossing at the London end of the platforms		
	<b>AccessVehicleEquipment / Ramp</b>				true	true
	<b>AssistanceNeeded</b>			r	ramp-Required	ramp-Required
	<b>GuideDogsAllowed</b>			true	true	true
	<b>ServicesAtStopAre-NormallyAccessible</b>			true	true	true

The following table shows an encoding of basic accessibility data for the bus stop points.

		Stop Points			
Element	Subelement	Tilford Road a	Tilford Road b	Waverley Lane a	Waverley Lane b
<b>AtcoCode</b>		40004411419a	40004411419b	40004411300a	40004411300b
		surpadgm	surpjadw	surpwdgm	surpjwdw
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>CommonName</b>	Tilford Road	Tilford Road	Waverley Lane	Waverley Lane
<b>Stop-Accessibility</b>	<b>MobilityImpaired-Access</b>	true	true	true	true
	<b>WheelchairAccess</b>	true	true	tue	true
	<b>StepFreeAccess</b>	true	true	true	true
	<b>AudibleSignsAvailable</b>	false	false	false	false
	<b>VisualSignsAvailable</b>	true	true	true	true
	<b>AssistanceAvailability</b>	available	available	available	available
	<b>Note</b>	.		Both platforms have level access. Step free interchange is via a level crossing at the London end of the platforms	
	<b>AccessVehicleEquipment / LowFloor</b>	true	true	true	true
	<b>AssistanceNeeded</b>	unknown	unknown	unknown	unknown
	<b>GuideDogsAllowed</b>	true	true	true	true
	<b>ServicesAtStopAre-NormallyAccessible</b>	true	true	true	true

### 9.9 Example 9: Metro Station with Bus & Light Rail

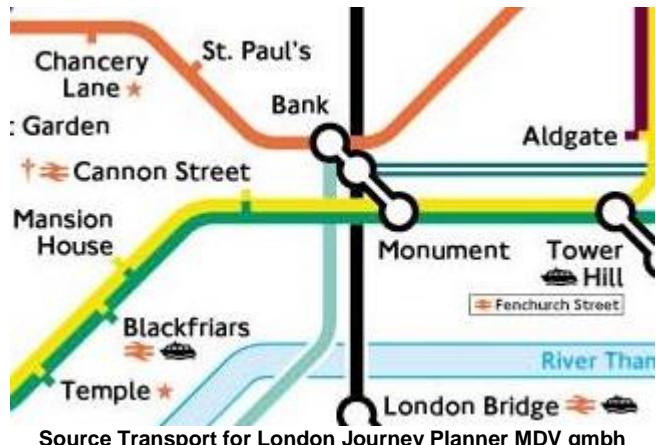


Figure 9-20 – Example 9: Bank Tube Lines

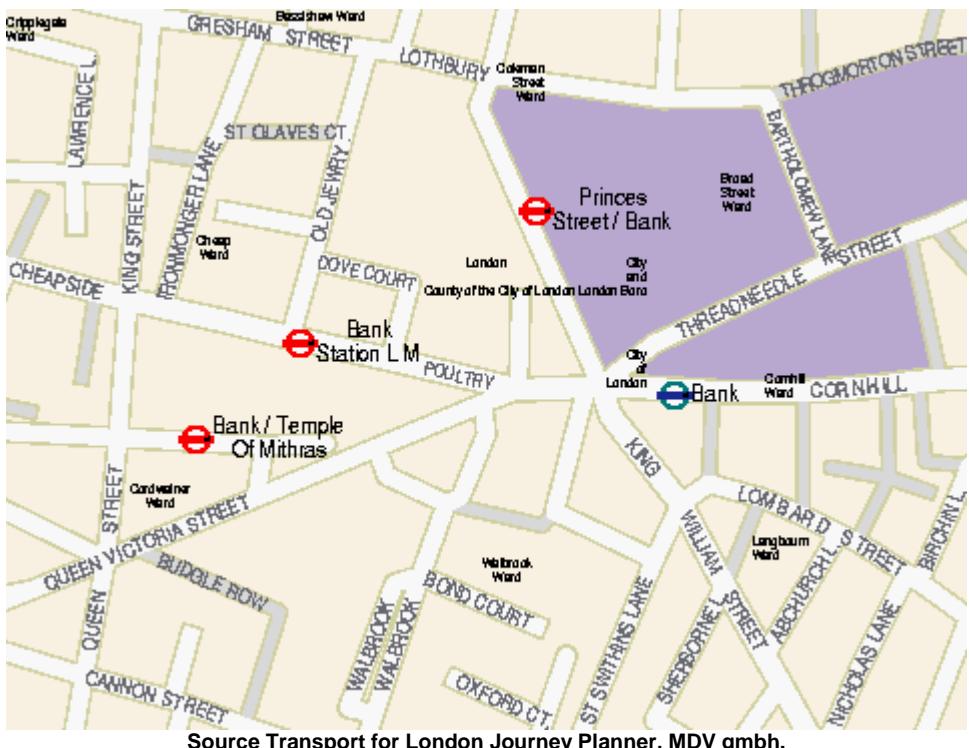


Figure 9-21 – Example 9: Bank Station Street Area

This example considers 'Bank' underground station in the 'City of London', which connects two tube lines ('Northern' and 'Central') to the 'Waterloo and City' (Figure 9-20) with the Docklands Light Railway. There are several bus stops in the vicinity Figure 9-21. However not all the bus stop areas are considered to be part of an interchange with Bank Station. There is a walkable tunnel connection with 'Monument' underground station.

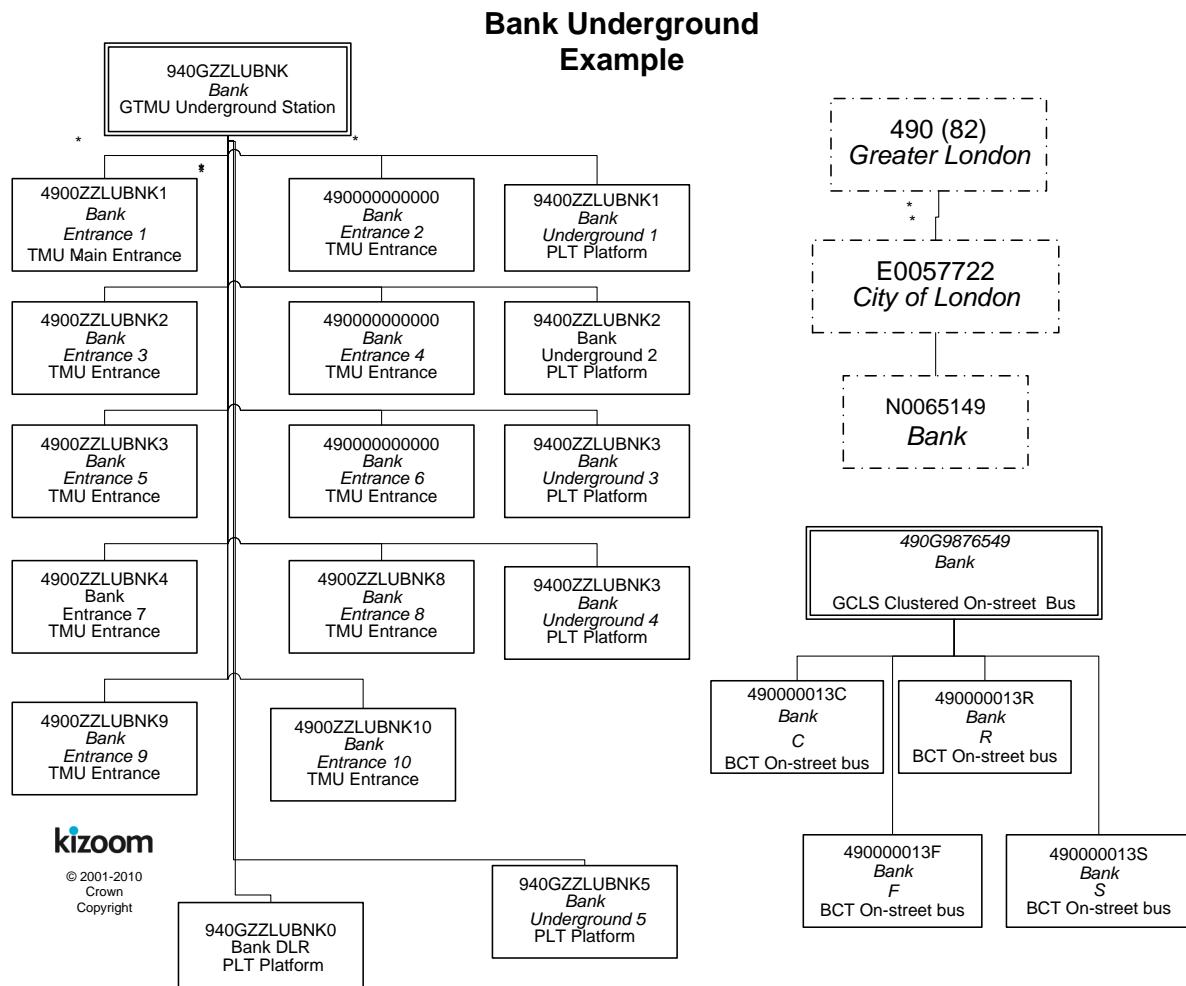
- Metro - 'GTMU'
- Bank – 10 different entrances 'TMU'.
- Bank - four 'PLT' platform areas
- Bank – DLR Access Area. ('MET')
- Bus

- ‘Bank’ Cluster - ‘GCLS’
  - *Bank, stop C*
  - *Bank, stop F*
  - *Bank, stop R*
  - *Bank, stop S*
- ‘Princes Street’ Pair - ‘GPBS’
  - *‘Princes Street at Bank, stop A’.*
  - *‘Princes Street at Bank, stop B’.*
- ‘Bank Station L M’ Pair - ‘GPBS’
  - *‘Bank Station L M, stop K’.*
  - *‘Bank Station L M, stop L’.*
- ‘Bank Temple of Mithras’ Cluster - ‘GCLS’
  - *‘Bank Temple of Mithras, stop H’.*
  - *‘Bank Temple of Mithras, stop J’.*
  - *‘Bank Temple of Mithras, stop JA’.*

*Figure 9-22 and Figure 9-23* show a possible stop hierarchy - a ‘GTMU’ stop area is used for the tube station and a ‘GBPS’ or ‘GCLS’ stop area for each group of bus stops. The GTMU stop area is used as a parent for the *Bank GCLS* Bus cluster as this is deemed to be close enough to Bank Underground Station to constitute an interchange. This example shows that judgement must be exercised as to which stops constitute a true interchange.

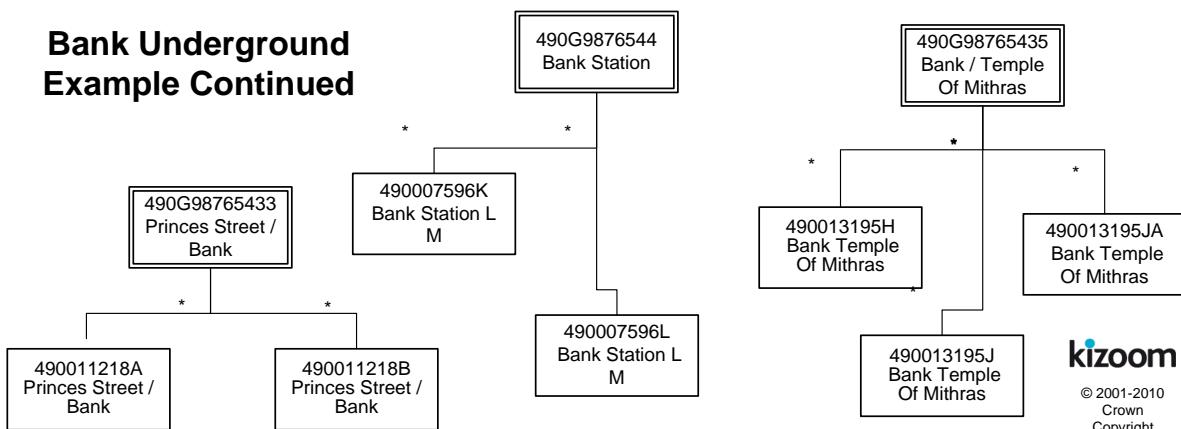
The model in this case has only four PLT elements for the Underground station – each represents a platform used for travel in both directions. This is legacy data – ideally each platform EDGE should now be coded as a separate PLT element so that they can each have the public-facing indicator (Platform 1 or A, etc)

The link to *Monument* creates an entrance to ‘Bank’ station, located at the *Monument* (and vice versa). The entrances should be at the same location to create direct connectivity (if supported); otherwise a walk link is needed, which is outside the scope of NaPTAN.



**Figure 9-22 – Example 9: Stop Hierarchy for Bank Underground Station**

**Bank Underground Example Continued**



**Figure 9-23 – Example 9: Bank Underground Station – Stops in Area**

### 9.9.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 9

Stop Areas						
Element	Subelement	Metro	Bus Pair 1	Bus Pair 2	Bus Cluster 3	Bus Cluster 4
<b>StopAreaCode</b>		940G ZZLUBNK	490G 98765433	490G 9876544	490G 9876549	490G 98765435
<b>StopArea / Name</b>		Bank Station	Princes Street at Bank	Bank Station LM	Bank	Bank Temple Of Mithras
<b>StopArea Classification</b>		GTMU Metro Station	GPBS On-street bus	GPBS On-street bus	GCLS On-street bus	GCLS On-street bus
<b>Location</b>	<b>Grid Type</b>	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS	UKOS
	<b>Easting</b>	532711	532660	532537	532774	532560
	<b>Northing</b>	181112	181209	181139	181173	181053
<b>ParentAreaRef</b>		940G ZZLUBNK	940GZZLUBNK	940GZZLUBNK K	940GZZLUBNK	940GZZLUBNK
<b>Administrative Area</b>		940(MET)→M etro National	490 (82)→Greater London	490 (82)→Greater London	490 (82)→Greater London	490 (82)→Greater London

### 9.9.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 9

#### 9.9.2.1 Metro Stop Points: Common Values

Element	Subelement	Common Values
<b>Descriptor</b>	<b>Landmark</b>	--
<b>Place</b>	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	E0057722 → City of London
	<b>AlternativeNptgLocalityRef</b>	N0065149 → Bank
	<b>Town</b>	--
	<b>Suburb</b>	--
	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	Y
* <b>StopAreaRefs</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	940G98765431→Bank Station
		490G98765433→ Bank
<b>AdministrativeArea</b>		490 (82)→Greater London

#### 9.9.2.2 Metro Stop Points: Stops

AtcoCode	Stop Type	Bus Stop Type	CommonName	Landmark	Street	Indicator	Bearing	Status	Bank
9400ZZLUBNK0	PLT	--	Bank	Bank	Cornhill	DLR 1	--	ACT	Y
9400 ZZLUBNK 1	PLT	--	Bank	Bank	Cornhill	Under-ground 1	--	ACT	Y
9400 ZZLUBNK 2	PLT	--	Bank	Bank	Cornhill	Under-ground 2	--	ACT	Y
9400 ZZLUBNK 3	PLT	--	Bank-	Bank	Cornhill	Under-ground 3	--	ACT	Y
9400 ZZLUBNK 4	PLT	--	Bank	Bank	Cornhill	Under-ground 4	--	ACT	Y
9400 ZZLUBNK 5	PLT	--	Bank	Bank	Cornhill	Under-ground 5	--	ACT	Y
4900 ZZLUBNK0	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	Queen Victoria Street	Entrance 1	--	ACT	Y
4900 ZZLUBNK1	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	Poultry	Entrance 2	--	ACT	Y
4900 ZZLUBNK2	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	Queen Victoria Street	Entrance 3	--	ACT	Y
4900 ZZLUBNK3	TMU	--	Bank	Royal Exchange	Cornhill	Entrance 4	--	ACT	Y
4900 ZZLUBNK4	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	King William Street	Entrance 5	--	ACT	Y
4900 ZZLUBNK5	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	King William Street	Entrance 6	--	ACT	Y
4900	TMU	--	Bank	Bank Of	Threadneedle	Entrance	--	ACT	Y

Part III

Examples

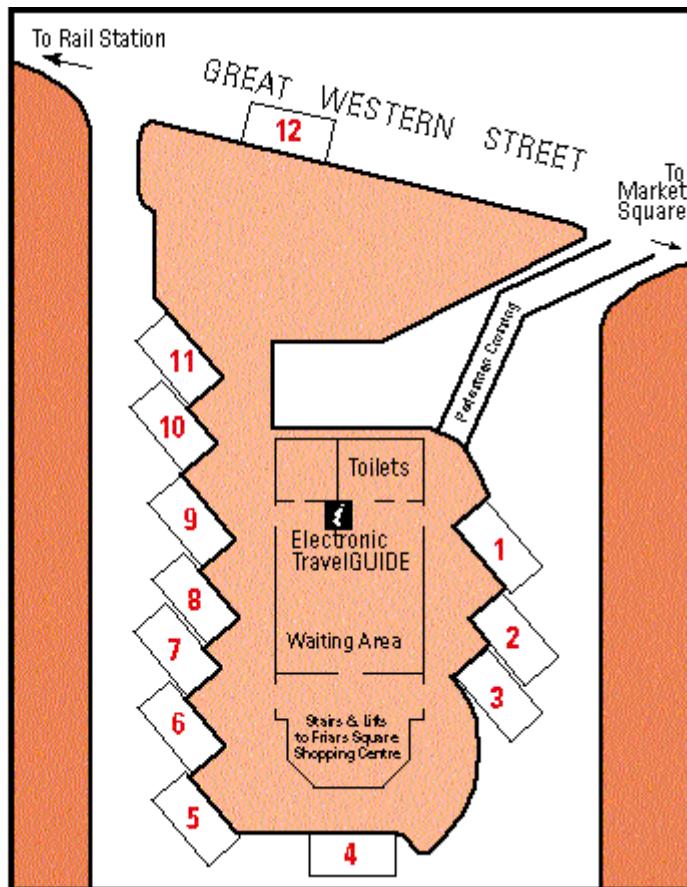
ZZLUBNK6				England	Street	7			
4900	TMU	--	Bank	Bank Of England	Threadneedle Street	Entrance 8	--	ACT	Y
ZZLUBNK7									
4900	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	Lombard Street	Entrance 9	--	ACT	Y
ZZLUBNK8									
4900	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	King William Street	Entrance 10	--	ACT	Y
ZZLUBNK9									
4900	TMU	--	Bank	Mansion House	King William Street	Entrance 11	--	ACT	Y
ZZLUBNKA									
4900	TMU	--	Bank	Monument	King William Street	Entrance 12	--	ACT	Y
ZZLUBNKB									
490000013C	BCT	MKD	Bank	Bank Of England	Threadneedle Street	Stop C	E	ACT	Y
490000013F	BCT	MKD	Bank	Mansion House	King William Street	Stop F	S	ACT	Y
490000013R	BCT	MKD	Bank	Royal Exchange	Cornhill	Stop R	E	ACT	Y
490000013S	BCT	MKD	Bank	Royal Exchange	Cornhill	Stop S	W	ACT	Y
490007596K	BCT	MKD	Bank Station L M	Mansion House	Cheapside	Stop K	W	ACT	N
490007596L	BCT	MKD	Bank Station L M	Mansion House	Poultry	Stop L	E	ACT	N
490011218A	BCT	MKD	Princes Street / Bank	Bank Of England	Princes Street	Stop A	N	ACT	N
490011218B	BCT	MKD	Princes Street / Bank	Bank Of England	Princes Street	Stop B	S	ACT	N
490011218N	BCT	MKD	Princes Street / Bank	Bank Of England	Princes Street	Stop N	N	DEL	N
490011218P	BCT	MKD	Princes Street / Bank	Bank Of England	Princes Street	Stop P	S	DEL	N
490013195H	BCT	MKD	Bank / Temple Of Mithras	Temple of Mithras	Queen Victoria Street	Stop H	E	ACT	N
490013195J	BCT	MKD	Bank / Temple Of Mithras	Temple of Mithras	Queen Victoria Street	Stop J	W	ACT	N
490013195JA	BCT	MKD	Bank / Temple Of Mithras	Temple of Mithras	Queen Victoria Street	Stop JA	W	ACT	N

### 9.9.3 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, some of the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows:

- → 'City Of London, Bank Temple Of Mithras'
- → 'City Of London, Princes Street at Bank'
-

**9.10 Example 10: Bus Station with Bays**



From Bucks Pindar Journey Planner web site, Digital cartography by FWT

**Figure 9-24 – Example 10: Aylesbury Bus Station**

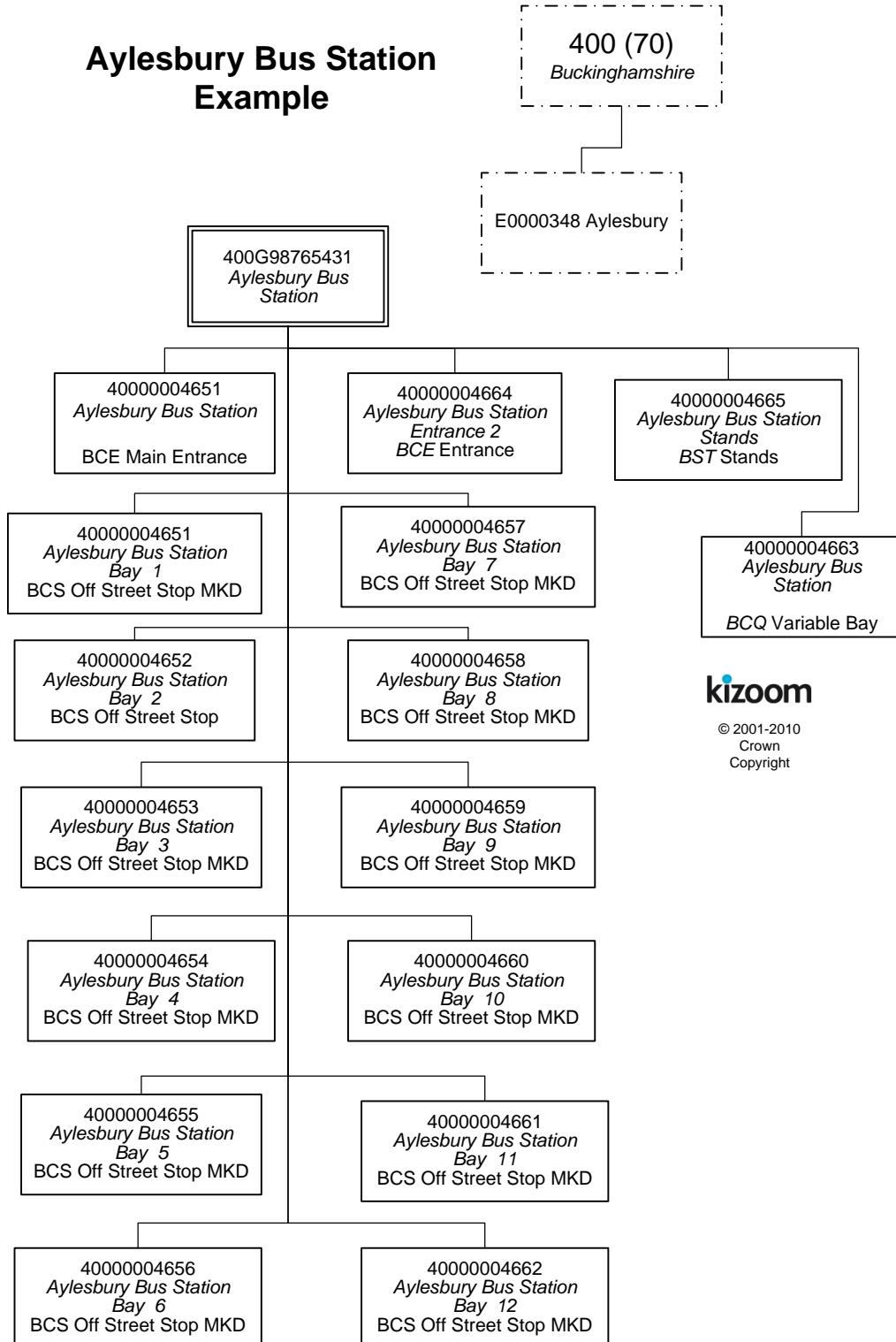
This example models Aylesbury Bus Station which has 12 Bays – see Figure 9-24.

- A stop area of type GBCS is used to represent the station.
- There is a 'BCE' stop for the pedestrian entrance.
- Each bay has its own NaPTAN stop of type 'BCS'.
- If variable bay allocation is needed, there is a variable bay stop of type BCQ which can be used when no specific bay is assigned in advance.

There are notes attached to each stop.

	Destination
1	Bicester Road (Rural Services)
2	Town Services to Quarrendon, Haydon Hill and Elmhurst
3	Wendover Road Services
4	Town Services to Southcourt, Walton Court, Hawkslade Farm and Stoke Mandeville Hospital
5	Town Services to Fairford Leys and Southcourt
6	Services to Stoke Mandeville, Princes Risborough, High Wycombe and Reading
7	Tring Road Services to Luton, Hemel and Watford
8	Town Services to Broughton and Bedgrove
9	Services to Haddenham, Thame and Oxford
10	Services to Leighton Buzzard, Bletchley and Milton Keynes
11	Services to Watermead, Winslow and Buckingham
12	Certain school journeys, early morning and late evening departures

**Table 9-1 – Example 10: Stop Notes for Aylesbury Bus Station**



**Figure 9-25 – Example 10: Stop Hierarchy for Aylesbury Bus Station**

### 9.10.1 NaPTAN StopArea Definitions: Example 10

		StopArea
Element	Subelement	Bus
<i>StopAreaCode</i>		400G98765431
<i>StopArea / Name</i>		Aylesbury Bus Station
<i>StopAreaType</i>		GBCS Bus Station
<i>Location</i>	<i>Grid Type</i>	UKOS
	<i>Easting</i>	481879
	<i>Northing</i>	213593
<i>ParentAreaRef</i>		--
<i>AdministrativeArea</i>		

### 9.10.2 NaPTAN StopPoint Definitions: Example 10

#### 9.10.2.1 Bus Station Stop Points: Common Values Example 10

Element	Subelement	Common Values
<i>Descriptor</i>	<i>Landmark</i>	Bus Station
<i>Place</i>	<i>NptgLocalityRef</i>	E0000348 → Aylesbury Town Centre
	<i>Town</i>	
	<i>Suburb</i>	
	<i>Street</i>	Great Western Street
	<i>Landmark</i>	Bus Station
<i>LocalityCentre</i>		Y
* <i>StopAreaRefs</i>	<i>StopAreaRef</i>	400G98765431 → Aylesbury Bus Station
<i>AdministrativeArea</i>		400 (70) → Buckinghamshire

#### 9.10.2.2 Bus Station Stop Points: Example 10

AtcoCode	Stop Type	Bus Stop Type	Easting	Northing	CommonName	Indicator	Timing Status	Status
40000004650	BCE		481881	213599	Aylesbury Bus Station	Entrance		ACT
40000004651	BCS	MKD	481881	213599	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 1	PTP	ACT
40000004652	BCS	MKD	481883	213597	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 2	PTP	ACT
40000004653	BCS	MKD	481884	213595	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 3	PTP	ACT
40000004654	BCS	MKD	481885	213589	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 4	PTP	ACT
40000004655	BCS	MKD	481881	213585	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 5	PTP	ACT
40000004656	BCS	MKD	481879	213587	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 6	PTP	ACT
40000004657	BCS	MKD	481877	213589	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 7	PTP	ACT
40000004658	BCS	MKD	481875	213591	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 8	PTP	ACT
40000004659	BCS	MKD	481873	213593	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 9	PTP	ACT
40000004660	BCS	MKD	481871	213595	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 10	PTP	ACT
40000004661	BCS	MKD	481869	213597	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 11	PTP	ACT
40000004662	BCS	MKD	481896	213605	Aylesbury Bus Station	Bay 12	PTP	ACT
40000046633	BCQ	MKD	481884	213595	Aylesbury Bus Station	Departures	PTP	ACT

AtcoCode	Note
40000004651	Bicester Road (Rural Services)
40000004652	Town Services to Quarrendon, Haydon Hill and Elmhurst
40000004653	Wendover Road Services
40000004654	Town Services to Southcourt, Walton Court, Hawkslade Farm and Stoke Mandeville Hospital

40000004655	Town Services to Fairford Leys and Southcourt
40000004656	Services to Stoke Mandeville, Princes Risborough, High Wycombe and Reading
40000004657	Tring Road Services to Luton, Hemel and Watford
40000004658	Town Services to Broughton and Bedgrove
40000004659	Services to Haddenham, Thame and Oxford
40000004660	Services to Leighton Buzzard, Bletchley and Milton Keynes
40000004661	Services to Watermead, Winslow and Buckingham
40000004662	Certain school journeys, early morning and late evening departures

#### 9.10.3 Names in Context

Depending on the application and the other stops data present, some of the stop names might appear variously in context in a finder as follows:

- → 'Aylesbury, Bus Station, Bay 1
- → 'Aylesbury, Bus Station, Bay 5
- → 'Aylesbury, Bus Station, Bay 8
- → 'Aylesbury, Bus Station, departures {representing the BCQ stop}

### 9.11 Example 11: Major Airport

NOTE : This example describes Heathrow as it was several years ago (that is, before the addition of Terminal 5 and the closure of Terminal 2). but it still reflects the relevant principles for constructing a large interchange –

Major Airports are typically especially complex interchange points. We consider an example in summary below.

- There are two physically separate termini groups for Heathrow, with separate access by public transport: '*Heathrow Airport*' and '*Heathrow Terminal 4*'.
  - '*Heathrow Airport*' contains sub areas for '*Terminal 1*', '*Terminal 2*', '*Terminal 3*', '*Terminal 123 Underground Station*', '*Terminal 123 Heathrow Express Station*', '*Terminal 123 Bus Station*', '*Terminal 123 Coach Station*', and a number of bus and coach stops and taxi ranks.
  - '*Heathrow Terminal 4*' contains sub areas for '*Underground Station*', '*Heathrow Express Station*' and a number of bus and coach stops and taxi ranks.

To model this in *NaPTAN* we might use:

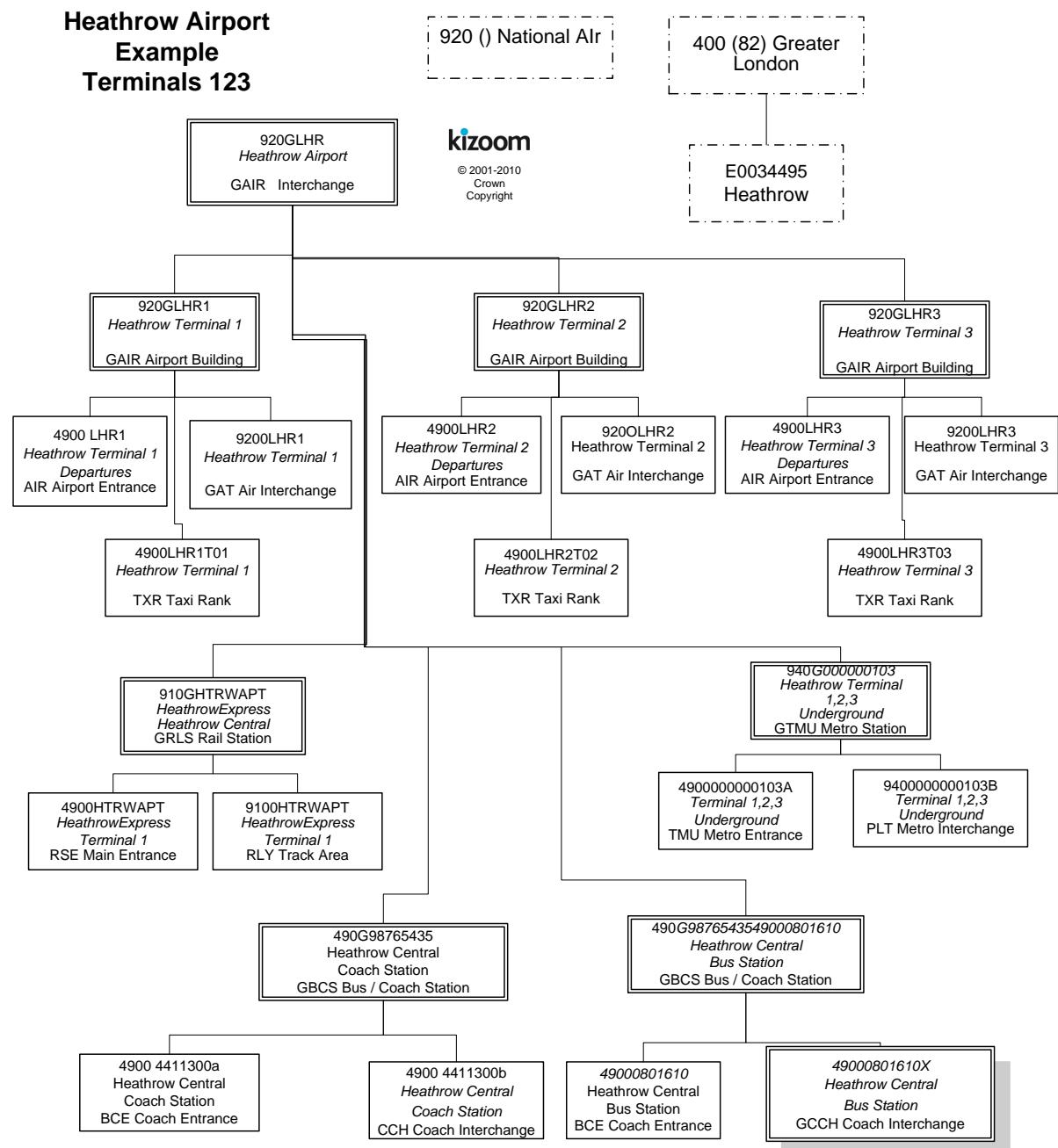
- An **NptgLocality** '*Heathrow*' to which all of the stops and stop areas can be assigned.
- Each of the four Terminals can be represented in *NaPTAN* by a **StopArea** that groups the various public entrances to each Terminal Building.
- For '*Heathrow Airport*' a '*GAIR*' group is used to group terminals 1, 2 and 3.
  - The '*Underground Station*' for '*Heathrow Terminal 123*' can be represented by a '*GTMU*' **StopArea** that groups the sub-surface entrances to the station.
  - The '*Heathrow Express Station*' for '*Heathrow Terminal 123*' can be represented by a '*GRLS*' **StopArea** that groups the sub-surface entrances to the rail station.
  - The Coach station for '*Heathrow Central*' can be represented by a '*GBCS*' **StopArea** that groups the individual bays in the coach station (adjacent to Terminal 3).
  - The Bus Station for '*Heathrow Central*' can be represented by a **StopArea** that groups the individual stops/bays in the bus station and the bus station entrances.
  - Outside each terminal there are a number of bus and coach stops used by local and rail-link buses. These are not considered part of the Terminal groupings as they are marked stops on the airport road network.
- For the '*Terminal 4*' area, a similar set of mode stop areas.
  - The '*Underground Station*' for '*Terminal 4*' can be represented by a **StopArea** that groups the sub-surface entrances to the station.
  - The '*Heathrow Express Station*' for '*Terminal 4*' can be represented by a **StopArea** that groups the sub-surface entrances to the rail station.

*Figure 9-26* and *Figure 9-27* show a partial stop hierarchy for Heathrow.

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Part III

Examples

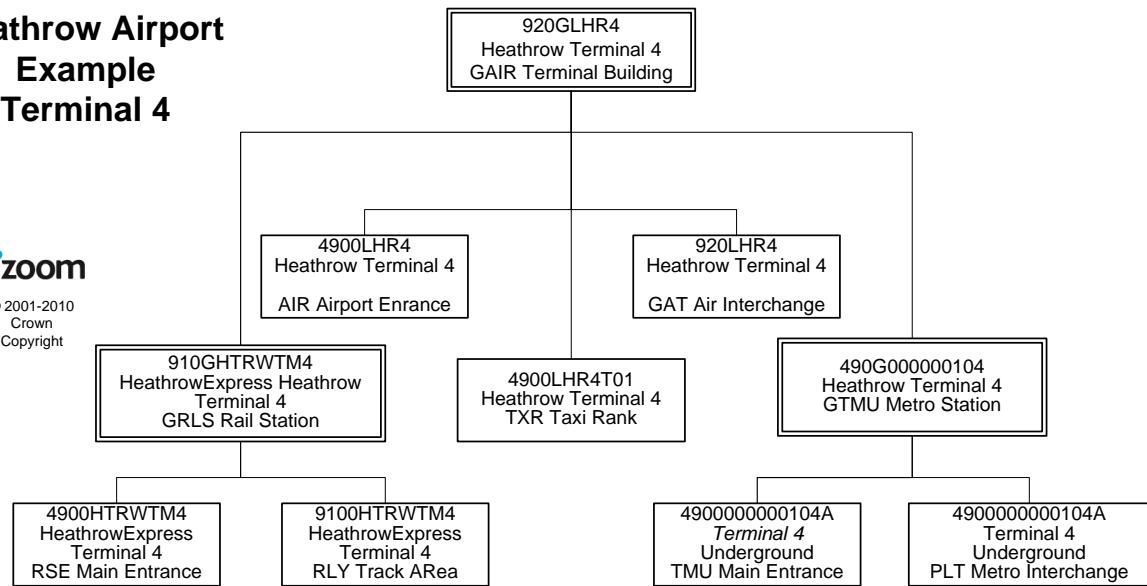


**Figure 9-26 – Example 11a: Partial Stop Hierarchy for Heathrow Airport Terminals 123**

**Heathrow Airport  
Example  
Terminal 4**

**kizoom**

© 2001-2010  
Crown  
Copyright



**Figure 9-27 – Example 11b: Partial Stop Hierarchy for Heathrow Terminal 4**

## 10 NAMING & CODING CONVENTIONS

Systematic naming conventions and a consistent coding style are used in the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* 2.x schemas; these conventions are summarised in this section.

### 10.1 Naming of Elements

*NPTG* and *NaPTAN* follow consistent principles for naming schema elements:

#### 10.1.1 Use of Camel Case

Camel case is used for all names in the XML schema:

- Upper camel case is used for elements and attributes for example **StopArea**, **HailAndRide**.
- Lower case is however used for two standard attributes: **xml:lang**, and **id**, in line with established W3C usage.
- Lower camel case is used for enumerated text values, for example '*saturdayMorning*'.
- Acronyms are treated as words for capitalisation, thus **TanCode**, not **TANCode**. This is one point where we follow common best practice but diverge from e-gif. Treating acronyms as words allows for a uniform parsing of names to derive their components, and avoids ambiguity on case of contiguous acronyms, for example **TANAPD** vs. **TanApd**, or one letter words contiguous with an acronym, for example **DialATAN** vs. **DialATan**.

#### 10.1.2 Use of Standard Name Suffixes

*NaPTAN*, *NPTG* and *NaPT* schema element, type and attribute names have been revised along consistent principles:

- All simple types end with the suffix '**Type**'.
- All complex types end with '**Structure**'.
- All enumerations end with '**Enumeration**'.
- All groups end with '**Group**'.
- Externally referenced identifiers of entities are generally suffixed with '**Code**' (and represented as elements).
- Internally referenced identifiers are generally suffixed with '**id**' (and represented as attributes).
- Elements representing references to other entities are suffixed with '**Ref**'. (These are either **Code** or **id** data types)
- Externally referenced classifiers of entities are generally suffixed with '**Classification**' (rather than say '**Type**'). For example **StopClassification**
- Externally referenced names of entities are generally suffixed with '**Name**'. If the context is readily apparent they may be called just **Name**.
- Natural Language text descriptions of entities are generally termed '**Description**'.

#### 10.1.3 Meaningful Names

Several other consistent naming principles are followed:

- Abbreviations are generally avoided – for example '**Operation**' is preferred to '**Op**'.
- A container element representing a one-to-many relationship is in the plural; for example, **StopPoints** contains one or more **StopPoint** elements.
- We avoid repeating the name of the parent element as an adjective in individual child elements, except for certain semantically important elements where it is helpful to do so. Thus for example, **Author** contains **Title**, **Position**, **Forename**, **Surname**, not **AuthorTitle**, **AuthorPosition**, **AuthorName**, **AuthorSurname**. An exception to this rule is for **Code** elements, for example **Area / AreaCode** and not **Area / Code**.
- We avoid the use in domain elements names of terms that have strong software connotations:
  - The suffixes '**Type**' and '**Group**' are avoided in element names except for internal schema elements.

#### 10.1.4 Standardised Terminology

An attempt has been made to use the appropriate Transmodel term wherever appropriate. For example **StopPoint** rather than **Stop**, **StopArea** rather than **StopGroup**,

#### 10.1.5 Semantically Significant Order

Several principles are used to order subelements at any given level:

- When declaring elements within a parent, subelements are placed in a consistent general order according to the nature of their role as follows:
  - a. Elements that identify the entity, such as codes or numbers.
  - b. Elements that describe the element in text, such as names or descriptions.
  - c. Principle associations of the entity with other entities.
  - d. Elements that classify the entity.
  - e. Elements describing other properties of the entity.
- Where there is an inherent temporal order, elements are placed in temporal sequence, for example '**StartDate**' before '**EndDate**'.

### 10.2 Typing of Elements

Some general principles are used for typing values.

- Explicit, specific types are used wherever possible, for example **Duration**:
- Complex types are declared for all significant compound elements.
- Internally referenced identifiers are generally of type NMTOKEN, or an extension.
- Elements whose content is a text string in a national language are of type **NaturalLanguageStringStructure**.

### 10.3 Element Constraints

Some general principles are used for constraining values.

- *Mandatory Elements are normally populated.* XML constraints are usually specified to ensure mandatory elements are populated, for example strings should contain at least one character.
- *Optional elements not empty:* Where alternative structures are available, the absence of an element is not relied upon to infer meaning. Instead an empty element or attribute value is used to make the condition explicit, or there is a default value defined that can be assumed. This principle has been generally followed for new and remodelled features.

### 10.4 Use of Attributes

In *NPTG and NaPTAN*, XML element attributes are generally used only for metadata, that is, data about data, such as data version tracking, to identify the data reference systems used, or to provide internal instance identifiers. Table 10-1 summarises the attributes used in *NPTG and NaPTAN*.

Group	Element	Attribute	ver
Document Version	<i>NaPTAN, NPTG, NptgDiscovery</i> root elements.	<i>CreationDateTime</i>	2.0
		<i>ModificationDateTime</i>	1.2
		<i>FileName</i>	2.0
		<i>Modification</i>	2.0
		<i>RevisionNumber</i>	2.0
		<i>SchemaVersion</i>	1.2
		<i>ChangesSince</i>	2.4
Entity Version	<i>StopPoint, StopArea, Network, TariffZone</i>  <i>NptgL locality, NptgDistrict, Region, AdministrativeArea, CallCentre, WebApplication</i>	<i>CreationDateTime</i>	2.0
		<i>ModificationDateTime</i>	1.2
		<i>FileName</i>	2.0
		<i>Modification</i>	2.0
		<i>Status</i>	1.2
		<i>RevisionNumber</i>	2.0

<i>dataRights</i>	All of the above	<i>DataRightRef</i>	2.4
<i>Id</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Id</i>	1.2
<i>Data</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Precision</i>	1.2
	<i>NaPTAN, NPTG</i>	<i>LocationSystem</i>	2.0
<i>Language</i>	Text elements: <i>Name, Description</i> , etc. See section on National Language Support	<i>xml:lang</i>	2.0

**Table 10-1 – NaPTAN Attributes**

## 10.5 Implementation of Model Relationships

In *NPTG* and *NaPTAN*, some stylistic conventions are used to make clear the mapping of the reference model relationships into the XML schema.

- All significant entities have a uniquely scoped identifier (always an element named **xxxCode** or **xxxNumber**, or an **id** attribute).
- Relationships are implemented by placing a reference to the identifier as a foreign key on the referencing element (shown by the navigability arrow in UML diagrams). The reference has the form **xxxRef**. For example, **StopPoint** is identified by an **AtcoCode**, and is referenced in relationships by a **StopPointRef**.
- Container elements are generally used for significant one-to-many relationships, with a name derived from the plural name of the contained or referenced element, for example:
  - To implement the aggregation relation of stops within NaPTAN, the **StopPoints** element contains a collection of **StopPoint** instances.
  - To implement the reference relationship of alternative localities from **StopPoint** to The **StopPoint /AlternativeLocalities** container element contains a collection of **NptgLocalityRef** instances.

## 10.6 Data Rights attribute

A new attribute **DataRightRef** is added in release 2.4 This allows each entity to be associated with a data right element to specify IPR & conditions of use. This is for use with the TransXChange 2.4 Schema – see the 2.4 Schema guide.

## 11 VERSIONING

*NPTG and NaPTAN* schemas and documents are versioned so as to manage change in a distributed computational environment, and in particular to allow inter-operability of concurrent versions at different levels.

### 11.1 Version Numbering Convention

*NPTG and NaPTAN* schemas follow the e-Gif convention for version numbering.

- *Released* schema Version numbers have the form *n.m*, (e.g. 3.1).
- Drafts have the form *n.mx* (e.g. 3.1a).
- The main version number (*n*) will be incremented when the change from the previous version of the schema will cause existing documents to fail to validate. For example if a new mandatory element is added.
- The minor version number (*m*) will be incremented when the change to the schema will allow existing documents to continue to validate. However some new documents may fail to validate against the old version (for example, if a new optional element is added).
- The draft version number (*x*) indicates that the version is still under discussion and may be subject to further changes. Generally it will be incremented to indicate a material change to a previous release or previous draft. Intermediate drafts will usually be withdrawn once they are superseded.

### 11.2 Resource Versions

#### 11.2.1 Schema URI version

In line with W3C practice, a separate directory and URL will be used for each version of the schema; the schema name will remain the same.

For example:

<http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.1/NaPTAN.xsd>  
<http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.1/NPTG.xsd>  
[http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.1/NPTG\\_Discovery.xsd](http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.1/NPTG_Discovery.xsd)

And:

<http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.4/NaPTAN.xsd>  
<http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.4/NPTG.xsd>  
[http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.4/NPTG\\_Discovery.xsd](http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.4/NPTG_Discovery.xsd)

Different versions of the *NaPTAN* schema will coexist at the same time. Older versions will be deprecated and then be dropped altogether after a period.

#### 11.2.2 Namespace URI version

The following unversioned URI will be used for the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* namespace. This is in line with the e-GIF mandate that namespace URI must not be versioned.

<http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/>

#### 11.2.3 Schema Version

In each XML instance document conforming to *NaPTAN* or *NPTG*, the root element (i.e. **NaPTAN** and **NationalPublicTransportGazetteer**) has a **SchemaVersion** attribute that is populated to indicate the schema version, as recommended by e-GIF. This allows any application which processes the document to decide how to handle the document. See *Table 11-1*. A standard set of metadata attributes to track the document is also included:

Attributes	Value
<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date and Time stamp
<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date and Time stamp
<b>Modification</b>	Nature of modification: one of new, delete, revise
<b>ModificationNumber</b>	Sequentially incrementing number
<b>SchemaVersion</b>	Schema Version number

**Table 11-1 – NPTG and NaPTAN Document Version Attributes**

#### 11.2.4 Package Versions

*NPTG* and *NaPTAN* embed a number of common type definition packages that are shared with other UK standards. For convenience, a separate copy of the common packages is distributed with each standard. The individual package files are given version numbers in line with the e-GIF system in order to ensure the correct version is used. This number is only incremented if the package changes and so may vary from package to package and be different from the overall schema number. For example, for the shared NaPT stop definition types file might be called *NaPT\_stop-v1-0.xsd*. It is distributed in *NaPTAN* 2.1 as:

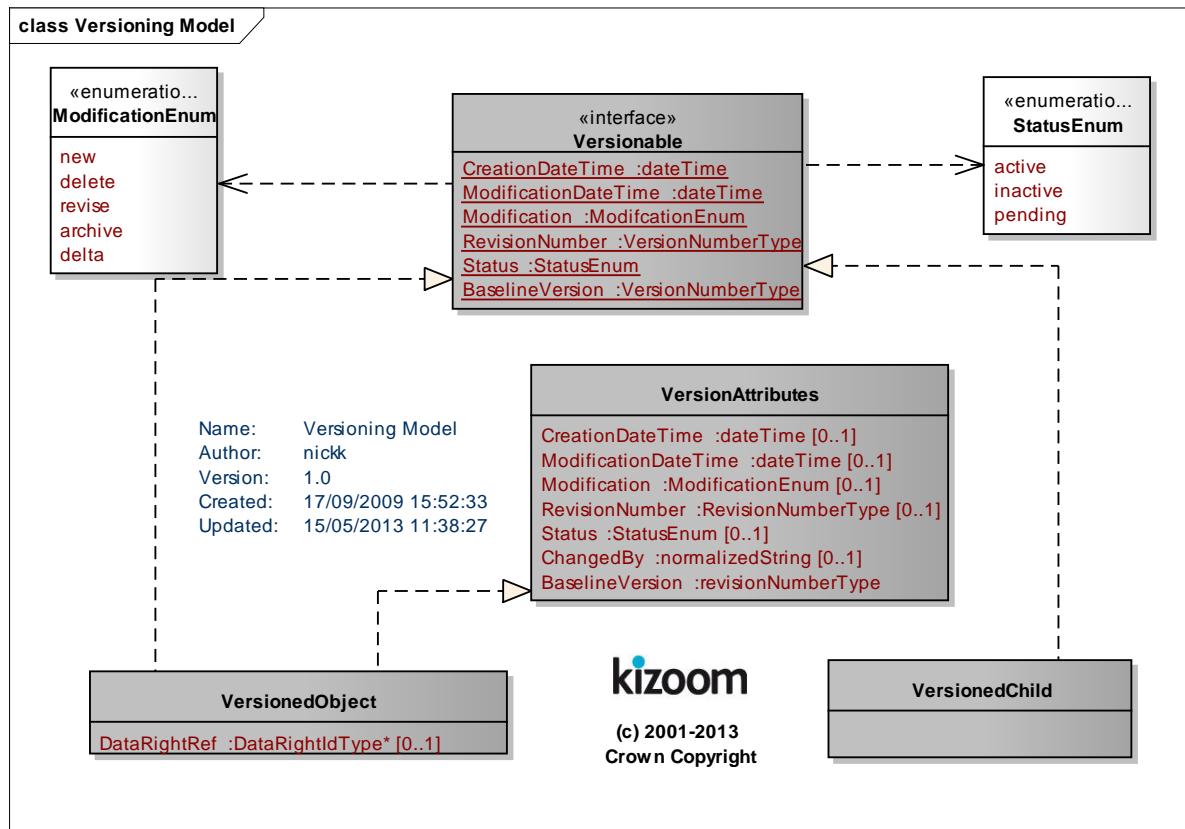
- [http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.1/napt/NaPT\\_stop-v2-0.xsd](http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.1/napt/NaPT_stop-v2-0.xsd)

And if updated in *NaPTAN* 2.4 as:

- [http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.4/napt/NaPT\\_stop-v2-1.xsd](http://www.naptan.org.uk/schemas/2.4/napt/NaPT_stop-v2-1.xsd)

#### 11.2.5 Data Element Version

Data element versioning indicates the version level of the content of a particular individual item of data. See *Figure 11-1*.



**Figure 11-1 – UML Model of Element Versions**

Most significant entities in *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* have optional change attributes on them including a modification date and revision number that can be used to specify their data version level. See *Table 11-2*.

Change Attributes	Type	Use	Inroduced
<b>Creation-DateTime</b>	Date and Time stamp in ISO format.	Should be set when the entity is first created, and not subsequently be changed.	2.0
<b>Modification-DateTime</b>	Date and Time stamp in ISO format	Should be changed every time an entity is changed, that is when any of its immediate attributes or any of its child entities are changed. May be omitted if <b>Modification is new</b> , i.e. if same as <b>CreationDateTime</b> otherwise must be specified.	1.2
<b>Modification</b>	Nature of modification: one of new, delete, revise, archive	The <b>Modification</b> status should be set as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>New - If this is the first version of the element instance, created for the first time. An entity continues to have a status of new until it is revised. The creation date can be used to detect a recent addition.</li> <li>Revise - If an existing element instance is being updated, or any of its child elements that are not themselves versioned are being updated, added, or deleted. Once an element is marked as revise it will continue to be so unless it is marked as deleted, i.e. should not ever revert to new. If no value is specified, revise will be assumed.</li> <li>Delete - If the element is being rendered inactive. Records marked as deleted should continue to be exported in subsequent data exchanges. It is possible to reactivate deleted stops: a reactivated stop has a status of revise, (not new).</li> <li>Archive - If the element is archived. It will be held in the central database and the NaPTAN identifiers reserved (Both AtcoCode and NaptanCode), but will be excluded from exports.</li> </ul>	2.0

<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Sequentially incrementing number	The <b>RevisionNumber</b> an instance should be incremented (and its <b>Modification</b> value set to 'revised'), if any of its element values, attribute values or contained values are modified by the Originating system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New entities should have a revision number of 0.</li> <li>• Only the Issuer should increment this number</li> </ul> The <b>RevisionNumber</b> of an instance should not be changed if there is no change to the data values or children of an element.	2.0
<b>Status</b>	Active   Inactive   Pending.	Indicates whether after the modification the element will be considered active, inactive, or pending, (i.e. inactive subject to verification) Stops and Stop Areas are not deleted from the NaPTAN database; instead they are given a status of inactive - see Data Deprecation.	1.2, 2.0

**Table 11-2 – Entity Change Tracking & Status Attributes**

#### 11.2.6 Use of the Status Attribute

##### 11.2.6.1 Data Deprecation

As a general principle, *referenced entities such as localities, stop points and stop areas will not be deleted from the NPTG and NaPTAN databases, merely deprecated*. This will uphold the referential integrity of systems that use the data.

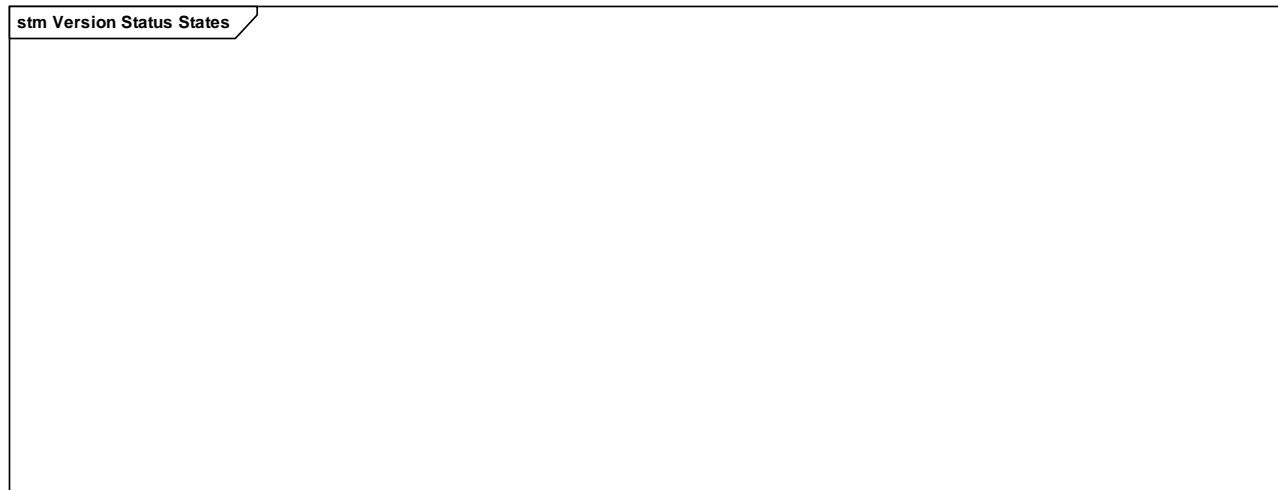
**StopPoint** and **StopArea** instances in the NaPTAN database may have one of three states, as indicated by the **Status** attribute:

- 'Active': Stop is either in use or available to be used.
- 'Inactive': Stop is in database but is marked as '*inactive*' and is not currently in use or available for use. If the **StopAvailability** (see 6.9) has been used to transfer or suspend the stop for the period within which the data is published, the status of the stop must be 'active'. This represents a change of interpretation with release 2.4 – and ensures that stops remain available for Bus Service Registration and other purposes whilst it is temporarily suspended or transferred.
- 'Pending' delete: Stop is missing, or flagged as deleted from the most recent data upload, and may be in process of being made inactive. Will continue to be exported as if 'active' until status is clarified.

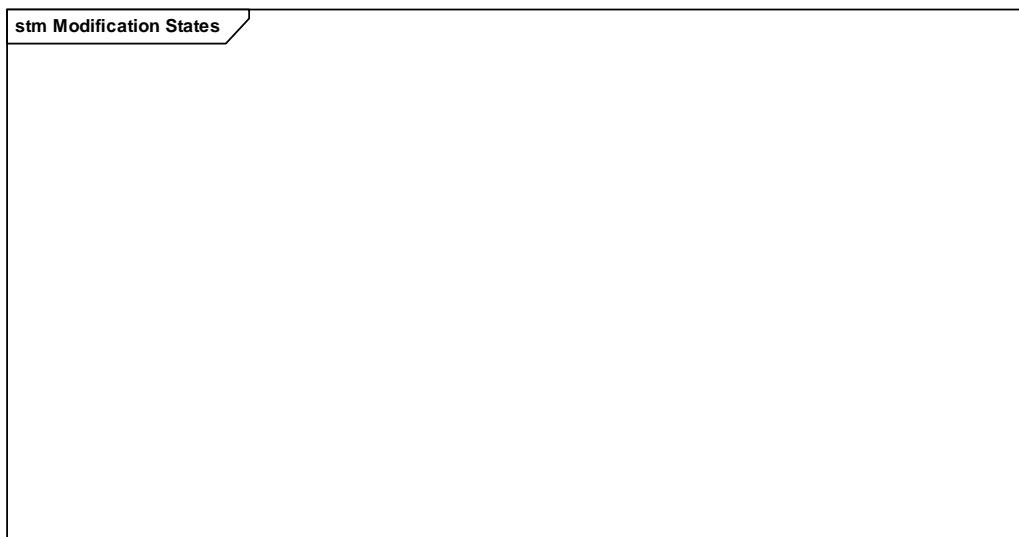
However for practical reasons very old and unused stop data may occasionally be archived once it has been ascertained that it is no longer referenced by any currently active system (there may still be legacy data references). This may happen in particular for example where an entire area is assigned to a different code. See **Modification** element. Archive data will be omitted from the export. Archived stop identifiers will not be recycled.

Figure 11-2 and Figure 11-3 show the processing states for NaPTAN elements. Note that there are cross-constraints between the two states.

- An *active* element may have a **Modification** attribute value only of *new* or *revise*.
- Only an *inactive* element may have a **Modification** attribute value of *delete* or *archive*.



**Figure 11-2 – Status element: State Transitions**



**Figure 11-3 – Modification element State Transitions**

#### 11.2.6.2 Interaction of Status with References to elements

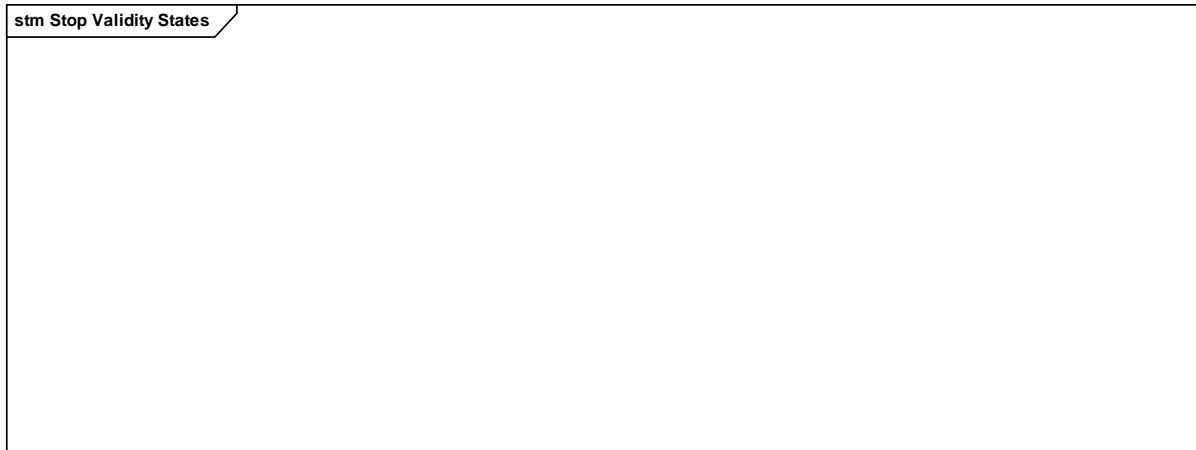
Where an association is used to link two elements (for example for a **StopPoint's StopArea**, **AdministrativeArea**, or **PlusbusZone**), the associated entity should be '*active*' at the time the association is created. If the associated entity is subsequently made '*inactive*', the association (if not explicitly removed as well) is also considered to be '*inactive*' and may be ignored.

#### 11.2.6.3 Interaction of Status with StopValidity

The **Modification** and **Status** elements are general change management attributes found on all elements. The **StopValidity** element is an additional status element found only on **StopPoint** elements.

A stop may also have a **StopValidity** of *Active*, *Suspended*, or *Transferred* as specified by the StopValidity that applies at the period specified for the individual **StopValidity**. The **StopValidity** states and transitions are shown in Figure 11-4.

The **StopValidity** is independent of the 'Status' attribute - though normally it is only useful to specify a StopValidity for an active stop. (Note that TXC v 2.4 revises the interpretation of the interaction with Status – previous to TXC v2.4 the status was required to match the **StopValidity** at the time of export).



**Figure 11-4 – StopValidity State Transitions**

#### 11.2.6.4 Elements Which can be change tracked

The NaPTAN and NPTG entities which can be change tracked are shown in *Table 11-3*. For some of these a creation date must always be given (indicated by an 'R'); for others, all the modification attributes are optional in the schema.

	Entity	Type	Versioning	Creation date
<b>NaPTAN</b>	<b>NaPTAN</b>	Root	SchemaVersion.	R
<b>NPTG</b>	<b>NationalPublicTransportGazetteer</b>	Root	SchemaVersion.	R
<b>NaPTAN</b>	<i>StopPoint</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes + Status	R
	<i>StopArea</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes + Status.	R
	<i>StopPoint / AlternativeDescriptor</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	R
	<i>StopPoint / StopAreaRef</i>	Ref	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / PlusbusRef</i>	Ref	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / AlternativeNptgLocalityRef</i>	Ref	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / MainStopForNptgLocalityRef</i>	Ref	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / HailAndRide</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / FlexibleZone</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / Marked</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / Unmarked</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / StopValidity</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / AnnotatedAirRef</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / AnnotatedFerryRef</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / AnnotatedMetroRef</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / AnnotatedRailRef</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / AnnotatedCoachRef</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / StopAccessibility</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<i>StopPoint / TarrifZoneRef</i>	Child	Change Attributes.	O
	<b>Network</b>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes + Status	R
	<b>TariffZone</b>	Child	Change Attributes + Status	R

	<i>Region</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>R</b>
	<i>AdministrativeArea</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>R</b>
	<i>NptgLocality</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>R</b>
	<i>NptgLocality / ParentLocalityRef</i>	<b>Ref</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>NptgLocality / AlternativeDescriptor</i>	<b>Child</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>NptgLocality / AdjacentLocalityRef</i>	<b>Ref</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>AdministrativeArea / NptgDistrict</i>	<b>Ent</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
<b>NPTG</b> <b>Discovery</b>	<i>CallCentre</i>	<b>Ent</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>WebApplication</i>	<b>Ent</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>WebApplication / RegionRef</i>	<b>Ref</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>WebApplication / AdminAreaRef</i>	<b>Ref</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>WebApplication / NptgLocalityRef</i>	<b>Ref</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>WebApplication / StopPointRef</i>	<b>Ref</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>TrustedServer</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>AdjacentRegion (ExchangePoint)</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>
	<i>TrunkLocality</i>	<b>Entity</b>	Change Attributes.	<b>O</b>

**Table 11-3 – Tracked Data Elements**

#### 11.2.6.5 Schema Enforcement of Required Change Attributes

In the NaPTAN schema the attributes are defined by two different attribute groups, as shown in *Table 11-3* above. For elements indicated by an ‘R’ in *Table 11-3*, a **CreationDateTime** is required, for the other entities a **CreationDateTime** is optional. If a **CreationDateTime** is not present, it is assumed to be the same as for the parent. *Table 11-4* summarises

Change Attributes	Entity	Other
<b>CreationDateTime</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>O</b>
<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>O</b>
<b>Modification</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>O</b>
<b>RevisionNumber</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>O</b>
<b>Status</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>O</b>

**Table 11-4 – Change Attribute Groups**

As a general principle, *referenced entities such as localities, stop points and stop areas will not be deleted from the NPTG and NaPTAN databases, merely deprecated*. **StopPoint** and **StopArea** instances in the NaPTAN database may have one of three states, as indicated by the **Status** attribute:

#### 11.2.7 Detecting Changes on Different systems - The NaPTAN Distributed Data process

The NaPTAN workflow is a distributed collaborative process: data is originated on different systems then merged and propagated to other systems. As a result different version of data be extant on different systems at the same time. Furthermore in some circumstances changes to the same data may be made in parallel on separate systems which then subsequently need reconciling.

The main NaPTAN data process typically involves three participant roles: (i) **Data Originator** (PTEs, Local Authorities and other organisations acting as Administrative Areas); (ii) **Data Distributor** (Landmark Information Group & NaPTAN Database) and; (iii) **Data Consumer** (Journey Planners and other systems).

- Data Origination is carried out by a large number of stakeholders, who collect and maintain stop data and then publish and submit it to the Distributor.
- Data Distribution is carried out as a central service by Landmark Information Group. The Distributor may augment the data, for example translating coordinates. The distributor republishes the data to send it to consumers.
- Data Consumption involves downloading the data from NaPTAN.

The roles of Originator and Consumer can be combined - thus an organisation may update its own data set with data returned by the distributor. When communicating sets of stop data, it is also possible for the central distribution step to be bypassed – for example an Originator may give a set of stop data directly to a Data Consumer, or a TransXChange Schema containing embedded NaPTAN data.

In the normal processing cycle for NaPTAN data, stop data is gathered and edited on a system of the Originating organisation, then exported to the central database as a NaPTAN document where it is integrated and then redistributed as a new NaPTAN document, both to the Originator and to other organisations. The submitting system (or indeed any other consumer of NaPTAN data) therefore may wish to have an efficient way of determining whether any of the returning data elements have changed - and so are in need of reconciliation with other changes that have been made locally on it in the meantime since the last export.

The change attributes allow the importing system to determine whether an element has changed without needing to compare the many individual attributes and children of an individual element instance.

The **modificationDateTime**, together with the **revisionNumber** provides an effective indication that a change has occurred.

- Whenever *the Originator* of the data changes a value of an element, it should update the **modificationDateTime** and the **revisionNumber** of that element.
- Whenever a participant *other than the Originator* changes a value of an element, it should update the **modificationDateTime** but *not* the **RevisionNumber** of that element.

#### 11.2.7.1 Detecting Change when re-importing to an Originating System

An *Originating* system re-importing data may therefore deduce the following:

- If the **revisionNumber** for an element instance is lower, (it should never be higher) than the values in the importing system, the data is an earlier instance and can be ignored.
- If the **revisionNumber** and the **modificationDateTime** for an element instance are *the same* as the values the importing system holds, the content should already be the same and no reconciliation is needed.
- If the **revisionNumber** is the same as the value the importing system holds but the *ModificationDateTime* is different, the data has been augmented or modified by another system: the detailed differences for that element can be examined on a value by value basis and accepted or rejected.

#### 11.2.7.2 Detecting Change when re-importing to an another System

Any other (i.e. non-originating) Distributor or Consumer system importing data may deduce the following:

- If the **revisionNumber** for an element instance is *lower* than the value in the importing system, the data is an earlier instance and can be ignored.
- If the **revisionNumber** for an element instance is *higher* than the value in the importing system, the data is a later instance and should be used to update the consumer's content. (Note that this policy assumes that any other intervening third party changes should be discarded in favour of the new official version – other more elaborate reconciliation policies could be used if the application wishes).
- If the **revisionNumber** and the **modificationDateTime** for an element instance are *the same* as the values the importing system holds, the system's data is already current and no reconciliation is needed.
- If the **revisionNumber** is *the same* as the value the importing system holds, but the **modificationDateTime** is *different*, the data has been augmented or modified by another system: the differences can be examined on a value by value basis and accepted or rejected.

#### 11.2.7.3 Edge cases not currently covered

We note that the above scheme should be adequate for current NaPTAN workflow, but it is not completely foolproof: if two intermediate (i.e. non Originating systems) happened to make different changes to the same element instance of a given **revisionNumber** at exactly the same **modificationDateTime**, a consuming system that assumed equivalence between subsequent imports would be in error.

#### 11.2.8 Summary of Use of Data Version Attributes

The set of principles to follow in using the change attributes is summarised in Table 11-5.

	<b>Principle</b>
1	The <b>CreationDateTime</b> of a data instance must be set by the Issuer (i.e. Originating Administrative Area) when an element is created and never subsequently be altered.
2	The <b>RevisionNumber</b> of a data instance is set only by the issuer, i.e. originating Administrative Area. It should be set to zero for a new instance and be incremented serially for subsequent updates.
3	The <b>RevisionNumber</b> of a data instance is only incremented monotonically (i.e. upwards by one or more at a time)
4	The <b>RevisionNumber</b> and <b>ModificationDateTime</b> of a data instance must be changed every time a data value of an element instance is changed by an Issuer i.e. Originating Administrative Area.
5	The <b>ModificationDateTime</b> (but not the <b>RevisionNumber</b> ) must be changed to the current timestamp every time a data value is changed by a party other than an Issuer (e.g. the data aggregator when correcting default values). The current <b>ModificationDateTime</b> number should be shown every time the data is published.
6	If a child element instance is marked as changed, <i>its parent must also be marked as changed</i> .
7	If a child element instance is added, it should be marked as new, and its parent must also be marked as changed.
8	If the values of an element instance have <i>not</i> changed, its <b>RevisionNumber</b> and <b>ModificationDateTime</b> must <i>not</i> be changed.
9	The <b>ModificationDateTime</b> must be later than the <b>CreationDateTime</b> . The <b>ModificationDateTime</b> associated with a higher <b>RevisionNumber</b> must be later than that of any earlier revision number for the same element instance.
10	In a NaPTAN or NPTG document, the root instance should be treated as a parent of all other instances: if the child instances have been altered or added since the last export, the <b>RevisionNumber</b> and <b>ModificationDateTime</b> on the root instance should reflect the change.
11	Provided the above are followed, the <b>RevisionNumber + ModificationDateTime</b> can be used together to compare any two versions of an element instance for difference. If they are both identical then their contents will be the same.
12	In order to avoid loss or corruption of change attribute data, data submitted by the issuer (i.e. Originating Administrative Area) should be in NaPTAN v2.x format.
13	The <b>Modification</b> attribute value of newly created elements should be <i>new</i> . The value of modified elements should be <i>revise</i> . The value of deleted elements should be <i>delete</i> . The value of archived elements should be <i>archive</i> .

**Table 11-5 – Data Element Change Versioning Principles.**

#### 11.2.9 Referential Integrity of references

In order to serialise NaPTAN data for exchange in an XML file, associations between different entities are output as references. For example, if a **StopPoint** is in a **StopArea**, it will have a **StopAreaRef** instance referencing the identifier of that **StopArea**. Each reference has individual change attributes, allowing each association instance to be individually change-tracked and/or be marked as inactive. If either the referenced or referencing entity is marked as inactive, then the associations also become inactive:

1. If a *parent element containing outward references* is marked as inactive, then its outward references are also considered inactive - and should also be marked as inactive. . For example, if a **StopPoint** is marked as inactive, then all of its child **StopAreaRef** instances should be considered as inactive.
2. If the *referenced element* is marked as inactive, then any references to it should also be treated as inactive. For example, if a **StopArea** is marked as inactive, then any

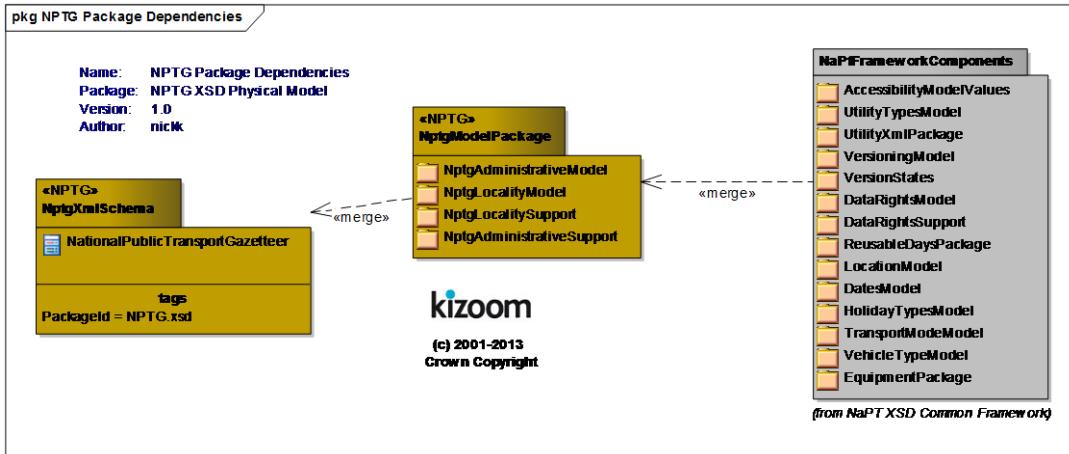
**StopAreaRef** held in another StopPoint should be considered as inactive, even if they have not been explicitly marked as such.

An application that holds a NaPTAN data set in a model may choose either to cascade inactivation changes automatically, or to prevent deletion until they have been done

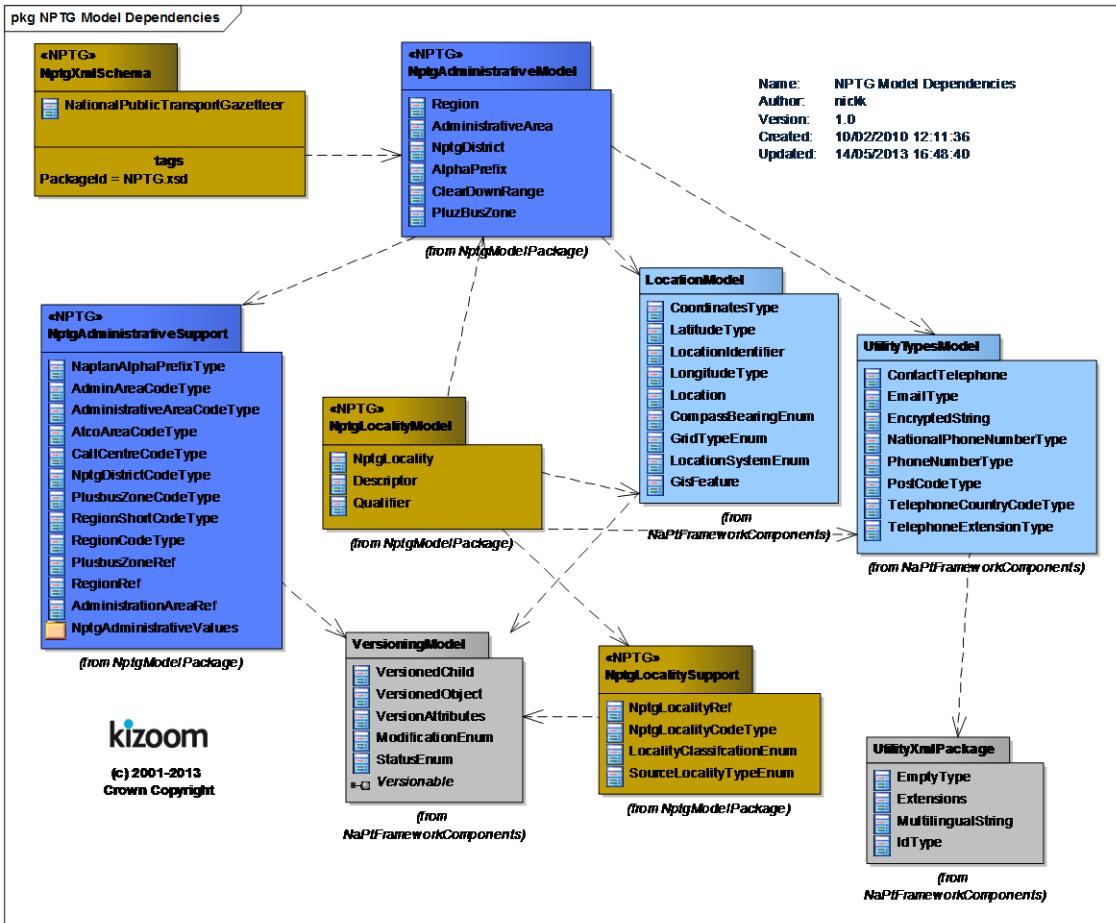
### 11.3 Packages

The *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* schemas are modularised into a number of packages, with a strict linear dependency. See *Figure 11-5* to *Figure 11-6*.

#### 11.3.1 NPTG Package & Model Dependencies



**Figure 11-5 – NPTG Packages**



**Figure 11-6 – NPTG Models**

### 11.3.2 NPTG Discovery Package & Model Dependencies

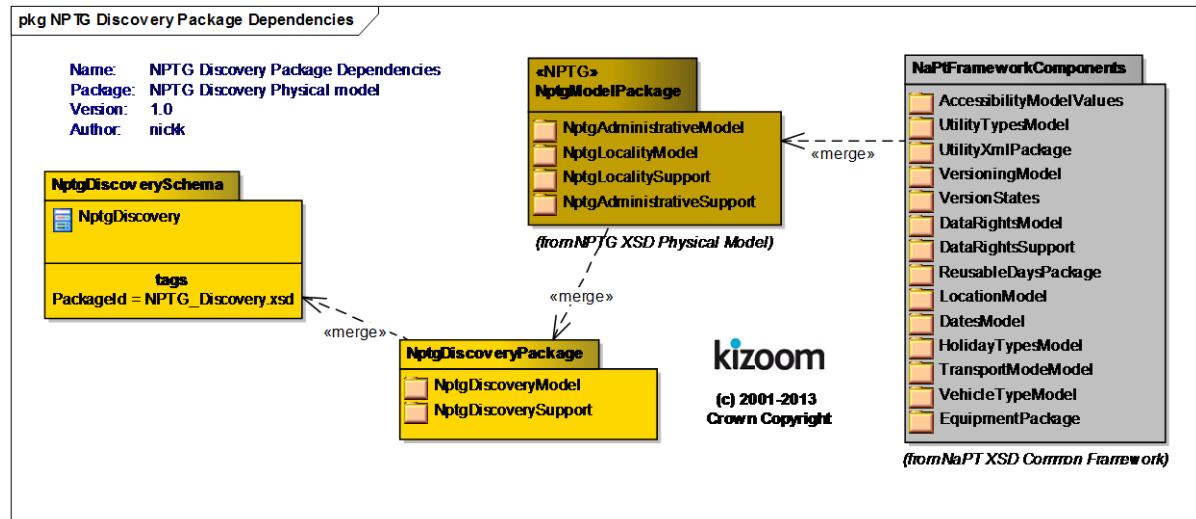
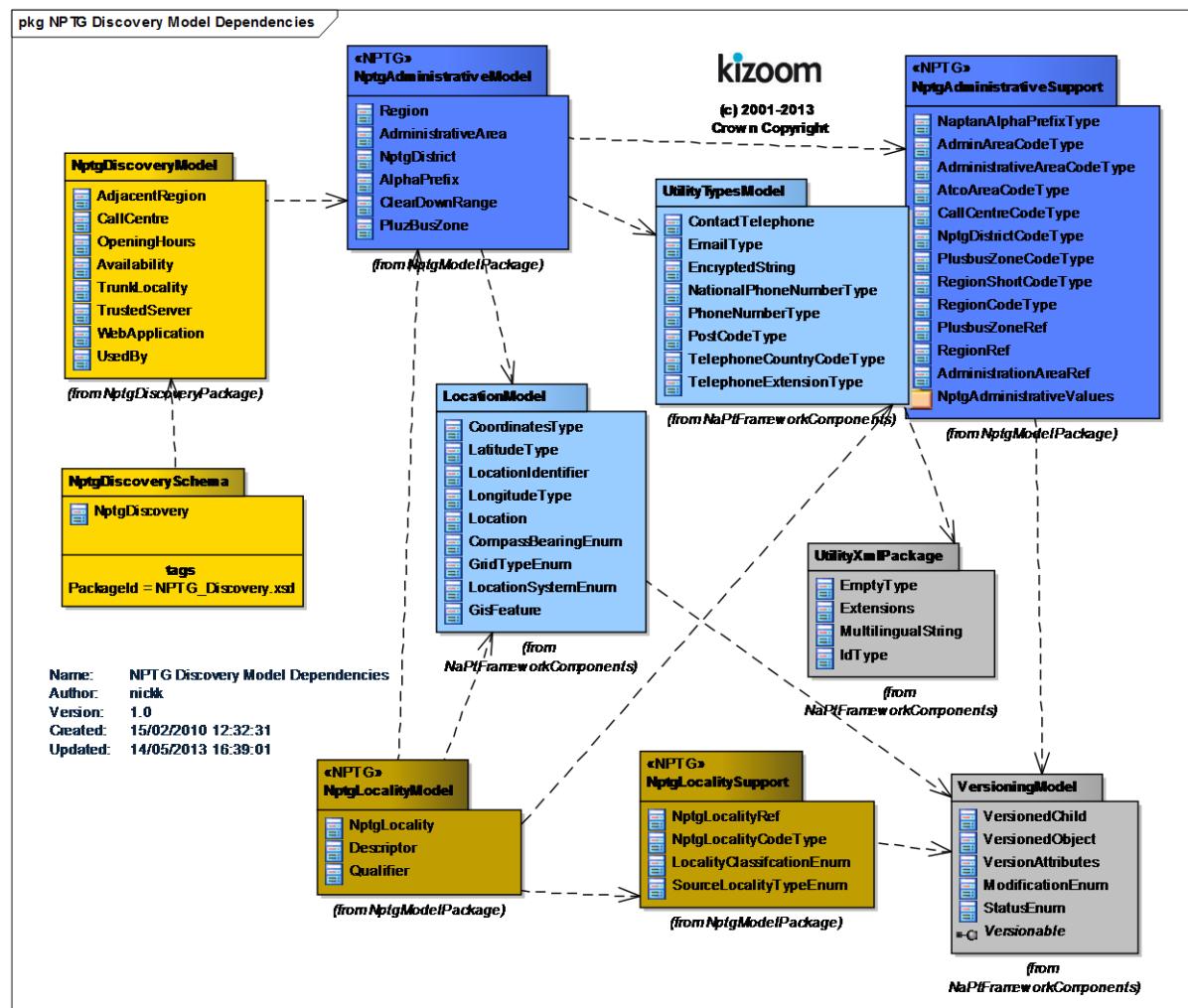


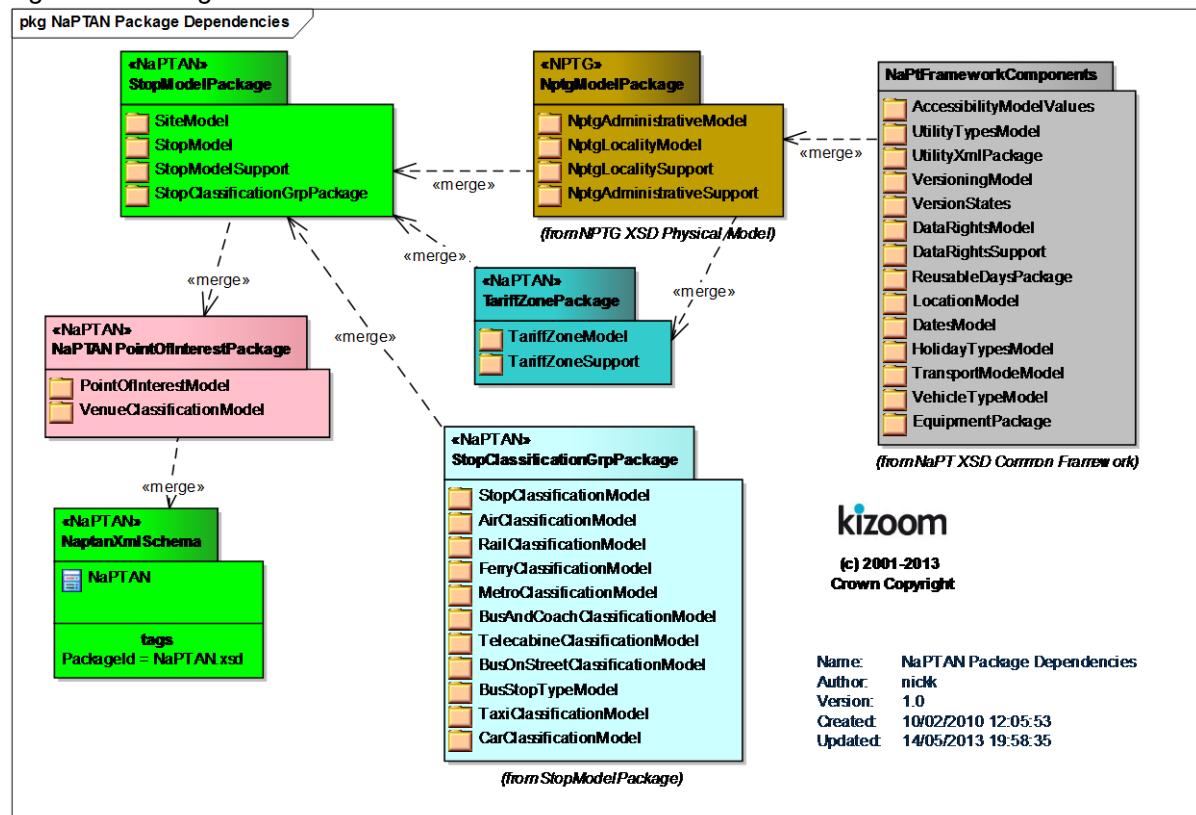
Figure 11-7 – NPTG Discovery Packages



**Figure 11-8 – NPTG Discovery Models**

### 11.3.3 NaPTAN Package & Model Dependencies

The NaPTAN schema is modularised into a number of packages, with a strict linear dependency. See *Figure 11-9 & Figure 11-10*.



**Figure 11-9 – NaPTAN Packages**

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

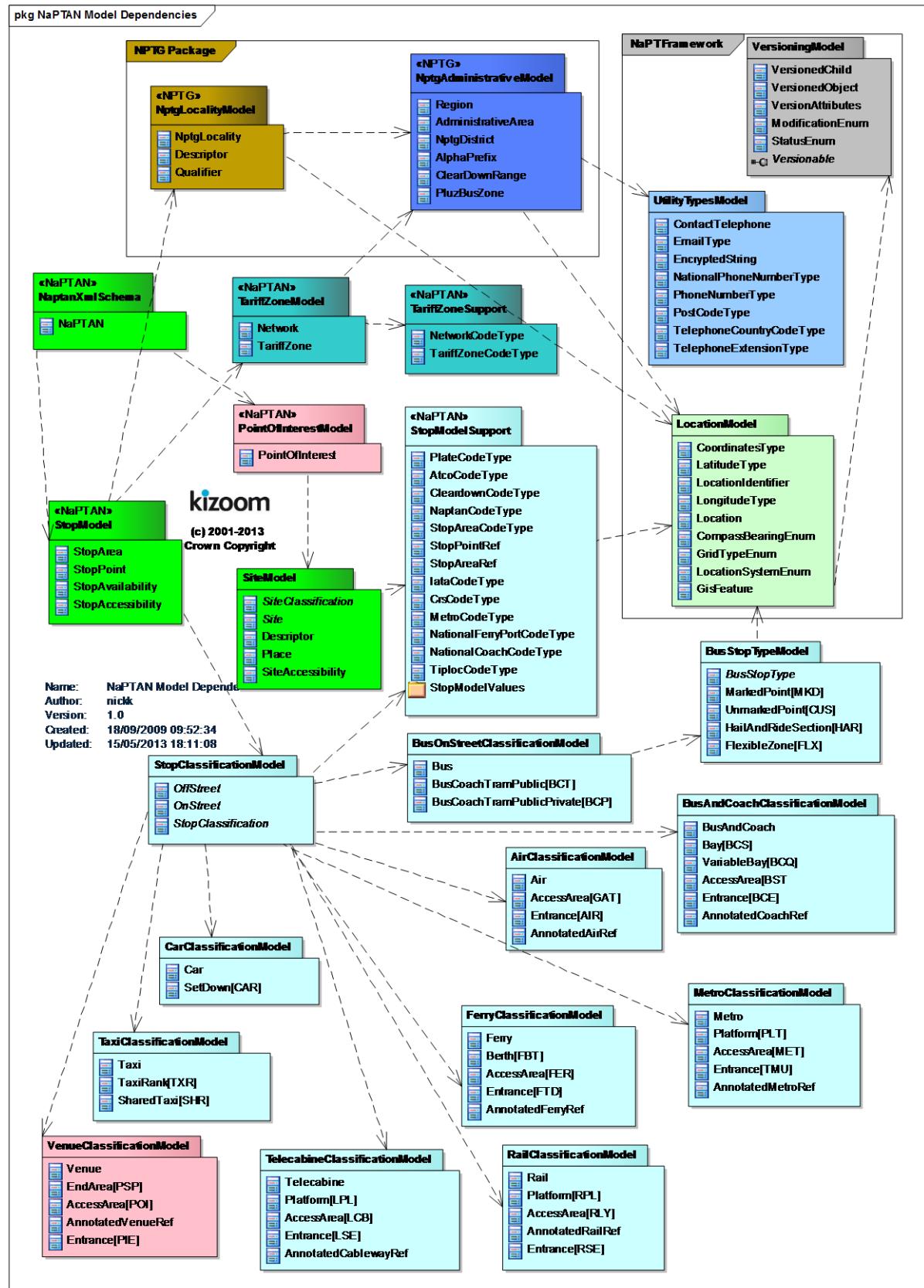


Figure 11-10 – NaPTAN Model Dependencies

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

The schemas are organised according to package group (see *Table 11-6*). NPTG and NaPTAN schemas are placed in the root folder; prerequisite shared schemas are placed in subfolders (\apd and \napt).

	<b>folder</b>	<b>Schemas</b>	<b>Contents</b>	
<b>NaPTAN</b>	root	<b>NaPTAN.xsd</b>	Terminal schema for NaPTAN.	Renamed in 2.0.
<b>NPTG</b>	root	<b>NPTG.xsd</b>	Terminal schema for NPTG use.	New in 2.0.
<b>NPTG Discovery</b>	root	<b>NPTG_discovery.xsd</b>	Terminal schema for NPTG discovery use.	New in 2.0.
<b>NPTG</b>	\nptg	<b>NaPT_administrative_support-vN.N.xsd</b>	Base data types for NPTG administration model	Modularised in 2.4
	\nptg	<b>NaPT_administrative -vN.N.xsd</b>	NPTG administrative model	Modularised in 2.4
	\nptg	<b>NaPT_locality_support-vN.N.xsd</b>	Base data types for NPTG locality model	Modularised in 2.4
	\nptg	<b>NaPT_locality -vN.N.xsd</b>	NPTG locality model	Modularised in 2.4
	\nptg	<b>NaPT_discovery_adjacentPoints-vN.N.xsd</b>	NPTG discovery adjacent region model	Modularised in 2.4
	\nptg	<b>NaPT_discovery_applications-vN.N.xsd</b>	NPTG discovery application model	Modularised in 2.4
<b>NaPT</b>	\napt	<b>NaPT_accessibility-vN.N.xsd</b>	Stop accessibility types.	New in 2.5
	\napt	<b>NaPT_dates-vN.N.xsd</b>	Date and time period type declarations shared with other NaPT schema.	New in 2.0.
	\napt	<b>NaPT_dayTypes-vN.N.xsd</b>	Common day types shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
	\napt	<b>NaPT_location-vN.N.xsd</b>	Geographic type declarations shared with other NaPT schema.	New in 2.0.
	\napt	<b>NaPT_modes-vN.N.xsd</b>	Vehicle mode type declarations shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
	\napt	<b>NaPT_operator_support-vN.N.xsd</b>	Vehicle mode type declarations shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
	\napt	<b>NaPT_stopAccessibility-vN.N.xsd</b>	Stop accessibility definitions	New in 2.5
	\napt	<b>NaPT_utility_types-vN.N.xsd</b>	Low level application Type declarations shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
	\napt	<b>NaPT_utility_xml-vN.N.xsd</b>	Common low level xml types shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
	\napt	<b>NaPT_versioningAttributes-vN.N.xsd</b>	Common versioning types shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
<b>NaPTAN</b>	\napt	<b>NaPT_stop-vN.N.xsd</b>	NaPTAN Stop model shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
	\napt	<b>NaPT_stopArea-vN.N.xsd</b>	NaPTAN Stop Area model shared with other NaPT schema.	Modularised in 2.4
	\napt	<b>NaPT_tariffZone-vN.N.xsd</b>	NaPTAN TariffZone model shared with other NaPT schema.	New in 2.5
<b>Apd (Govtalk)</b>	\apd	<b>AddressTypes-v1-3.xsd</b>	UK address types.	Referenced in 2.0
	\apd	<b>CommonSimpleTypes.xsd</b>	UK simple types.	Referenced in 2.0
<b>W3C</b>	\xml	<b>XML.xsd</b>	Standard definitions of types.	Referenced in 2.0

**Table 11-6 – NaPTAN 2.0 Module Names**

## 12 RELATION TO OTHER STANDARDS

### 12.1 Transmodel Compliance

#### 12.1.1 Transmodel Terminology

NaPTAN is based on *Transmodel*, a general abstract model for describing public transport information systems and uses *Transmodel* terminology where possible. NaPTAN's model of interchange points precedes work to extend Transmodel to describe physical interchanges – IFOPT (Identification of Fixed Objects in Public Transport). A straightforward conceptual equivalence between NaPTAN and the IFOPT model can be established.

In Transmodel, a SCHEDULED STOP POINT is a point of access to transport identified in a timetable. IFOPT refines Transmodel 5.1 to add a physical model that describes a distinct model of the interchange (note, however, that although the physical interchange is in reality a different concept, in practice often it will have the same identifier as the SCHEDULED STOP POINT). The IFOPT model comprises a STOP PLACE and its physical components: a QUAY (any point of access to transport such as a platform), an ACCESS SPACE (an area within an interchange other than a QUAY, similar to a NaPTAN AccessArea) and an ENTRANCE (similar to a NaPTAN entrance)

The equivalences between some key NaPTAN elements and their corresponding Transmodel concepts are shown in *Table 12-1*.

<b>Transmodel/IFOPT</b>	<b>NPTG and NaPTAN v2.x</b>	<b>Previously NaPTAN v1.x</b>
ACTIVITY	Activity	
DIRECTION	Direction	JourneyDirection
LOCATION	Location	(Geocode)
LOCATING SYSTEM	LocatingSystem	--
STOP PLACE	Stop Area	
QUAY (SCHEDULED STOP POINT)	StopPoint : Platform, On street stop, Berth, Gateway, etc	<b>Stop</b>
ACCESS SPACE	StopPoint: AccessArea	
ENTRANCE	StopPoint: Entrance	
STOP AREA	StopArea	<b>StopCluster</b>
TIMING POINT	StopPoint with a timing status	
TARIFF ZONE	PlusbusZone, TariffZone	--
NETWORK	Network	

**Table 12-1 – Comparison of Key Transmodel Terms**

Most NaPTAN stop types (on-street bus and trolley stops, off-street platforms, berths, airport gates, taxi ranks, etc) are QUAYs. Note however that NaPTAN also includes station Entrances and AccessArea nodes of an interchange as stop points – In IFOPT these are distinguished as separate object types (but they are all Stop Place Components).

### 12.2 ITSO Interoperability

NaPTAN identifiers may be used as stop identifiers in ITSO conformant cards in either of two formats:

- the 12 byte **AtcoCode**
- the 8 character **NaptanCode**: this will be stored in 4 bytes using the numeric form for each character,

## 13 NATIONAL LANGUAGE SUPPORT

NaPTAN is enabled to allow the coding of schemas in different National Languages, such as Welsh.

### 13.1 Text Content Types

The textual data of a NaPTAN document falls into three different categories:

- **Structured Text:** National Language translations of fixed encoded NaPTAN values, and terminology, for example ‘Stop’, ‘Locality’, ‘Principal timing point’.
- **Free Text:** The contents of data elements that can be specified as text, for example area names, locality names and stop notes.
- **Aliased Free Text:** For certain entities, the use of alternate names is explicitly modelled in the schema. For example, a stop point can have a common name and several alternative names, allowing for bilingualism.

#### 13.1.1 Use of Structured Text

An overall **xml:lang** attribute is specified at the schema level. This specifies the default language for the data, i.e. the default implied language that is to be used to publish the data. It defaults to English (en). Welsh is indicated by (cy)

- Translations are established for the different fixed elements.

#### 13.1.2 Use of Free Text

Elements which may contain free text in a natural language (*Table 13-1*), such as Welsh or English, are typed **NaturalLanguageString** and have an **xml:lang** language attribute to indicate the language of the text.

- English is assumed if no attribute is specified.
- The provision of alternative names for a stop in different languages is covered by NaPTAN, which allows for multiple alternative names.
- Note that although the schema imposes no limit on the length of names, the NaPTAN database currently restricts names to a maximum of 48 characters.

#### 13.1.3 Use of Aliased Free Text

Entities which are *aliased* may in effect have names in a number of different languages, as they allow multiple instances of a name subelement, each having an **xml:lang** language attribute to indicate the language in which it is expressed. Thus for example a stop might have its default name in Welsh, with an alternative in English.

- English is assumed if no **xml:lang** attribute is specified.

	Group	Element	Alias	NaPTAN Database length limit	Aliases in Version
NPTG	<b>NptgLocality</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>AlternativeDescriptor/ Name</b>	48	2.x
	<b>NptgDistrict</b>	<b>Name</b>	No	48	
	<b>Region</b>	<b>Name</b>	No	48	
	<b>CallCentre</b>	<b>Name</b>	No	48	
	<b>AdministrativeArea</b>	<b>Name</b>	No	48	
NaPTAN	<b>StopPoint</b>	<b>Descriptor / CommonName</b>	<b>AlternativeDescriptor / CommonName</b>	48	1.x
		<b>Descriptor / ShortName</b>	<b>AlternativeDescriptor / ShortName</b>		2.x0
		<b>Descriptor / Indicator</b>	<b>AlternativeDescriptor / Indicator</b>	48	2.x
		<b>Descriptor / Landmark</b>	<b>AlternativeDescriptor / Landmark</b>	48	2.x
		<b>Descriptor / Street</b>	<b>AlternativeDescriptor / Street</b>	48	2.x
		<b>Place / Suburb</b>	No	48	
		<b>Place / Town</b>	No	48	
		<b>Note</b>	No	*	
	<b>StopArea</b>	<b>Name</b>	No	48	
	<b>Network</b>	<b>Name</b>			2.5
	<b>Network</b>	<b>ShortName</b>	No		2.5

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

	<i>TariffZone</i>	<i>Name</i>	No		2.5
	<i>TariffZone</i>	<i>ShortName</i>	No		2.5

**Table 13-1 – Elements That May Contain Natural Language Free Text**

## 14 INTEGRITY RULES

This section describes the integrity checks that should be applied to *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* data. For each schema these are divided in Syntactic and Semantic rules.

- **Syntactic Rules:** XML's inbuilt mechanisms, including *Keyrefs*, are used in the *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* schemas to enforce a number of basic integrity checks of data within *NPTG* and *NaPTAN* documents, including enforcing uniqueness. A document must satisfy these constraints, or it is not well formed and will not be processed further by applications.
  - Data types are specified for dates, times, durations and other common data types.
  - Restricted values are enforced by enumerations – see individual tables of allowed values under the schema guide entry for constrained elements.
  - Some additional rules for encoding formatted elements are enforced by regular expressions.
- **Semantic Rules:** Additional integrity rules that apply to interpreting *NPTG* & *NPTG* XML documents. These rules need to be applied by applications parsing a *NPTG* document. These are subdivided into two categories:
  - *Intrinsic Constraints (Int)* – Consistency checks that can be applied without reference to external data. For many of these, a sensible recovery action can be taken.
  - *Extrinsic Constraints (Ext)* – Checks of data values that require reference to an external source. Whether these need to be applied depends on the availability of the relevant data sets, and the purpose of the application

Semantic rules are assigned a severity (see *Table 14-1*) that indicates the likely action that an application (such as the *TransXChange Publisher*) will take if the rule is not satisfied.

Severity	Meaning	Action
1	Fundamental Inconsistency – Schedule cannot be interpreted accurately.	Report as serious error. Reject for registration.
2	Inconsistency – Default Remedial action possible, but statutory Registration requires clarification.	Report, apply remedy automatically. Reject for registration.
3	Inconsistency – Default Remedial action possible.	Report, apply remedy automatically.
4	Data reference does not exist in external source.	Report as missing.
5	Ancillary data reference does not exist.	Report as missing.
6	Minor data inconsistency.	Report, leave uncorrected.

**Table 14-1 – Severity Codes for Semantic Integrity Rules**

### 14.1 NPTG Integrity Rules

#### 14.1.1 Syntactic Integrity Rules

*Table 14-2* shows XML enforced integrity checks of data within a *NPTG* document, including uniqueness.

Group	Element	#	Scope	Reference
<b>Code Scope</b>	<i>RegionCode</i>	C1	Codes of <i>Region</i> declarations must be unique within NPTG document (& NPTG database).	<i>RegionRef</i> instances must reference a valid definition of a <i>Region</i> .
	<i>AdministrativeArea-Code</i>	C2	Codes of <i>AdministrativeArea</i> declarations must be unique within NPTG document (& NPTG database).	<i>AdministrativeAreaRef</i> instances must reference a valid definition of an <i>AdministrativeArea</i> .
	<i>NptgDistrict</i>	C3	Codes of <i>NptgDistrict</i> declarations must be unique within NPTG document. (& NPTG database).	<i>NptgDistrictRef</i> instances must reference a valid definition of an <i>NptgLocality</i> .
	<i>NptgLocality</i>	C4	Codes of <i>NptgLocality</i> declarations must be unique within NPTG document (& NPTG database).	<i>NptgLocalityRef</i> instances must reference a valid definition of an <i>NptgLocality</i>

	<b>PlusbusZone</b>		Codes of <b>PlusbusZone</b> declarations must be unique within NPTG document (& NPTG database).	
	<b>AlternativeName / Name</b>	N1	Alternative Names for a given element must be unique for parent element	
<b>Cyclic</b>	<b>ParentLocalityRef</b>	X1	<b>NptgLocality</b> must not reference itself.	

**Table 14-2 – NPTG Syntactic Integrity Rules**

#### 14.1.2 Semantic Integrity Rules

Table 14-5 shows additional integrity rules that apply to interpreting *NPTG* XML documents. These rules need to be applied by applications parsing a *NPTG* document.

Group	#	Rule Name	Description			Recommended Error Handling
Transitive relationships	X2	<b>ParentLocalityRef</b>	<b>NptgLocality</b> 'Is part of' relationship should not be cyclic.	Ext	2	Ignore
Name uniqueness	M1	<b>Region</b> name uniqueness	<b>Region</b> names should be unique within NPTG.	Ext	2	
	M2	<b>AdministrativeArea</b> name uniqueness	<b>AdministrativeArea</b> names should be unique within NPTG.	Ext	2	
	M3	<b>AdministrativeArea / ShortName</b> uniqueness	Full qualified <b>AdministrativeArea</b> short names should be unique within NPTG.	Ext	2	
	M4	<b>NptgDistrict</b> name uniqueness	<b>NptgDistrict</b> names should be unique within NPTG.	Ext	2	
	M5	Qualified <b>Locality / Name</b> uniqueness	Full qualified <b>Locality</b> names should be unique within NPTG.	Ext	2	

**Table 14-3 – NPTG Semantic Integrity Rules**

#### 14.2 NPTG Discovery Integrity Rules

##### 14.2.1 Syntactic Integrity Rules

Table 14-4 shows XML enforced integrity checks of data within a *NPTG Discovery* document, including uniqueness.

Group	Element	#	Scope	Reference
Code Scope	<b>WebApplication</b>	C1	Codes of <b>WebApplication</b> declarations must be unique within NPTG document	<b>WebApplication Ref</b> instances must reference a valid definition of a <b>WebApplication</b> .
	<b>CallCentreCode</b>		Codes of <b>CallCentre</b> declarations must be unique within NPTG document. (& NPTG database).	<b>CallCentre Ref</b> instances must reference a valid definition of a <b>CallCentre</b> .

**Table 14-4 – NPTG Discovery Syntactic Integrity Rules**

##### 14.2.2 Semantic Integrity Rules

Table 14-5 shows additional integrity rules that apply to interpreting *NPTG Discovery* XML documents. These rules need to be applied by applications parsing a *NPTG* document.

Group	#	Rule Name	Description	Cat	Sev	Recommended Error Handling
References	R1	<b>RegionRef</b>	<b>Region</b> Instances referenced through a <b>RegionRef</b> must exist in NPTG database.	Ext	2	reject
	R2	<b>NptgLocalityRef</b>	<b>NptgLocality</b> Instances	Ext	2	report

		referenced through an <b>NptgLocalityRef</b> must exist in the NPTG database.			
R3	<b>AdministrativeAreaRef</b>	<b>AdministrativeArea</b> Instances referenced through an <b>AdministrativeAreaRef</b> must exist in NPTG database.	Ext	2	report
R4	<b>StopPointRef</b>	<b>StopPoint</b> Instances referenced through a <b>StopPointRef</b> (for example from an <b>AdjacentRegionPoint</b> ) must exist in NaPTAN database.	Ext	2	report

**Table 14-5 – NPTG Discovery Semantic Integrity Rules**

### 14.3 NaPTAN Integrity Rules

#### 14.3.1 Syntactic Integrity Rules

Table 14-6 shows XML enforced integrity checks of data within a NaPTAN document, including uniqueness.

Group	Element	#	Scope	Reference
<b>Versions</b>	<b>VersionNumber</b>	V1	Version number of child should not be greater than that of parent element.	
	<b>ModificationDate</b>	V2	<b>ModificationDate</b> of child should not be later than that of parent	
<b>Code Scope</b>	<b>AtcoCode</b>	C1	Codes of <b>StopPoint</b> declarations must be unique within NaPTAN document.	
	<b>StopAreaCode</b>	C2	Codes of <b>StopArea</b> (Cluster) declarations must be unique within NaPTAN document.	
	<b>Network</b>	C3	Codes of <b>Network</b> (Fare scheme) declarations must be unique within NaPTAN document.	+NaPT v2.5
	<b>TariffZone</b>	C4	Codes of <b>TariffZone</b> (Fare zone) declarations must be unique within NaPTAN document.	+NaPT v2.5
	<b>PointOfInterest</b>	C4	Codes of <b>PointOfInterest</b> declarations must be unique within NaPTAN document.	+NaPT v2.5
<b>Cross reference</b>	<b>StopAreaRef</b>	R1	References by a Stop to a <b>StopArea</b> must correspond to a <b>StopArea</b> declared within the same NaPTAN document.	
	<b>TariffZoneRef</b>	R2	References by a Stop to a <b>TariffZone</b> (Fare zone) must correspond to TariffZone declared within the same NaPTAN document.	+NaPT v2.5
	<b>AlternativeName / Name</b>	N1	Alternative Names for a given element must be unique	
<b>Cyclic</b>	<b>StopAreaParentRef</b>	X1	<b>StopArea</b> must not reference itself through a <b>StopAreaParentRef</b> , either directly or indirectly. See also X2 for indirect references.	
<b>Single reference</b>	<b>StopArea Unique Reference</b>	U1	<b>StopArea</b> must only be referenced by a given <b>StopPoint</b> once.	
	<b>NptgLocality Unique Reference</b>	U2	<b>StopPoint</b> must only reference a given	

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

		<i>NptgLocality</i> through an <i>Alternative</i> / <i>NptgLocalityRef</i> once.	
--	--	--	--

**Table 14-6 – NaPTAN Syntactic Integrity Rules**

14.3.2 Semantic Integrity Rules

<b>Transitive relationships</b>	X2	<i>ParentLocalityRef</i>	<i>NptgLocality</i> 'Is part of' relationship should not be cyclic.	Ext	2	Ignore
---------------------------------	----	--------------------------	---	-----	---	--------

Table 14-7 shows additional integrity rules that apply to interpreting NaPTAN XML documents. These rules need to be applied by applications parsing NaPTAN documents.

Group	#	Rule Name	Description	Cat	Sev	Recommended Error Handling
NPTG refs	T3	<i>NPTG Localities</i>	<i>NPTG Localities</i> referenced by <i>StopPoint</i> and <i>StopArea</i> instances through an <i>NptgLocalityRef</i> must exist in NPTG database.	Ext	1	Reject
	T4	<i>NPTG Administrative Areas</i>	<i>NPTG Administrative Areas</i> referenced by <i>StopPoint</i> and <i>StopArea</i> instances through an <i>AdministrativeAreaRef</i> must exist in NPTG database.	Ext	1	Reject
	T5	<i>NPTG PlusbusZones</i>	<i>NPTG Plusbus zones</i> referenced by <i>StopPoint</i> instances through a <i>PlusbusZoneRef</i> must exist in NPTG database.	Ext	4	Report
	S1	<i>NPTG Locality Status</i>	<i>NPTG Localities</i> referenced by active <i>StopPoint</i> and <i>StopArea</i> instances through an <i>NptgLocalityRef</i> or Alternative reference should be active.	Ext	3	Report
	S2	<i>NPTG Administrative Area Status</i>	<i>NPTG Administrative Areas</i> referenced by active <i>StopPoint</i> and <i>StopArea</i> instances through an <i>AdministrativeAreaRef</i> should be active.	Ext	3	Report
	S3	<i>NPTG Plusbus Status</i>	Plusbus zones referenced by active <i>StopPoint</i> instances through a <i>PlusbusZoneRef</i> should be active.	Ext	4	Report, Ignore link
NaPTAN	N1	<i>NaPTAN Stop Identifiers.</i>	Stops defined as new should not exist in NaPTAN database, or be defined locally	Ext	6	Report
			Stops defined as revised should exist in NaPTAN database, or be defined locally	Ext	6	Report
	N2	<i>NaPTAN Stop Area Identifiers.</i>	<i>StopArea</i> instances referenced by a <i>StopPoint</i> / <i>StopAreaRef</i> in a document must either exist in NaPTAN database or be defined in document.	Ext	3	Ignore
	N4	<i>NaPTAN Stop types</i>	<i>StopType</i> value should correspond to <i>OnStreet</i> or <i>OffStreet</i> subtype.	Int	3	Use OnStreet or OffStreet element in preference
	N3	<i>ShortCommonName</i> length.	<i>StopPoint</i> / <i>ShortCommonName</i> should not exceed limit set by and for Administrative Area	Int	3	Truncate & Report
	N4	Qualified CommonName uniqueness	Full qualified stop names should be unique with Name within national context	Ext	4	Report
	X2	Stop Area hierarchy	Stop area hierarchy relationship should not be cyclic. StopArea referenced by <i>StopArea</i> / <i>ParentRef</i> should not be parent or	Ext	3	Report, ignore

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

		ancestor of <b>StopArea</b> . See also X1 for self-references.			
S5	<i>NaPTAN Stop Point StopArea Status</i>	<i>NaPTAN Stop Areas referenced by active <b>StopPoint</b> instances through a <b>StopAreaRef</b> should be active.</i>	Ext	4	Report
S6	<i>NaPTAN StopArea parent Status</i>	<i>Parent Stop Areas referenced by active <b>StopArea</b> instances through a <b>StopArea / ParentRef</b> should be active.</i>	Ext	4	Report
E3	<i>TiplocCode</i>	<i><b>TiplocCode</b> of <b>AnnotatedRailRef</b> should be valid TIPLOC.</i>	Ext	4	Report
E4	<i>CoachCode</i>	<i><b>CoachCode</b> of <b>AnnotatedCoachRef</b> should be valid National Coach code.</i>	Ext	4	Report
E5	<i>IataCode</i>	<i><b>IataCode</b> of <b>AnnotatedAirRef</b> declarations should be valid IATA airport code.</i>	Ext	4	Report
E6	<i>FerryCode</i>	<i><b>FerryCode</b> of <b>AnnotatedFerryRef</b> declarations should be valid ferry port airport code.</i>	Ext	4	Report

**Table 14-7 – NaPTAN Semantic Integrity Rules**



## 15 APPENDICES

### 15.1 2.0 Changes Since 1.1

The following table summarises the changes to *NaPTAN* included in Version 2.0, compared with Version 1.0:

- Addition of *NPTG* elements to a new schema.
- [NaPTAN good practice] Use of **AlternativeName** rather than whole element.
- Renamed **ATCOCode**→**AtcoCode**,
  - **Stop**→**StopPoint**,
  - **StopRef**→**StopPointRef**,
  - **StopGroup**→**StopArea**,
  - **SMSNumber**→**NaptanCode**,
  - **AreaCode**→**StopAreaCode**,
  - **AreaType**→**StopAreaType**,
  - **BusRegistrationStatus**→**TimingStatus**
- [NaPTAN Transmodel] Renamed Stop/ **Place** / **Direction** to be **Bearing** to avoid confusion with the direction of a vehicle journey.
- [NaPTAN] Renamed **Locality** element to be **Place**, to be **Transmodel** compliant, and to avoid confusion with **NptgLocality**, and **Location**.
- [NPTG modularisation] Moved **StopPoint** and **StopArea** structures to NaPT schema.
- [NAPT harmonisation] **Suburb**, **Town**, **Street** made **Natural Language Types**
- [NPTG harmonisation] Move NPTG **AdministrativeAreaCode** type to individual stop points. Add **AdministrativeAreaRef** to **StopPoint** and **StopArea**.
- [NaPTAN harmonisation] Added optional **CreationDateTime**, and standardised **ModificationDateTime** to modification details group attributes. Added to additional entities.
- [NAPT geographic] Add WGS geocode support. WGS84 types added to NaPT geographic. Added **LocationSystem** attribute to schema root. Modify **Location** to support both.
- [NPTG modularisation] Moved **Country** from **AdministrativeArea** to **Region**. Note also that each **AdministrativeArea** must belong to a region, so this means a national region will be required to support national **AdministrativeArea**.
- [NPTG modularisation] Add **AdministrativeArea** to **NptgDistrict**.
- [NaPTAN modularisation] Moved **Location** element to be within **Place**.
- [NPTG] Model **WebApplication** as separate element classifications.
- [NPTG] Move **ExchangePoints** to NaPTAN.
- [NPTG Discovery] Move Call centres, Region and AREPS. [NPTG Discovery]
- [NPTG] Add SMS prefixes to **AdministrativeArea**.
- [NPTG] Add **ShortName** to **AdministrativeArea**.
- [NAPTAN] Add FLX **BusStopType**, add CCH **StopType**.
- [NaPTAN] Group **CommonName**, **Street**, **Indicator**, **Landmark** within a **Descriptor** Element.
- [NaPTAN] Rename and extend **StopPoint AlternativeName** to be **AlternativeDescriptor**, with **CommonName**, **Street**, **Indicator**, and **Landmark**.
- [NaPTAN] Add **ShortCommonName** to **StopPoint / Descriptor**. Add **MaximumLengthForShortNames** to **AdministrativeArea**
- [NPTG] Add Plusbus zones.
- 

CSV Renamed fields to match XML schema element names  
CSV add fields for additional elements, including lang & mod types  
CSV Reorganise

### 15.2 2.1 Changes Since 2.0

The following table summarises the changes to *NaPTAN* included in Version 2.1, compared with Version 2.0:

- NaPT\_stop **Landmark** and **Street** elements made .optional.
- NaPT\_stop **AnnotatedStopRef** supported on **OnStreet/Bus**
- NaPT\_stop **OperatorRef** added to **AnnotatedStopRef**.

### 15.3 References

#### 15.3.1.1 Transport Domain

##### TransXChange

*TransXChange* is a UK Department for Transport sponsored protocol, which defines a national data standard for the interchange of bus route registration, route and timetable information between operators, the Traffic Area Offices, Local Authorities and Passenger Transport Executives, and Traveline – the National Passenger Transport Information System.

<http://www.transxchange.dft.gov.uk/>

	TransXChange XML Schema 2.5 ( <a href="http://www.transxchange.dft.gov.uk/">http://www.transxchange.dft.gov.uk/</a> )	2013 April	Nick Knowles
	Department for Transport TransXChange Schema Guide 2.5 <a href="http://www.transxchange.org.uk/">http://www.transxchange.org.uk/</a>	2013 April	Nick Knowles

##### NaPTAN

National Public Transport Access Nodes (*NaPTAN*) Database. *NaPTAN* seeks to assemble and maintain a single source of information on the location and naming of bus stops and other public transport access nodes in England, Wales and Scotland. <http://www.traveline.org.uk/naptan/>

	UK Department for Transport Integrated Transport CREATING THE JOURNEYWEB NETWORK Deliverable Number 04-5 NaPTAN Specification v1.0 <a href="#">National Public Transport Access Nodes (NaPTAN) Database</a>  <a href="http://www.traveline.org.uk/naptan/naptan-4.5-Specification-v1.0b97.doc">http://www.traveline.org.uk/naptan/naptan-4.5-Specification-v1.0b97.doc</a>	2002 Nov	WS Atkins
	PROJECT 783, TRANSPORT DIRECT NAPTAN HOSTING, NAPTAN - UPLOADING DATA P78324003 Issue 1 Draft A	28 October 2003	Thales

#### 15.3.2 JourneyWeb

*JourneyWeb* is a UK Department for Transport sponsored protocol which defines a national data standard for the dynamic interchange of transport information, including journey plans, and timetables. It is used by the Transport Direct Portal project.

JW	UK Department for Transport JourneyWeb 2.5 Schema GUIDE <a href="http://www.kizoom.com/standards/journeyweb/schema/schemas.htm">http://www.kizoom.com/standards/journeyweb/schema/schemas.htm</a>	2013 April	Kizoom
----	---	------------	--------

##### Transmodel CEN TC 278

*Transmodel* is a European Union sponsored abstract standard for describing Public Transport Information Systems.

Transmodel	French Ministry for Transport REFERENCE DATA MODEL FOR PUBLIC TRANSPORT <a href="#">[CEN01]</a> CEN TC278, Reference Data Model For Public Transport, ENV12896 revised, June 2001.	2004 Jan	CEN
------------	--	----------	-----

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

	[CEN97] CEN TC278, Road Transport and Traffic Telematics - Public Transport -Reference Data Model, prENV 12896, May 1997 <a href="http://www.Transmodel.org">http://www.Transmodel.org</a>		
IFOPT	Road traffic and transport telematics — Public transport — Identification of fixed objects in public transport CEN/TC 278 CEN TC 278 WI 00278207	2007 Dec	CEN

SIRI CEN TC 278

SIRI	Public transport — Service interface for real-time information relating to public transport operations — Part 1: Context & Framework: CEN/TS 00278181-1, — Part 2: Communications Infrastructure CEN/TS 00278181-2, — Part 3: Functional service interfaces: CEN/TS 00278181-3	2008 Jan 2012 V 2.0	CEN
------	---	------------------------	-----

15.3.2.2 Software & General

XML Schema

<http://www.w3.org/XML/Schema>

	XML Schema Part 0: Primer <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xmlschema-0-20010502/">http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xmlschema-0-20010502/</a>	2001 May 2	David C. Fallside
	XML Schema Part 1: Structures <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xmlschema-1-20010502/">http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xmlschema-1-20010502/</a>	2001 May 2	Various
	XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xmlschema-2-20010502/">http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xmlschema-2-20010502/</a>	2001 May 2	Paul V. Biron and Ashok Malhotra

ISO Time Formats

	D ISO 8601 Date and Time Formats <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/-isoformats">http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/-isoformats</a>	2001 May 2	W3C Various
	ISO8601:2000(E) Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times Second edition 2000-12-15 <a href="http://lists.ebxml.org/archives/ebxml-core/200104/pdf00005.pdf">http://lists.ebxml.org/archives/ebxml-core/200104/pdf00005.pdf</a>	2000 Dec 15	Louis Visser

WGS 1984 Location Referencing

	World Geodetic Standard 1984 <a href="http://www.wgs84.com/">http://www.wgs84.com/</a>		W3C Various
--	---	--	-------------

ISO 639-1 Names of Languages

	ISO 639-1:2001. Code for the representation of the names of languages <a href="http://www.oasis-open.org/cover/iso639a.html">http://www.oasis-open.org/cover/iso639a.html</a>		Infoterm
--	--	--	----------

Rfc 1766 Tags for the Identification of Languages

	rfc1766 – Tags for the Identification of Languages <a href="http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1766.txt">http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1766.txt</a>		Infoterm
--	---	--	----------

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

GovTalk XML Coding Standards

	Office of the e-Envoy Schema Guidelines Best Practice Advice Version 2 <a href="http://www.govtalk.gov.uk/documents/Schema_Guidelines_2.doc">http://www.govtalk.gov.uk/documents/Schema_Guidelines_2.doc</a>	2002 Oct 12	Paul Spencer
	e-Government Metadata Standard e-GMS 1.0 <a href="http://www.govtalk.gov.uk/documents/e-Government_Metadata_Standard_v1.pdf">http://www.govtalk.gov.uk/documents/e-Government_Metadata_Standard_v1.pdf</a>	2002 Apr	Office of e-Envoy

#### 15.4 Standard Abbreviations for Topographical Features

The following standard abbreviations for topographical features and other terms are preferred. They should be used only where it is essential that the full name be abbreviated (to meet constraints of field-lengths in a database, for instance).

##### 15.4.1 Terms for Relationship

Relationship	Abbreviation
Adjacent	Adj
Near	Nr
Opposite	Opp
Outside	O/s
Great	Gt

Greater	Gtr
Little	Lt
Upper	Upr
Middle	Mdl
Lower	Lwr
East	E

West	W
North	N
South	S
Saint	St (1)

##### 15.4.2 Topographical Features

Topographical Feature	Abbreviation
Alley	Al
Approach	App
Arcade	Arc
Avenue	Ave, Av
Back	Bk
Boulevard	Bvd
Bridge	Bri
Broadway	Bway
Buildings	Bldgs
Bungalows	Bglws
Business	Bsns
Causeway	Cswy
Centre	Ctr
Church	Chu, Ch
Churchyard	Chyd
Circle	Circ
Circus	Ccus
Close	Clo, Cl
College	Col
Common	Comm
Corner	Cnr
Cottages	Cotts
Court	Ct
Courtyard	Ctyd

Crescent	Cres
Cross-roads	Xrds
Drive	Dri, Dr
Drove	Dro
Embankment	Embkmt
Esplanade	Espl
Estate	Est
Gardens	Gdns
Gate	Ga
Green	Grn, Gn
Grove	Gro
Heights	Hts
Hospital	Hosp
Industrial	Ind
Infirmary	Inf
Interchange	Intc
Junction	Jct
Lane	Ln, La
Manor	Mnr
Mansions	Mans
Market	Mkt
Mews	Mws
Mosque	Msq
Mount	Mt
Orchard	Orch
Palace	Pal
Parade	Pde

Park	Pk
Passage	Pass
Place	Pl
Police Station	Pol Stn
Precinct	Prec
Promenade	Prom
Quadrant	Quad
Road	Rd
Roundabout	Rdbt
Square	Sq
Stairs	Strs
Station	Stn
Steps	Stps
Street	St (1)
Subway	Sub
Synagogue	Syng
Terrace	Ter, Terr
Temple	Tmpl
Trading	Trdg
Turn	Tn
View	Vw
Villas	Vs
Walk	Wlk
Way	Wy
Yard	Yd

(1) St as prefix means 'Saint'. St as suffix means 'Street'.

##### 15.4.3 Common Acronyms

Term	Abbreviation
Football Club	FC
Her Majesty's Prison	HMP

Post Office	PO
Public House	PH
Royal Air Force	RAF

--	--

##### 15.4.4 Common Adjectives

Adjective	Abbreviation
National	Ntl

British	Brt
Royal	Ryl

--	--

## 15.5 NPTG CSV Exchange Formats

This appendix describes the *NPTG* CSV exchange format. It presents:

- A diagram of the *NPTG* 1.2 tables and their interrelationships.
- A diagram of the revised *NPTG* 2.1 tables and their interrelationships.
- A list of the *NPTG* CSV table names.
- Detailed descriptions of the contents of each *NPTG* CSV table.

For comparison purposes, *Figure 15-1* shows the previous data fields and relationships between each of the CSV exchange tables in the ***NPTG* for Version 1.2**.

The following conventions are used:

- *NaPTAN* elements are shown shaded in green. For example, '*NaPTAN Point*'.
- Fields deprecated in 1.1 have a ‘–against them. For example ‘*Exchange Point ID*–’.
- Derived Fields are shown in brackets. For example, ‘(*Lon*)’
- Required fields are shown in bold.
- Primary keys are indicated by a PK. Foreign keys by a FK.

*Figure 15-2* shows the data fields and relationships between each of the CSV exchange tables in the ***NPTG* for Version 2.1**

*Figure 15-3* shows the data fields and relationships between each of the CSV exchange tables in the ***NPTG Discovery* for Version 2.1**; the tables have been partitioned between the two schemas and some tables have been moved to the *NaPTAN* schema.

The same conventions are used. In addition:

- *NPTG* 2.x schema element names are used as the field names.
- Fields added in 2.0 have a ‘+’ against them. For example ‘*LocalityClassification*+’.
- Fields whose types have been revised have a \* against them – this is restricted to revising *Date* to be a *DateTime*. Fields whose enums values are not marked.

### Summary of differences

- RailExchange, CoachExchange, Air Exchange moved to *NaPTAN* as AnnotatedRailRef.
- CallCentre and Region Traveline URLs AREP moved to *NPTG Discovery*
- PlusbusZones added.
- Relationship between
- ShortName added,
- Entity modification attributes standardised.
- Language attributes added

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

#### 15.5.1 NPTG CSV 1.2 CSV Format Overview [Deprecated]

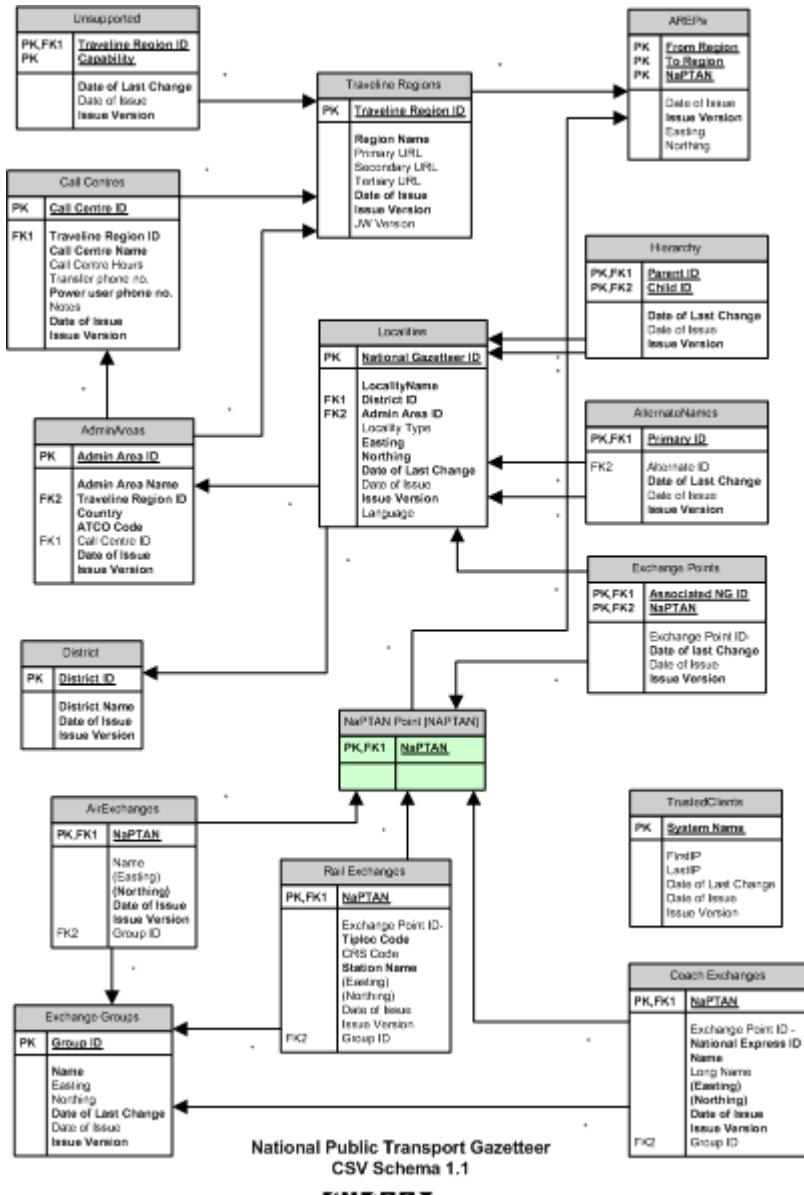


Figure 15-1 – Diagram of National Gazetteer 1.2 CSV Tables

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

15.5.2 NPTG CSV 2.1 CSV Format Overview

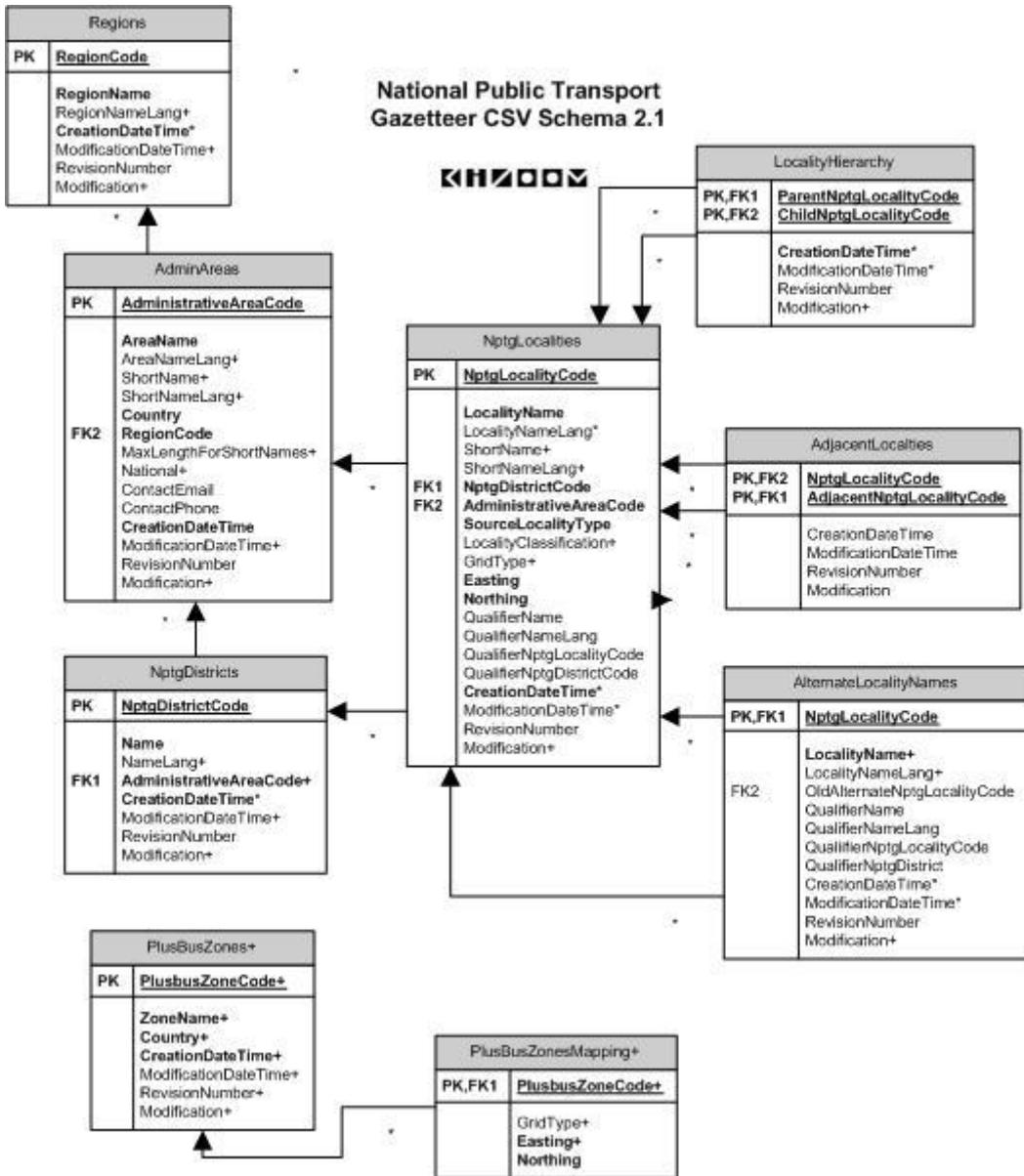


Figure 15-2 – Diagram of National Gazetteer 2.1 CSV Tables

# Department for Transport

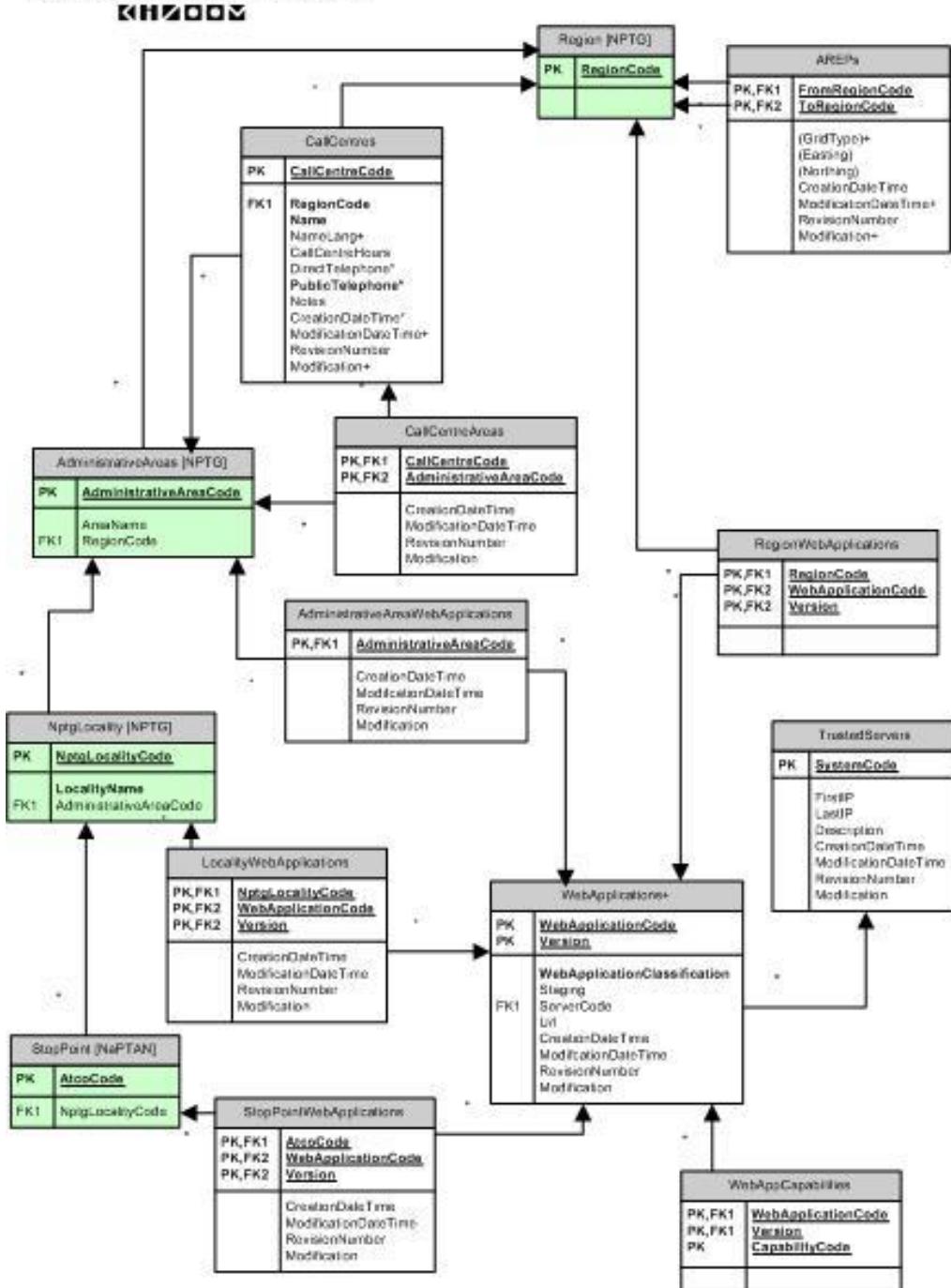
## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

#### 15.5.3 NPTG Discovery CSV 2.1 CSV Format Overview

**NPTG Discovery CSV Schema 2.1**



**Figure 15-3 – Diagram NPTG Discovery CSV 2.1 CSV Tables**

#### 15.6 NPTG: CSV Files

	Group	Content	File name	Old File Name	Version
NPTG	Admin	Regions	Regions.csv	Traveline Regions.csv	1.0
		Administrative Areas	AdminAreas.csv	AdminAreas.csv	1.0
		NPTG Districts	Districts.csv	District.csv	1.0
	Locality	NPTG Localities	Localities.csv	Localities.csv	1.0

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

		Alternative Locality Names	LocalityAlternativeNames.csv	AlternateNames.csv	1.0
		Locality Hierarchy	LocalityHierarchy.csv	Hierarchy.csv	1.0
		Adjacent Localities	AdjacentLocality.csv	--	2.0+
	Plusbus	Plusbus zones	PlusbusZones.csv	--	2.0+
		Plusbus zone boundaries	PlusbusMapping.csv	--	2.0+
NPTG Discovery	Exchange	Adjacent Region Points	AREPs.csv	AREPs.csv	1.0
	Resource	Trusted Servers	TrustedServers.csv	TrustedClients.csv	1.0*
		Call Centres	CallCentres.csv	CallCentres.csv	1.0
		Call Centres Areas	CallCentresAreas.csv	CallCentresAreas.csv	2.0
		WebApplications	WebApplications.csv	(Regions.csv)	2.0+
		WebApplications for Region	RegionWebApplications.csv	--	2.0+
		WebApplications for Area	AdminAreaWebApplications.csv	--	2.0+
		WebApplications for Locality	LocalityWebApplications.csv	--	2.0+
		WebApplications for Stop	StopWebApplications.csv	--	2.0+

**Table 15-1 – NPTG CSV files**

Each CSV file must contain a header row containing the corresponding field names for each file. Some derived fields are only present in exports from the NaPTAN database. If these derived fields are included in data intended for import into the database they will simply be ignored.

#### 15.6.1 NPTG: Regions CSV table

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
Locality	<b>RegionCode</b>	Region ID	Yes	FK	8	1.0
Locality	<b>RegionName</b>	LocalityName	Derived	nlString	48	1.0
RegionName	<b>RegionNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
Locality	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	Yes	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
Locality	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date of Last Change	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
Locality	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0 *
Locality	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	new   del   rev	3	+2.0

**Table 15-2 – NPTG: Region.csv Content**

#### 15.6.2 NPTG: AdminAreas CSV table

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
AdminArea	<b>AdministrativeAreaCode</b>	Admin Area ID	Yes	PK	8	1.0
AdminArea	<b>AtcoAreaCode</b>	Atco Code	Yes	code		+2.0
AdminArea	<b>AreaName</b>	LocalityName	Derived	nlString	48	1.0
AreaName	<b>AreaNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
AdminArea	<b>ShortName</b>	n new	Derived	nlString	48	+2.0
AdminArea	<b>ShortNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
AdminArea	<b>Country</b>	same	Yes	enum	3	1.0
AdminArea	<b>RegionCode</b>	Region ID	Yes	FK	8	1.0
AdminArea	<b>MaximumLengthForShortNames</b>		No	xsd:positive-integer	3	+2.0
AdminArea	<b>National</b>	new	No	xsd:boolean	1	+2.0
AdminArea	<b>ContactEmail</b>	Email for contact	No	apd:email	*	+2.0
AdminArea	<b>ContactTelephone</b>	PhoneNo for contact	No	apd:phone	20	+2.0
AdminArea	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	Yes	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
AdminArea	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date of Last Change	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
AdminArea	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0 *
AdminArea	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-3 – NPTG: Admin.csv Content**

Note: Administrative Area Cleardown Prefixes and NaptanCode prefixes may only be exchanged in XML

#### 15.6.3 NPTG: District CSV table

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
District	<b>DistrictCode</b>	District ID	Yes	PK	8	1.0
District	<b>DistrictName</b>	Name	Yes	PK	48	1.0

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
DistrictName	<b>DistrictLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
District	<b>AdministrativeAreaCode</b>	new	Yes	FK	8	+2.0
District	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
District	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date of Last Change	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
District	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0 *
District	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-4 – NPTG: District.csv Content**

15.6.4 NPTG: Locality CSV table\*

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
Locality	<b>NptgLocalityCode</b>	NatGazID	Yes	PK	8	1.0
Locality	<b>LocalityName</b>	LocalityName	Yes	placeName	48	1.0
LocalityName	<b>LocalityNameLang</b>	new	No	enum	2	+2.0
Locality	<b>ShortName</b>	new	Derived	placeName	48	+2.0
ShortName	<b>ShortNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
Locality	<b>QualifierName</b>	new	No	placeName	48	+2.0
QualifierName	<b>QualifierNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
Locality	<b>QualifierLocalityRef</b>	new	No	FK	8	+2.0
Locality	<b>QualifierDistrictRef</b>	new	No	FK	8	+2.0
Locality	<b>AdministrativeAreaCode</b>	Admin Area ID	Yes	FK	8	1.0
Locality	<b>NptgDistrictCode</b>	District ID	Yes	FK	8	1.0
Locality	<b>SourceLocalityType</b>	LocalityType	Yes	enum	3	1.0
Location	<b>GridType</b>	new	No	enum	1	+2.0
Location	<b>Easting</b>	same	Yes	easting	6	1.0
Location	<b>Northing</b>	same	Yes	northing	7	1.0
Location	<b>Longitude</b>	new	Derived	lon		+2.0
Location	<b>Latitude</b>	new	Derived	lat		+2.0
Locality	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	Yes	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0*
Locality	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date of Last Change	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
Locality	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0
Locality	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-5 – NPTG: Localities.csv Content**

15.6.5 NPTG: LocalityAlternativeNames CSV table\*

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
AltLocality	<b>NptgLocalityCode</b>	Parent ID	Yes	PK, FK	8	1.0
Locality	<b>OldNptgLocalityCode-</b>	Alternate ID	No	FK	8	-1.0
AltLocality	<b>LocalityName</b>	LocalityName	Yes	placeName	48	1.0
LocalityName	<b>LocalityNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
AltLocality	<b>ShortName</b>	new	Derived	placeName	48	+2.0
AltLocality	<b>ShortNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
AltLocality	<b>QualifierName</b>	new	No	placeName	48	+2.0
QualifierName	<b>QualifierNameLang</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
AltLocality	<b>QualifierLocalityRef</b>	new	No	FK	8	+2.0
AltLocality	<b>QualifierDistrictRef</b>	new	No	FK	8	+2.0
AltLocality	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
AltLocality	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date of Last Change	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
AltLocality	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0 *
AltLocality	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-6 – NPTG: LocalityAlternativeNames.csv Content**

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

15.6.6 NPTG: LocalityHierarchy CSV table\*

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
Hierarchy	<i>ParentNptgLocalityCode</i>	Parent ID	Yes	PK, FK	8	1.0
Hierarchy	<i>ChildNptgLocalityCode</i>	Child ID	Yes	PK, FK	8	1.0
Hierarchy	<i>CreationDateTime</i>	Date of Issue	Yes	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
Hierarchy	<i>ModificationDateTime</i>	Date of Last Change	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0 *
Hierarchy	<i>RevisionNumber</i>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0 *
Hierarchy	<i>Modification</i>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-7 – NPTG: LocalityHierarchy.csv Content**

15.6.7 NPTG: AdjacentLocalities CSV table+

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
Locality	<i>NptgLocalityCode</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	PK, FK	8	+2.0
Locality	<i>AdjacentNptgLocalityCode</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	PK, FK	8	+2.0
Locality	<i>CreationDateTime</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
Locality	<i>ModificationDateTime</i>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
Locality	<i>RevisionNumber</i>	<i>new</i>	No	revision	5	+2.0
Locality	<i>Modification</i>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-8 – NPTG: AdjacentLocalities.csv Content**

15.6.8 NPTG Plusbuszones CSV table+

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
PlusbusZone	<i>PlusbusZoneCode</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	PK	12	+2.0
PlusbusZone	<i>Name</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	nlString	48	+2.0
Name	<i>NameLang</i>	<i>new</i>	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
PlusbusZone	<i>Country</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	enum	8	+2.0
PlusbusZone	<i>CreationDateTime</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
PlusbusZone	<i>ModificationDateTime</i>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
PlusbusZone	<i>RevisionNumber</i>	<i>new</i>	No	revision	5	+2.0
PlusbusZone	<i>Modification</i>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-9 – NPTG: PlusbusZones.csv Content**

15.6.9 NPTG PlusbuszonesMapping CSV table+

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
Mapping	<i>PlusbusZoneCode</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	PK	12	+2.0
Mapping	<i>Sequence</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	integer	int	+2.0
Location	<i>GridType</i>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	1	+2.0
Location	<i>Easting</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	easting	6	+2.0
Location	<i>Northing</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	northing	7	+2.0
Mapping	<i>CreationDateTime</i>	<i>new</i>	Yes	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
Mapping	<i>ModificationDateTime</i>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
Mapping	<i>RevisionNumber</i>	<i>new</i>	No	revision	5	+2.0
Mapping	<i>Modification</i>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-10 – NPTG: PlusbusMappings.csv Content**

15.7 NPTG Discovery: CSV Files

15.7.1 NPTG Discovery: AdjacentRegionPoints CSV table+

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
Arep	<i>AtcoCode</i>	ATCOCode	Yes	PK	12	1.0

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
Arep	<b>FromRegionCode</b>		Yes	PK, FK	8	1.0
Arep	<b>ToRegionCode</b>		Yes	PK, FK	8	1.0
Location	<b>(GridType)</b>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	1	+2.0
Location	<b>(Easting)</b>	<i>same</i>	Yes	easting	6	1.0
Location	<b>(Northing)</b>	<i>same</i>	Yes	northing	7	1.0
Arep	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0
Arep	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
Arep	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0
Arep	<b>Modification</b>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-11 – NPTG: AdjacentRegionPoints.csv Content**

15.7.2 NPTG Discovery: CallCentres CSV table+

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
CallCentre	<b>CallCentreCode</b>	ATCOCode	Yes	PK	12	1.0
CallCentre	<b>RegionCode</b>		Yes	PK, FK	8	1.0
CallCentre	<b>Name</b>		Yes	nlString	48	+2.0
Name	<b>NameLang</b>	<i>new</i>	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
CallCentre	<b>PublicTelephonee</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	phone	18	+2.0
CallCentre	<b>DirectTelephone</b>	<i>same</i>	No	phone	18	1.0
CallCentre	<b>Notes</b>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:string	3	+2.0
CallCentre	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0
CallCentre	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
CallCentre	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	revision	5	1.0
CallCentre	<b>Modification</b>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-12 – NPTG: CallCentres.csv Content**

Call centre availability / opening hours can only be exchanged in XML

15.7.3 NPTG Discovery: CallCentresAreas CSV table+

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	
CallCentreArea	<b>CallCentreCode</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	PK	12	1.0
CallCentreArea	<b>AdministrativeAreaCodeee</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	PK, FK	8	1.0
CallCentreArea	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:dateTime	25	1.0
CallCentreArea	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
CallCentreArea	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	<i>new</i>	No	revision	5	1.0
CallCentreArea	<b>Modification</b>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Table 15-13 – NPTG: CallCentres.csv Content**

15.7.4 NPTG Discovery: TrustedServer CSV table +

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
TrustedServer	<b>ServerCode</b>		Yes	PK	20	+2.0
TrustedServer	<b>FirstIP</b>		Yes	xsd:NMTOKEN	16	+2.0
TrustedServer	<b>LastIP</b>		Yes	xsd:NMTOKEN	16	+2.0
TrustedServer	<b>Description</b>		No	xsd:string	20	1.0
TrustedServer	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
TrustedServer	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date of Last Change	No	xsd:dateTime	25	+2.0
TrustedServer	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	typed	5	+2.0
TrustedServer	<b>Modification</b>	<i>new</i>	No	enum	3	+2.0

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

**Table 15-14 – NPTG: TrustedServer.csv Content**

15.7.5 NPTG Discovery: WebApplications CSV table +

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
WebApp	<b>WebApplicationCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK (NMOKEN)</b>	20	+2.0
WebApp	<b>Version</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK (String)</b>	20	+2.0
WebApp	<b>WebApplicationClassification</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:string</b>	20	+2.0
WebApp	<b>Description</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:string</b>	50	+2.0
WebApp	<b>Staging</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:string</b>	50	+2.0
WebApp	<b>ServerCode</b>	new	No	<b>FK</b>	20	+2.0
WebApp	<b>WebApplication URL</b>	JWV ersion	No	<b>xsd:string</b>	20	1.0
WebApp	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	Date of Issue	No	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	1.0 *
WebApp	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	Date of Last Change	No	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	1.0 *
WebApp	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	Issue Version	No	<b>typed</b>	5	1.0 *
WebApp	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	<b>enum</b>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-15 – NPTG: WebApplications.csv Content**

15.7.6 NPTG Discovery: WebAppCapabilities CSV table +

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
WebAppCap	<b>WebApplicationCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	8	+2.0
WebAppCap	<b>Version</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	20	+2.0
WebAppCap	<b>CapabilityCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK</b>	8	+2.0
WebAppCap	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	1.0 *
WebAppCap	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	1.0 *
WebAppCap	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<b>typed</b>	5	1.0 *
WebAppCap	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	<b>enum</b>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-16 – NPTG: WebAppCapabilities.csv Content**

15.7.7 NPTG Discovery: RegionApplications CSV table +

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
RegionApp	<b>RegionCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	8	1.0
RegionApp	<b>WebApplicationCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	8	+2.0
RegionApp	<b>Version</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	20	+2.0
RegionApp	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	+2.0
RegionApp	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	+2.0
RegionApp	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<b>typed</b>	5	+2.0
RegionApp	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	<b>enum</b>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-17 – NPTG: RegionApplications.csv Content**

15.7.8 NPTG Discovery: AdminAreaApplications CSV table +

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
AdminApp	<b>AdministrativeAreaCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	3	+2.0
AdminApp	<b>WebApplicationCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	10	+2.0
AdminApp	<b>Version</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	20	+2.0
AdminApp	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	Yes	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	+2.0
AdminApp	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<b>xsd:dateTime</b>	25	+2.0
AdminApp	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<b>typed</b>	5	+2.0
AdminApp	<b>Modification</b>	new	No	<b>enum</b>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-18 – NPTG: AdminAreaApplications.csv Content**

15.7.9 NPTG Discovery: LocalityApplications CSV table +

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
LocalityApp	<b>NptgLocalityCode</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	8	+2.0
LocalityApp	<b>WebApplicationCode</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	10	+2.0
LocalityApp	<b>Version</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	20	+2.0
LocalityApp	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	25	+2.0
LocalityApp	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	25	+2.0
LocalityApp	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>typed</i>	5	+2.0
LocalityApp	<b>Modification</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>enum</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-19 – NPTG: LocalityApplications.csv Content**

15.7.10 NPTG Discovery: StopPointApplications CSV table +

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
StopPointApp	<b>AtcoCode</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
StopPointApp	<b>WebApplicationCode</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	10	+2.0
StopPointApp	<b>Version</b>	<i>new</i>	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	20	+2.0
StopPointApp	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	25	+2.0
StopPointApp	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	25	+2.0
StopPointApp	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>typed</i>	5	+2.0
StopPointApp	<b>Modification</b>	<i>new</i>	No	<i>enum</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-20 – NPTG: StopPointApplications.csv Content**

## 15.8 NAPTAN CSV Format

This appendix describes the *NaPTAN* CSV exchange format. It presents:

- A diagram of the *NaPTAN* 1.2 CSV tables and their interrelationships.
- A diagram of the revised *NaPTAN* 2.1 CSV tables and their interrelationships.
- A list of the *NaPTAN* CSV table names.
- Detailed descriptions of the contents of each *NaPTAN* CSV table.

Figure 15-4 shows the previous data fields and relationships between each of the csv exchange tables in the *NaPTAN* 1.2 format.

- *NaPTAN* elements are shown shaded in green. For example, ‘Nat Gaz’.
- Fields deprecated in 1.1 have a ‘-’ against them.
- Derived Fields are shown in brackets. For example, ‘(Lon)’
- Required fields are shown in bold.
- Primary keys are indicated by a ‘PK’. Foreign keys by an ‘FK’.

Figure 15-5 shows the data fields and relationships between each of the CSV exchange tables in the *NaPTAN* 2.1 format. The same conventions are used. In addition:

- *NaPTAN* 2.x schema element names are used as the field names.
- Fields added in 2.0 have a ‘+’ against them. For example ‘Language+’.
- Fields whose types have been revised have a \* against them – this is restricted to revising *Date* to be a *DateTime*. Fields whose enums values are not marked.

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

15.8.1 NaPTAN 1.1 CSV Exchange Format Overview

Figure 15-4 shows the previous data fields and relationships between each of the csv exchange tables in the *NaPTAN* for 1.2

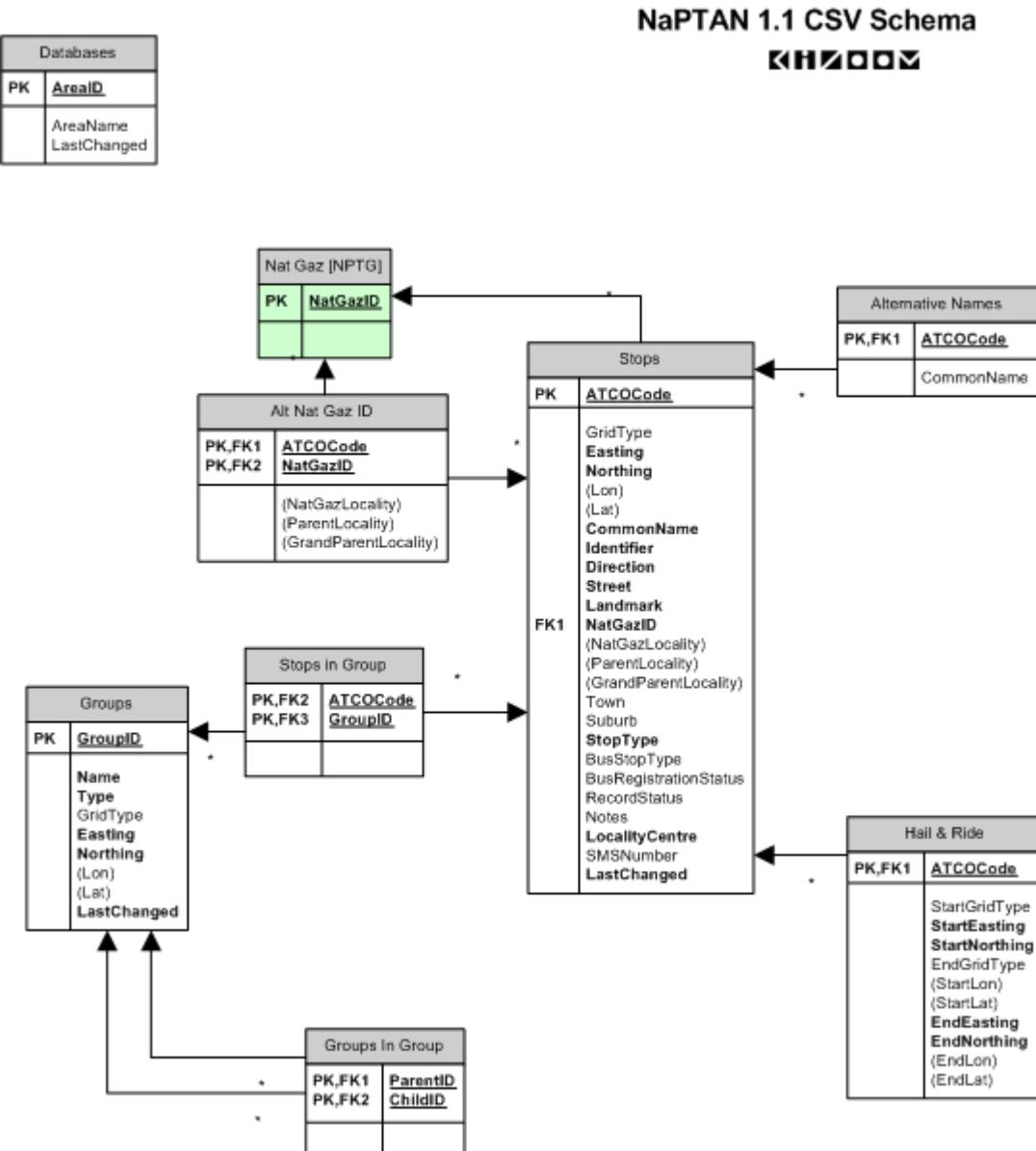


Figure 15-4 – Diagram of NaPTAN 1.1 CSV Tables

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

#### 15.8.2 NaPTAN 2.1 CSV Exchange Format Overview

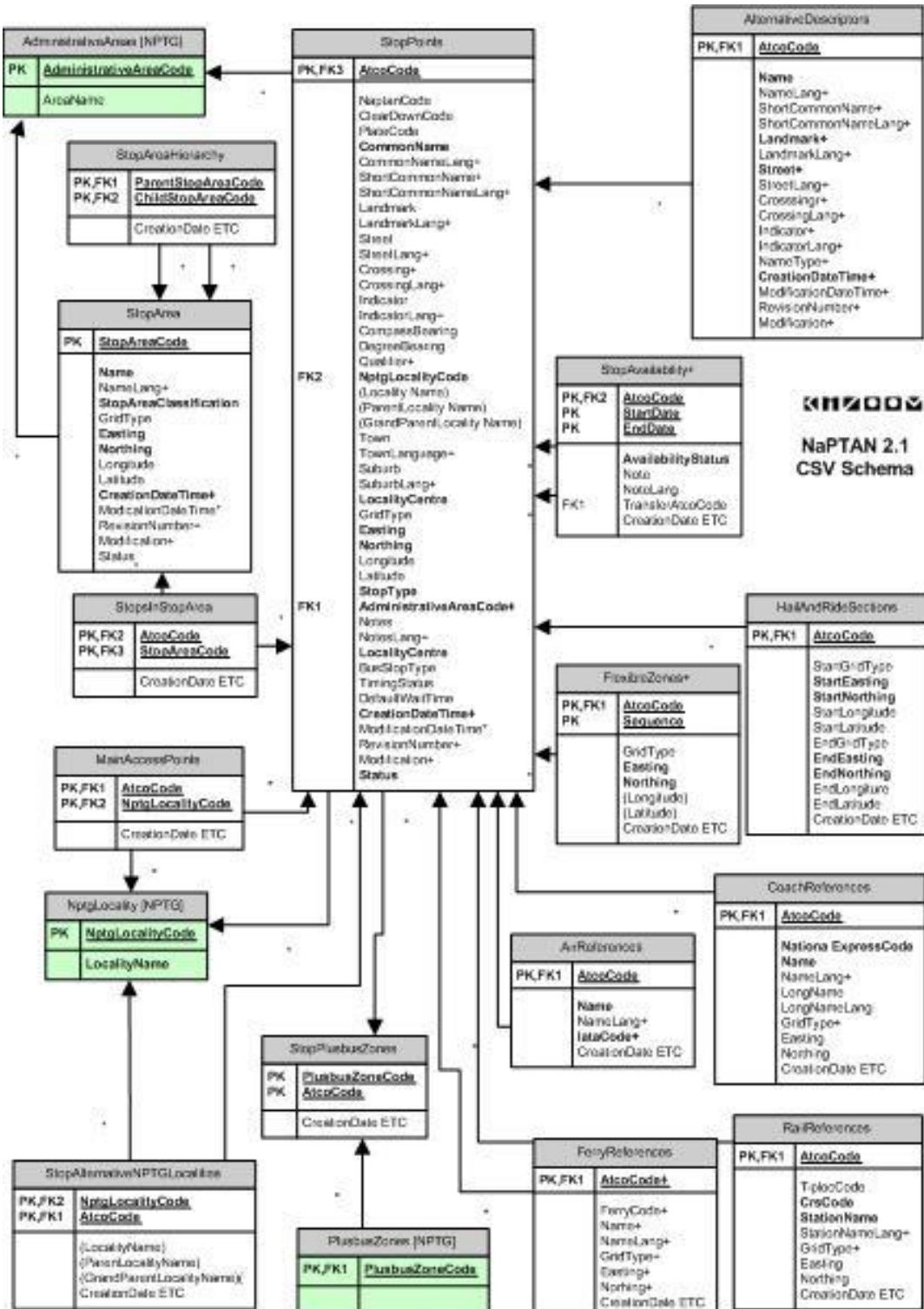


Figure 15-5 – Diagram of NaPTAN 2.1 CSV Tables

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

## 15.9 NaPTAN: CSV Files

	Content	New Name	Old File name		Version
Stop Point	Stop Point	Stops.csv	Stops.csv	Basic	1.0
	Alternative Stop Names	AlternativeDescriptors.csv	AltNames.csv	Basic	1.0
	Additional Gazetteer Entries	StopLocalities.csv	AltNatGaz.csv	Basic	1.0
	Stop Availability	StopAvailability.csv		Basic	+2.0
	Hail & Ride Stop Details	HailRide.csv	HailRide.csv	Basic	1.0
	Flexible Stop Details	Flexible.csv		Basic	+2.0
	Air Reference	AirReferences.csv	Air Exchange.csv	Full	NPTG 1.0
	Ferry Reference	Ferry References.csv		Full	+2.0
	Rail Reference	RailReferences.csv	Rail Exchange.csv	Full	NPTG 1.0
	Metro Reference	MetroReferences.csv		Full	+2.0
	Coach Reference	CoachReferences.csv	Coach Exchange.csv	Full	NPTG 1.0
	Main Stop Points for Locality	LocalityMainAccessPoints.csv		Full	+2.0
	Stop Plusbus Zones	StopPlusbusZones.csv		Full	+2.0
Stop Area	Stop Area	StopAreas.csv	Groups.csv	Basic	1.0
	Stops in Stop Area	StopsInArea.csv	StopsInGroup.csv	Basic	1.0
	Stop Area Hierarchy	AreaHierarchy.csv	GroupsInGroup.csv	Basic	1.0

**Table 15-21 – NaPTAN CSV files**

Table 15-21 Shows the NaPTAN 2.0 CSV files. Each CSV file must contain a header row containing the corresponding field names for each file. Some derived fields are only present in exports from the NaPTAN database. If these derived fields are included in data intended for import into the database they will simply be ignored.

### 15.9.1 NaPTAN: StopPoint CSV table

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
StopPoint	<b>AtcoCode</b>	ATCOCode	Yes	<b>PK</b>	12	1.0
Identifiers	<b>NaptanCode</b>	SMSNumber	No	<b>AK</b>	12	1.0
	<b>PlateCode</b>	new	No	<i>nmtojen</i>	12	2.0
	<b>CleardownCode</b>	new	No	<i>int</i>	10	+2.0
	<b>CommonName</b>	same	Yes	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
Descriptor	<b>CommonNameLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
	<b>ShortCommonName</b>	new	No	<i>placeName</i>	48	+2.0
	<b>ShortCommonNameLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
	<b>Landmark</b>	same	No (2.1)	<i>name</i>	48	1.0
	<b>LandmarkLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
	<b>Street</b>	same	No (2.1)	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
	<b>StreetLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
	<b>Crossing</b>	new	No	<i>placeName</i>	48	+2.0
	<b>CrossingLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
	<b>Indicator</b>	Identifier	No	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
	<b>IndicatorLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
	<b>Bearing</b>	Direction	Yes	<i>bearing</i>	2	1.0
Place	<b>NptgLocalityCode</b>	NatGazID	Yes	<b>FK</b>	8	1.0
--derived	<b>LocalityName</b>	NatGazLocality	Derived	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
--derived	<b>ParentLocalityName</b>	ParentNatGazLocality	Derived	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
--derived	<b>GrandParentLocalityName</b>	NatGazLocality	Derived	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
Place	<b>Town</b>	same	No	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
	<b>TownLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Place	<b>Suburb</b>	same	No	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
	<b>SuburbLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
	<b>Country</b>	new	No	<i>enum</i>		+2.5
StopPoint	<b>LocalityCentre</b>	same	Yes	<i>xsd:boolean</i>	1	*1.0
Place	<b>GridType</b>	same	No	<i>gridType</i>	1	1.0
Place	<b>Easting</b>	same	Yes	<i>easting</i>	6	1.0
Place	<b>Northing</b>	same	Yes	<i>northing</i>	7	1.0
--derived	<b>Longitude</b>	lon	Derived	<i>longitude</i>		1.0
--derived	<b>Latitude</b>	lat	Derived	<i>latitude</i>		1.0
StopPoint	<b>StopType</b>	StopType	Yes	<i>enum</i>	3	1.0
Bus	<b>BusStopType</b>	BusStopType	No	<i>enum</i>	3	1.0
Bus	<b>TimingStatus</b>	BusRegistrationStatus	No	<i>enum</i>	3	1.0

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

Parent Element	CSV Field /Element	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
Bus	<b>DefaultWaitTime</b>	DefaultWaitTime	No	duration		
StopPoint	<b>Notes</b>	same	No	nlString	*	1.0
StopPoint	<b>NotesLang+</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0
StopPoint	<b>AdministrativeAreaCode+</b>	new	Yes	FK	8	+2.0
StopPoint	<b>MobilityImpairedAccess</b>	new	No	enum	7	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>WheelchairAccess</b>	new	No	enum	7	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>StepFreeAccess</b>	new	No	enum	7	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>LiftFreeAccess</b>	new	No	enum	7	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>EscalatorFreeAccess</b>	new	No	enum	7	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>AssistanceService</b>	new	No	enum	7	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>ServicesNormally- Accessibles</b>	new	No	enum	22	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>AccessibilityNote</b>	new	No	xml:language	*	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>InfolI</b>	new	No	Xsd:anyURI	*	+2.5
StopPoint	<b>CreationDateTime+</b>	new	No	xsd:dateTime	10	+2.0
StopPoint	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	LastChanged	No	xsd:dateTime	10	*1.0
StopPoint	<b>RevisionNumber+</b>	new	No	revision	5	+2.0
StopPoint	<b>Modification</b>	RecordStatus	No	modification	3	1.0
StopPoint	<b>Status</b>	RecordStatus	No	enum	3	1.0

**Table 15-22 – NaPTAN: Stops.csv Content**

- (1) FLX stop type is added to **BusStopType**.
- (2) PEN (Pending) status is added to **Status**.

15.9.2 NaPTAN: Hail & Ride CSV Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
HailAndRideSection	<b>AtcoCode</b>	ATCOCode	Yes	PK, FK	12	1.0
	<b>StartGridType</b>	same	Yes	gridType	1	1.0
StartPoint	<b>StartEasting</b>	same	Yes	easting	6	1.0
	<b>StartNorthing</b>	same	Yes	northing	7	1.0
EndPoint	<b>EndGridType</b>	same	Yes	gridType	1	1.0
	<b>EndEasting</b>	same	Yes	easting	6	1.0
	<b>EndNorthing</b>	same	Yes	northing	7	1.0
HailAndRideSection	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	xsd:dateTime	10	+2.0
HailAndRideSection	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	xsd:dateTime	10	+2.0
HailAndRideSection	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	revision	5	+2.0
HailAndRideSection	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	modification	3	+2.0

**Table 15-23 – NaPTAN: HailRide.csv Content**

15.9.3 NaPTAN: Flexible CSV Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
FlexibleZone	<b>AtcoCode</b>	new	Yes	PK, FK	12	2.0
FlexibleZone	<b>Sequence</b>	new	Yes	xsd:integer	5	2.0
Location	<b>GridType</b>	new	Yes	gridType	1	2.0
Location	<b>Easting</b>	new	Yes	easting	6	2.0
Location	<b>Northing</b>	new	Yes	northing	7	2.0
FlexibleZone	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	xsd:dateTime	10	+2.0
FlexibleZone	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	xsd:dateTime	10	+2.0
FlexibleZone	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	revision	5	+2.0
FlexibleZone	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	modification	3	+2.0

**Table 15-24 – NaPTAN: Flexible.csv Content**

15.9.4 NaPTAN: AlternativeDescriptor Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
Descriptor	<b>AtcoCode</b>	ATCOCode	Yes	PK, FK	12	1.0
Descriptor	<b>CommonName</b>	same	Yes	placeName	48	1.0
CommonName	<b>CommonNameLang+</b>	new	No	xml:language	2	+2.0

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

Descriptor	<b>ShortName</b>	same	Yes	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
ShortName	<b>ShortCommonNameLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>Landmark</b>	same	No (2.1)	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
LandMark	<b>LandmarkLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>Street</b>	same	No (2.1)	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
Street	<b>StreetLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>Crossing</b>	same	Yes	<i>placeName</i>	48	+2.0
Crossing	<b>CrossingLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>Indicator</b>	Identifier	Yes	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
Indicator	<b>IndicatorLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	Yes	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
Descriptor	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-25 – NaPTAN: AlternativeDescriptor.csv Content**

15.9.5 NaPTAN: StopLocalities Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
AltLocalities	<b>AtcoCode</b>	ATCOCode	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	1.0
AltLocalities	<b>NptgLocalityCode</b>	NatGazID	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	8	1.0
--derived	<b>(LocalityName)</b>	NatGazLocality	Derived	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
--derived	<b>(ParentLocalityName)</b>	ParentNatGazLocality	Derived	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
--derived	<b>(GrandParentLocalityName)</b>	NatGazLocality	Derived	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
AltLocalities	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
AltLocalities	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
AltLocalities	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
AltLocalities	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-26 – NaPTAN: StopLocalities.csv Content**

15.9.6 NaPTAN: StopAvailabilities Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
StopAvailability	<b>AtcoCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>StartDate</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, xsd:date</b>	8	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>EndDate</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:date</i>	8	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>AvailabilityStatus</b>	new	Yes	<i>Enum (Active / Suspended / Transferred)</i>	48	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>Note</b>	new	No	<i>nString</i>	*	+2.0
Note	<b>NoteLang+</b>	new	No	<i>language</i>	2	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>TransferStopAtcoCode</b>	new	No	<b>FK</b>	12	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
StopAvailability	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-27 – NaPTAN: StopAvailabilities.csv Content**

15.9.7 NaPTAN: StopsInStopArea Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
StopAreaRef	<b>StopAreaCode</b>	GroupID	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	1.0
StopAreaRef	<b>AtcoCode</b>	ATCOCode	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	1.0
StopAreaRef	<b>CreationDateTime+</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
StopAreaRef	<b>ModificationDateTime+</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
StopAreaRef	<b>RevisionNumber+</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
StopAreaRef	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-28 – NaPTAN: StopsInStopArea.csv Content**

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

15.9.8 NaPTAN: AirReferences Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
AirReference	<b>AtcoCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
AirReference	<b>IataCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>code</b>	12	+2.0
AirReference	<b>Name</b>	same	No	<i>nString</i>	48	1.0
Name	<b>NameLang</b>	new	Yes	<i>enum</i>	2	+2.0
AirReference	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	1.0*
AirReference	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
AirReference	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	1.0*
AirReference	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-29 – NaPTAN: AirReferences.csv Content**

15.9.9 NaPTAN: RailReferences Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
RailReference	<b>AtcoCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
RailReference	<b>TiplocCode</b>	Tiploc Code	Yes	<b>code</b>	12	1.0
RailReference	<b>CrsCode</b>	Crs Code	No	<b>code</b>	5	1.0
RailReference	<b>StationName</b>	Station Name	No	<i>nString</i>	48	1.0
StationName	<b>StationNameLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Location	<b>GridType</b>	new	No	<i>gridType</i>	1	+2.0
Location	<b>Easting</b>	same	Yes	<i>easting</i>	6	1.0
Location	<b>Northing</b>	same	Yes	<i>northing</i>	7	1.0
RailReference	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	1.0*
RailReference	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
RailReference	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	1.0*
RailReference	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-30 – NaPTAN: RailReferences.csv Content**

15.9.10 NaPTAN: FerryReferences Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
FerryReference	<b>AtcoCode+</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
FerryReference	<b>FerryCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, Code</b>	12	+2.0
FerryReference	<b>Name</b>	same	No	<i>nString</i>	48	+2.0
Name	<b>NameLang+</b>	new	Yes	<i>enum</i>	2	+2.0
Location	<b>GridType+</b>	new	No	<i>gridType</i>	1	+2.0
Location	<b>Easting</b>	same	Yes	<i>easting</i>	6	+2.0
Location	<b>Northing</b>	same	Yes	<i>northing</i>	7	+2.0
FerryReference	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
FerryReference	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
FerryReference	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
FerryReference	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-31 – NaPTAN: FerryReferences.csv Content**

15.9.11 NaPTAN: MetroReferences Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
MetroRef	<b>AtcoCode+</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
MetroRef	<b>MetroCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, Code</b>	12	+2.0
MetroRef	<b>Name</b>	same	No	<i>nString</i>	48	+2.0
Name	<b>NameLang+</b>	new	Yes	<i>enum</i>	2	+2.0
Location	<b>GridType+</b>	new	No	<i>gridType</i>	1	+2.0
Location	<b>Easting</b>	same	Yes	<i>easting</i>	6	+2.0
Location	<b>Northing</b>	same	Yes	<i>northing</i>	7	+2.0
MetroRef	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
MetroRef	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
MetroRef	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
MetroRef	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

**Table 15-32 – NaPTAN: MetroReferences.csv Content**

15.9.12 NaPTAN: CoachReferences Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
CoachRef	<b>AtcoCode+</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
CoachRef	<b>OperatorCode</b>	new	No	<b>code</b>	12	+2.1
CoachRef	<b>NationalCoachCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, Code</b>	12	1.0
CoachRef	<b>Name</b>	same	No	<i>nString</i>	48	1.0
Name	<b>NameLang+</b>	new	Yes	<i>enum</i>	2	+2.0
CoachRef	<b>LongName</b>	new	No	<i>nString</i>	48	1.0
LongName	<b>LongNameLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
Location	<b>GridType+</b>	new	No	<i>gridType</i>	1	+2.0
Location	<b>Easting</b>	same	Yes	<i>easting</i>	6	1.0
Location	<b>Northing</b>	same	Yes	<i>northing</i>	7	1.0
CoachRef	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>dateTime</i>	10	1.0*
CoachRef	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
CoachRef	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	1.0*
CoachRef	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-33 – NaPTAN: CoachReferences.csv Content**

15.9.13 NaPTAN: LocalityMainAccessPoints Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
MainAcces	<b>AtcoCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
MainAcces	<b>NptgLocalityCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	8	+2.0
MainAcces	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
MainAcces	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
MainAcces	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
MainAcces	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-34 – NaPTAN: LocalityMainAccessPoints.csv Content**

15.9.14 NaPTAN: StopPlusBusZones Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
StopPlusbusZone	<b>AtcoCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	+2.0
StopPlusbusZone	<b>PlusbusZoneCode</b>	new	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	10	+2.0
StopPlusbusZone	<b>CreationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
StopPlusbusZone	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
StopPlusbusZone	<b>RevisionNumber</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
StopPlusbusZone	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-35 – NaPTAN: StopPlusBusZones.csv Content**

15.9.15 NaPTAN: StopAreas (Groups Table)

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
StopArea	<b>StopAreaCode</b>	GroupID	Yes	<b>PK</b>	12	1.0
StopArea	<b>Name</b>	GroupName	Yes	<i>placeName</i>	48	1.0
Name	<b>NameLang+</b>	new	No	<i>xml:language</i>	2	+2.0
StopArea	<b>AdministrativeAreaCode+</b>	new	Yes	<b>FK</b>	8	+2.0
StopArea	<b>StopAreaType</b>	Type	Yes	<i>enum (1)</i>	4	1.0
Location	<b>GridType</b>	same	No	<i>gridType</i>	1	1.0
Location	<b>Easting</b>	same	Yes	<i>easting</i>	6	1.0
Location	<b>Northing</b>	same	Yes	<i>northing</i>	7	1.0
StopArea	<b>CreationDateTime+</b>	new	Yes	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
StopArea	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	LastChanged	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	1.0
StopArea	<b>RevisionNumber+</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
StopArea	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0
StopPoint	<b>Status</b>	new	No	<i>enum</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-36 – NaPTAN: StopAreas.csv Content**

- (1) **StopAreaType** values as for XML schema.
- (2) GCCH added to **StopAreaType**.

15.9.16 NaPTAN: StopAreaHierarchy Table

Parent Element	Transfer Field	Old CSV Field Name	Mandatory	Type	Size	V
ParentStopArea	<b>ParentStopAreaCode</b>	ParentID	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	1.0
ParentStopArea	<b>ChildStopAreaCode</b>	ChildID	Yes	<b>PK, FK</b>	12	1.0
ParentStopArea	<b>CreationDateTime+</b>	new	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
ParentStopArea	<b>ModificationDateTime</b>	LastChanged	No	<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	10	+2.0
ParentStopArea	<b>RevisionNumber+</b>	new	No	<i>revision</i>	5	+2.0
ParentStopArea	<b>Modification+</b>	new	No	<i>modification</i>	3	+2.0

**Table 15-37 – NaPTAN: StopAreaHierarchy.csv Content**

### 15.10 Common CSV Types

The NaPTAN and NPTG CSV schemas use a only a small number of common data types. These are documented in Table 15-38.

Note that csv GridType enumerations are changed in 2.0 to follow the 2.0 XML – Blank or UKOS denotes UK grid (1.1 OSGR), IrishOS denotes Irish Grid (Irish Grid letter)

Data Type	Size	Default Value	Notes	Example	V
<i>placeName</i>	48	--	Extension of Natural language string. Not empty. Only characters, letters accents and ! ' - / permitted.	Westward Ho!	1.0*
<i>nlString</i>	*	--	Natural language string. Not empty. Associated with a <i>language</i> field.		1.0
<i>xsd:string</i>	*	--	Any character	Hello world?	1.0*
<i>xsd:dateTime</i>	15 ??	--	Yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss:nn:zz ISO format	2004-12-17T09:30:47-05:00	1.0*
<i>xml:language</i>	2	en	ISO types en or cy	en	1.0
<i>gridType</i>	1	U	Blank or U = UkOS   I = IrishOS	U	1.0
<i>easting</i>	6	0	OS easting	505000	1.0
<i>northing</i>	7	0	OS northing	185000	1.0
<i>longitude</i>	8	0	WGS 84 longitude		1.0
<i>latitude</i>	8	0	WGS 84 latitude		1.0
<i>bearing</i>	2		Enum of S   SE   SW   N   NE   NW   E   W	S	1.0
<i>BearingDegrees</i>	2		0-360	48	2.0+
<i>apd:email</i>	*		aa@bbb	me@foo.org	2.0+
<i>apd:phone</i>	18		Apd type country + code + extension	+442072699890	2.0+
<i>ipAddress</i>	15		999.999.999.999	196.168.0.1	2.0+
<i>revision</i>	5	0	Integer incrementing	00045	1.0
<i>modification</i>	3	revised	new = new   del = deleted   rev = revised   (1)	rev	1.0*
<i>status</i>	3	OTH	act = Active, pen = Pending, del = Inactive	act	1.0*
<i>code</i>			Used for codes – no embedded blanks		

**Table 15-38 – Common NPTG and NaPTAN CSV Data Types**

### 15.11 ATCO & AdministrativeArea Codes

ATCO Code	Admin Area Name	Trave-ine Rgn	Ctry	Admin Area
639	Aberdeen	S	Sct	111
630	Aberdeenshire	S	Sct	112
649	Angus	S	Sct	113
607	Argyll & Bute	S	Sct	114
18	Bath & North East Somerset	SW	Eng	1
20	Bedford	SE	Eng	69
258	Blackburn with Darwen	NW	Eng	2
259	Blackpool	NW	Eng	3
532	Blaenau Gwent	W	Wal	4
129	Bournemouth	SW	Eng	5
38	Bracknell Forest	SE	Eng	6
551	Bridgend	W	Wal	7
149	Brighton and Hove	SE	Eng	8
10	Bristol	SW	Eng	9
40	Buckinghamshire	SE	Eng	70
554	Caerphilly	W	Wal	10
50	Cambridgeshire	EA	Eng	71
571	Cardiff	W	Wal	11
522	Carmarthenshire	W	Wal	12
21	Central Bedfordshire	SE	Eng	151
523	Ceredigion	W	Wal	13
60	Cheshire East	NW	Eng	72
61	Cheshire West & Chester	NW	Eng	152
668	Clackmannanshire	S	Sct	116
513	Conwy	W	Wal	14
80	Cornwall	SW	Eng	73
90	Cumbria	NE	Eng	74
76	Darlington	NE	Eng	15
511	Denbighshire	W	Wal	16
109	Derby	EM	Eng	17
100	Derbyshire	EM	Eng	75
110	Devon	SW	Eng	76
120	Dorset	SW	Eng	77
680	Dumfries & Galloway	S	Sct	118
640	Dundee	S	Sct	119
130	Durham	NE	Eng	78
618	East Ayrshire	S	Sct	120
611	East Dunbartonshire	S	Sct	121
627	East Lothian	S	Sct	122

612	East Renfrewshire	S	Sct	123
220	East Riding of Yorkshire	Y	Eng	18
140	East Sussex	SE	Eng	79
620	Edinburgh	S	Sct	124
150	Essex	SE	Eng	80
111	Exeter *	SW	Eng	153
669	Falkirk	S	Sct	125
650	Fife	S	Sct	126
512	Flintshire	W	Wal	19
609	Glasgow	S	Sct	127
160	Gloucestershire	SW	Eng	81
490	Greater London	L	Eng	82
180	Greater Manchester	NW	Eng	83
540	Gwynedd	W	Wal	20
68	Halton	NW	Eng	21
190	Hampshire	SW	Eng	84
75	Hartlepool	NE	Eng	22
209	Herefordshire	WM	Eng	23
210	Hertfordshire	SE	Eng	85
670	Highland	S	Sct	128
613	Inverclyde	S	Sct	129
541	Isle of Anglesey	W	Wal	24
230	Isle of Wight	SE	Eng	25
240	Kent	SE	Eng	86
229	Kingston upon Hull	Y	Eng	26
250	Lancashire	NW	Eng	87
269	Leicester	EM	Eng	27
260	Leicestershire	EM	Eng	88
270	Lincolnshire	EM	Eng	89
29	Luton	SE	Eng	28
249	Medway	SE	Eng	29
280	Merseyside	NW	Eng	90
553	Merthyr Tydfil	W	Wal	30
79	Middlesbrough	NE	Eng	31
628	Midlothian	S	Sct	130
49	Milton Keynes	SE	Eng	32
533	Monmouthshire	W	Wal	33
638	Moray	S	Sct	131
920	National - National Air	GB	GB	145
900	National - National Coach	GB	GB	143
930	National - National Ferry	GB	GB	146

**Department for Transport**  
NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

Annex

Appendices

910	National - National Rail	GB	GB	110
910	National - National Rail	GB	GB	144
940	National - National Tram	GB	GB	147
582	Neath Port Talbot	W	Wal	34
531	Newport	W	Wal	35
290	Norfolk	EA	Eng	91
617	North Ayrshire	S	Sct	132
228	North East Lincolnshire	EM	Eng	36
616	North Lanarkshire	S	Sct	133
227	North Lincolnshire	EM	Eng	37
19	North Somerset	SW	Eng	38
291	Norwich *	SW	Eng	154
320	North Yorkshire	Y	Eng	92
300	Northamptonshire	EM	Eng	93
310	Northumberland	NE	Eng	94
339	Nottingham	EM	Eng	39
330	Nottinghamshire	EM	Eng	95
602	Orkney Islands	S	Sct	134
340	Oxfordshire	SE	Eng	96
521	Pembrokeshire	W	Wal	40
648	Perth & Kinross	S	Sct	135
59	Peterborough	EM	Eng	41
118	Plymouth	SW	Eng	42
128	Poole	SW	Eng	43
199	Portsmouth	SW	Eng	44
561	Powys	W	Wal	45
39	Reading	SE	Eng	46
78	Redcar & Cleveland	NE	Eng	47
614	Renfrewshire	S	Sct	136
552	Rhondda Cynon Taff	W	Wal	48
268	Rutland	EM	Eng	49
690	Scottish Borders	S	Sct	115
603	Shetland Islands	S	Sct	137
350	Shropshire	WM	Eng	97
37	Slough	SE	Eng	50
360	Somerset	SW	Eng	98

619	South Ayrshire	S	Sct	138
17	South Gloucestershire	SW	Eng	51
615	South Lanarkshire	S	Sct	139
370	South Yorkshire	Y	Eng	99
198	Southampton	SW	Eng	52
158	Southend-on-Sea	SE	Eng	53
380	Staffordshire	WM	Eng	100
660	Stirling	S	Sct	140
77	Stockton-on-Tees	NE	Eng	54
389	Stoke-on-Trent	WM	Eng	55
390	Suffolk	EA	Eng	101
400	Surrey	SE	Eng	102
581	Swansea	W	Wal	56
468	Swindon	SW	Eng	57
359	Telford & Wrekin	WM	Eng	58
159	Thurrock	SE	Eng	59
119	Torbay	SW	Eng	60
534	Torfaen	W	Wal	61
410	Tyne & Wear	NE	Eng	103
572	Vale of Glamorgan	W	Wal	62
69	Warrington	NW	Eng	63
420	Warwickshire	WM	Eng	104
30	West Berkshire	SE	Eng	64
608	West Dunbartonshire	S	Sct	117
629	West Lothian	S	Sct	141
430	West Midlands	WM	Eng	105
440	West Sussex	SE	Eng	106
450	West Yorkshire	Y	Eng	107
601	Western Isles	S	Sct	142
460	Wiltshire	SW	Eng	108
36	Windsor & Maidenhead	SE	Eng	65
35	Wokingham	SE	Eng	66
200	Worcestershire	WM	Eng	109
514	Wrexham	W	Wal	67
329	York	Y	Eng	68

\* : TABLE ALREADY INCLUDES EXETER AND NORWICH FROM APRIL 2011

## 15.12 Index

- &  
In Stop Names, 74  
<odes  
Network, 129  
910  
National Code, 93, 101  
920  
National Code, 65  
940  
Metro prefix, 108  
Abbreviations  
NPTG Locality Names, 47  
Standard list, 215  
Use in Stop Names, 74  
Access Areas  
Transport, 66  
AccessArea  
Air, 64  
Airport, 114  
Bus & Coach, 65, 117  
Ferry, 65  
Ferry Port, 114  
Metro, 65, 66, 116, 118  
NaPTAN Model, 52  
Point of interest, 132  
Rail, 65, 115  
Accessibility. *See* Stop Accessibility  
Booking, 57  
AccessVehicle  
Accessibility, 122, 123  
Stop Accessibility, 121  
Acronyms  
NPTG Locality Names, 47  
Active  
status, 191  
Status, 191  
Stop Status, 75  
Stop Validity Status, 119  
Versioning, 192  
AddressTypes-v1-3.xsd  
Package, 202  
Adjacent Localities  
CSV, 223  
Adjacent Region Points  
CSV, 223  
AdjacentLocality.csv  
Table, 220  
AdjacentLocalityRefr  
Change Attributes, 194  
AdjacentRegionExchangePoint  
Change Attributes, 194  
AdjacentRegionExchangePoints  
Discovery Model, 82  
AdjacentRegionPoint  
NPTG Discovery Element, 139  
AdjacentRegionPoints  
Element, 135  
AdminAreas.csv  
Table, 219  
administrative area, 28  
Administrative area  
Export, 28  
Administrative Area  
ATCO codes, 66  
Boundaries, 64  
Choosing, 43  
Stop Types, 108  
AdministrativeArea  
Change Attributes, 194  
Element, 92  
NaPTAN Model, 49  
NPTG Locality, 95  
NPTG Model, 34  
NptgLocality Model, 32  
**Point of Interest**, 131  
Region Element, 92  
Stop points, 107  
AdministrativeAreaCode  
Element, 92  
Uniqueness, 206  
AdministrativeAreaName  
Uniqueness, 207  
AdministrativeAreaRef  
NaPTAN element, 107, 131  
NaPTAN Integrity, 209  
Networks, 129  
NPTG Discovery, 208  
Stop Areas, 128  
WebApplication, 137  
AdministrativeAreas  
CSV, 220  
Air  
Air Entrance Stop Type, 108  
NaPTAN Model, 52  
Off-Street Stop Classification, 113  
AIR  
Airport Entrance Stop Type, 76, 108  
Stop Point Type, 54, 64  
Airport  
Example, 181  
Airport  
Names, 75  
Stop Area, 69  
Stop Areas, 69  
Stop Points, 64  
Airport  
Terminal Entrances, 113  
Airport Entrance  
Stop Type, 76  
Airport Interchange  
Stop Type, 76  
AlphaPrefix  
Element, 93  
NaptanCode, 102  
AlternativeDescriptor  
Change Attributes, 193, 194  
CSV, 230  
NaPTAN Model, 48  
NPTG Locality, 95  
NptgLocality, 32  
Stop Point, 105  
AlternativeName  
NaPTAN Integrity, 209  
AlternativeName / Name  
Uniqueness, 207  
AlternativeNptgLocalities  
Stop Point, 105  
AlternativeNptgLocalityRef  
Change Attributes, 193  
Ampersand  
Administrative Areas, 43  
AnnotatedAirRef  
Change Attributes, 193  
AnnotatedAirRef  
Element, 114  
NaPTAN Model, 52  
AnnotatedCablewayRef  
Element, 118  
AnnotatedCoachRef  
Change Attributes, 194  
AnnotatedCoachRef  
Element, 117  
Element, on-street, 111  
NaPTAN Model, 52  
AnnotatedFerryRef  
Change Attributes, 194  
AnnotatedFerryRef  
Element, 114  
NaPTAN Model, 52  
AnnotatedMetroRef  
Change Attributes, 194  
AnnotatedMetroRef  
Element, 116  
NaPTAN Model, 52  
AnnotatedRailRef  
Change Attributes, 194  
AnnotatedRailRef  
Element, 115  
NaPTAN Model, 52  
AnnotatedVenueRef  
Element, 132  
Apostrophes  
In Stop Names, 73  
NPTG Locality Names, 47  
Articles  
NPTG Locality Names, 47  
AssistanceNeeded  
Element, 124  
AssistanceServiceAvailability  
Stop Accessibility, 121  
AssistanceTimes  
Stop Accessibility, 122  
AssistedBoardingLocation  
Element, 124  
Associations  
Status, 192  
AtcoAreaCode  
Administrative Area element, 92  
Stop Point, 101  
ATCO-CIF  
Standards, 22  
AtcoCode  
Allocating, 66  
Identifiers, 26  
Identifiers, 87  
NaPTAN Integrity, 208  
NaPTAN Stop Point, 101, 131  
Atomicity Principle  
Stop Names, 71  
AutomaticDoors  
Element, 123  
Availability. *See* Stop Availability  
CallCentre, 140, 141  
Bay  
Bus & Coach, 117  
NaPTAN Model, 52

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

<b>BCE</b>	<b>BusStopClassificationGroup</b>	<b>CoachRef</b>
Bus & Coach Station Entrance	Group, 111	Element, 117
Stop Type, 76	CablewayRef	Comma Separated Variable. <i>See</i>
Example, 177	Element, 118	CSV
Stop Point Type, 54, 65	Call Centre	Commas
<b>BCQ</b>	AreasCSV, 224	In Stop Names, 73
Stop Point Type, 54, 65	CSV, 224	<b>Common Name</b>
Variable Bus Stop Type, 108	<b>CallCentre</b>	Presentation, 77
Variable Stop Type, 77	Change Attributes, 194	<b>CommonName</b>
<b>BCS</b>	Element, 135	Maximum Length, 93
Bus & Coach Station Stop	NPTG Discovery Element, 139	Naming, 70
Type, 76, 108	<b>CallCentreCode</b>	Stop Point descriptor, 104
Bus and Coach Station Bus	Identifiers, 87	<b>CommonSimpleTypes.xsd</b>
Stop Type, 76	Uniqueness, 208	Package, 202
Example, 177	<b>CallCentreRef</b>	<b>CompassPoint</b>
Stop Point Type, 54	CallCentre, 140	Bearing, 147
<b>BCT</b>	<b>CallCentres</b>	<b>ContactEmail</b>
Bus Coach Stop Type, 108	Discovery Model, 82	Administrative Area, 93
Stop Point Type, 54	<b>Camel Case</b>	<b>ContactTelephone</b>
<b>Bearing</b>	Conventions, 184	Administrative Area, 93
Bus Stop Points, 111	<b>CapabilityClassification</b>	<b>Cosham</b>
Element, 147	NPTG Discovery Element, 136	Example, 149
Hail & Ride Section, 112	<b>Capitalization</b>	<b>Country</b>
Stop Naming, 70	NPTG Locality, 45	NaPTAN place element, 105
<b>Berth</b>	Stop Names, 72	Plusbus, 98
Ferry Port, 114	<b>Carl Bro</b>	Region element, 92
<b>BoardingHeight</b>	NaPTAN Development, 15	<b>Coverage</b>
Element, 123	<b>Category</b>	Discovery Model, 82
<b>Borough</b>	Point of Interest, 133	<b>CreationDateTime</b>
NptgLocality, 32	<b>Change Attributes</b>	Attribute, 185, 186
<b>Brackets</b>	NPTG Schema, 90	Change Attribute, 190, 194
NPTG Locality Names, 46	<b>Changes</b>	Discovery Schema, 134
<b>BST</b>	Release 2.1, 19	NaPTAN Schema, 99
Bus & Coach Access Stop	Release 2.2, 19	NPTG Schema, 90
Type, 108	Release 2.3, 19	Schema attribute, 189
Stop Point Type, 54	Release 2.4, 19	<b>Crossing</b>
<b>Bus</b>	Release 2.5, 19	In Bus Stop Names, 72
NaPTAN Model, 52	<b>ChangesSince</b>	NaPTAN descriptor element, 104
On-Street, 52	NaPTAN Schema, 100	Stop Naming, 70
Stop Type, 76, 108	<b>Character Set</b>	<b>Crown Copyright</b>
<b>Bus &amp; Coach Station</b>	Allowed values, 45	NaPTAN IPR, 17
Stop type, 76	Forbidden values, 45	<b>CRS</b>
<b>Bus and Coach Station</b>	Forbidden values, 45	<i>See. See CrsRef</i>
Stop Points, 65	NPTG Locality Name, 97	<b>CrsRef</b>
<b>Bus Entrance</b>	Stop Names, 72	Rail Stop Point, 115
Stop Type, 76	<b>Choosing Stop Names</b> , 64	<b>CSV</b>
<b>Bus Interchange</b>	<b>City</b>	Exchange format, 216
Example, 159	NPTG Settlement, 95	NaPTAN, 26
<b>Bus or Coach Station</b>	<b>City Centre</b>	NPTG, 25
Stop Area, 69	NPTG Locality, 44	<b>CUS</b>
<b>Bus Station</b>	<b>CleardownCode</b>	Bus Stop Point Type, 54
Example, 177	Identifiers, 87	Custom Bus Stop Type, 76
<b>Bus Stop</b>	NaPTAN element, 103	<b>Custom</b>
Example both sides, different	<b>CleardownRange</b>	Bus Stop CUS, 76
names, 149, 151	Element, 93	<b>Data Export</b>
Example one side only, 157	<b>Coach</b>	Process, 28
Example one side only,	National Codes, 66	<b>Data Import</b>
landmark, 154	Stop Area, 69	Process, 28
<b>Bus Stop</b>	Stop Points, 64	<b>Data types</b>
Names, 71	Stop Type, 76	Common, 206
<b>Bus Stop</b>	<b>Coach Reference</b>	CSV, 235
Hail & Ride, 161	Stop Point, 111	principles, 185
<b>Bus Stop</b>	<b>Coach station</b>	<b>DataSource</b>
Flexible Zones, 163	Stop Point, 117, 118	NaPTAN Schema, 100
<b>BusAndCoach</b>	<b>Coach Station</b>	<b>DateRange</b>
Off-Street Stop Classification,	Entrances, 66	Stop Validity, 119
117	<b>Coach Station Entrance</b>	<b>DayOffset</b>
<b>BusCoach</b>	Stop Type, 76	Element, 125
Bus & Coach Stop	<b>CoachCode</b>	<b>DaysOfWeek</b>
Classification, 108	NaPTAN Integrity, 210	

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

Element, 125, 126	Pole One Side Only with Landmark, 154	GBPS
DayType	Poles Both Sides of the Road with Different Common Names, 151	Example, 149, 151
Element, 125	Poles Both Sides of the Road with One Landmark, 149	Stop Area Type, 54, 128
DayTypes	Rail Station, 166	<i>GCCH</i>
Call Centres, 141	Examples	Coach Stop Area, 69
DefaultWaitTime	Introduction, 148	Guidance, 64
NaPTAN Element, 111	FBT	Stop Area Type, 54, 128
Degrees	Stop Point Type, 54	<i>GCLS</i>
Bearing, 147	FER	Example, 159
Delete	Stop Point Type, 54	Guidance, 64
Modification, 190	Ferry	Stop Area, 68
Department for Transport	NaPTAN Model, 52	Stop Area Type, 54, 128
IPR, 17	Off-Street Stop Classification, 114	geocode. <i>See</i> Location
JourneyWeb, 212	Stop Area, 69	Geocoding
NaPTAN, 14	Stop Points, 65	NPTG Localities, 47
TransModel, 212	FerryCode	<i>GFTD</i>
TransXChange, 212	NaPTAN Integrity, 210	Ferry Stop Area, 68
Descriptor	FerryRef	Stop Area Type, 54, 65, 128
NaPTAN Model, 48	Element, 114	<i>GMLT</i>
NaPTAN Stop Point, 103, 104	FileName	Deprecated Stop Area Type, 128
NPTG Locality, 95	Attribute, 185, 186	<i>GOTH</i>
Stop Area, 69	Discovery Schema, 134	Deprecated Stop Area Type, 128
Stop Names, 70	NaPTAN Schema, 99	GovTalk
DirectTelephone	NPTG Schema, 90	IPR, 17
CallCentre, 140	Flexible	NaPTAN, 16
Disambiguation	Bus Stop Type, 76	Reference, 214
Stop Names, 77	Flexible Stop	<i>GPBS</i>
Discovery. <i>See</i> NPTG Discovery	CSV, 230	Example, 166
District	Flexible Zones	On-street Pole Bus Stop Area, 68
NPTG, 95	Example, 163	Grid
Districts.csv	FlexibleZone	Standards, 23
Table, 220	Change Attributes, 193	GridType
Document	FlexibleZone	Location, 146
File name, 90	Bus Stop Classification, 113	NaPTAN Schema, 90, 100
Duration	FlexibleZone Bus Stop Type, 108, 110	<i>GRLS</i>
Data type, 145	NaPTAN Model, 52	Example, 166
Easting	FLX	Rail Station Stop Area, 69
Location, 146	Bus Stop Point Type, 54	Stop Area Type, 54, 65, 128
Email	Flexible Bus Stop Type, 76	<i>GTMU</i>
Transport of Schemas, 26	FLX'	Example, 172
EndArea	Example, 163	Stop Area Type, 54, 65, 66, 128
Point of interest, 132	FromRegionRef	Tram Metro Underground Stop Area, 69
EndPoint	AdjacentRegionPoints, 139	Guidance
Hail & Ride Section, 112	FTD	NaPTAN Stop Names, 64
EndTime	Ferry Entrance Stop Type, 76	NPTG Names, 43
Element, 125	Ferry Terminal Coach Stop Type, 108	GuideDogsAllowed
Entrance	Stop Point Type, 54, 65	Element, 124
Air, 64	FTP	Hail & Ride
Airport, 113	Transport of Schemas, 26	Example, 161
Bus, 65	GAIR	Hail & Ride
Bus & Coach, 117	Airport Stop Area, 68	Bus Stop, 76
Ferry Port, 114	Stop Area Type, 54, 65, 128	Coordinates, 76
Metro, 65, 66, 116, 118	GapToPlatform	Location, 106
NaPTAN Model, 52	Element, 123	Hail & Ride
Point of interest, 132	GAT	CSV, 230
Rail, 65, 115	Air Access Area Stop Type, 108	HailAndRide
Stop Point Type, 65	Airport Interchange Stop Type, 76	Change Attributes, 193
EscalatorFreeAccess	Stop Point Type, 54, 65	HailAndRide
Stop Accessibility, 121	GBCS	Bus Stop Classification, 112
Example	Example, 177	Hail & Ride Bus Stop Type, 108, 110
Airport, 181	Stop Area, 69	HailAndRideSection
Bus Interchange, 159	Stop Area Type, 54, 65, 128	NaPTAN Model, 52
Bus Station with Bays, 177	GAT	Hamlet
Bus Stop on One Side of a Road with No Landmark, 157	Element, 123	NPTG Settlement, 95
Flexible Zones, 163	Air Access Area Stop Type, 108	HAR
Hail & Ride, 161	Airport Interchange Stop Type, 76	
Metro Station, 172	Stop Point Type, 54, 65	
	Example, 177	
	Stop Area, 69	
	Stop Area Type, 54, 65, 128	

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

Bus Stop Point Type, 54	Stop naming, 70	Map-information
Example, 161	Language	NaPTAN, 15
Hail & Ride Bus Stop Type, 76, 108, 110	NPTG Schema, 90	Mapping
HeightOfAccessArea Element, 123	Languages Standards, 214	Plusbus Element, 98
Hierarchy CSV, 220	Latitude	Marked
Locality, 44	Location, 146	Bus Stop, 75
Stop Areas, 69	LiftFreeAccess	MarkedPoint
<b>HoistOperatingRadius</b> Accessibility, 123	Stop Accessibility, 121	Bus Stop Classification, 111
HolidayTypes Call Centres, 141	Localities.csv Table, 220	Marked Point Bus Stop Type, 108, 110
http Transport of Schemas, 26	Locality Main Point of Access, 49	MaximumLengthForShortNames
Hyphenation Locality Names, 46	NPTG, 31	Administrative Area, 93
Stop Names, 72	Locality Hierarchy CSV, 223	Stop point names, 104
IATA Airport Names, 75	LocalityAlternativeNames.csv Table, 220	<b>MET</b>
IataCode NaPTAN Integrity, 210	LocalityApplications CSV, 225	Example, 172
IataRef Element, 114	LocalityCentre Main Point of Access, 105	Metro Interchange Area Stop
<b>id</b> attribute, 87	NaPTAN Place element, 105	Type, 108
Id Attribute, 186	LocalityClassification NPTG Element, 95	Stop Point Type, 54, 65, 66
Identifiers NaPTAN stop point, 102	LocalityHierarchy.csv Table, 220	<b>Metro</b>
<i>Inactive</i> , 191 Status, 191	LocalityName NPTG Descriptor, 97	NaPTAN Model, 52
Stop Status, 119	Location AdjacentRegionPoints, 139	Off-Street Stop Classification, 116
Indicator Naming Styles, 72	Air Port, 114	Metro & Underground Station
NaPTAN descriptor element, 104	cableway Station, 118	Stop Points, 65, 66
<i>Presentation</i> , 77	Coach Station, 117	<b>Metro Entrance</b>
Stop Naming, 70	Coordinates, 75	Stop Type, 76
InfoUrl Stop Accessibility, 122	Data type, 145	Metro Platform
Integrity checks NapTAN, 206	Ferry Port, 114	Stop Type, 76
NaPTAN, 208	Flexible Zone, 113	Metro Station
NPTG, 206	Hail & Ride, 112	Example, 172
NPTG Discovery, 207	Identifiers, 87	Metro Station
Intellectual Property Rights NaPTAN & NPTG, 17	Metro Station, 116	Stop Area, 69
IpAddressRange TrustedServer, 138	NaPTAN Model, 48	Metropolitan PTE
ISO 639-1 reference, 213	NaPTAN Place element, 106	NptgLocality, 32
ITM Grid coordinates NaPTAN database, 75	NPTG Locality, 96	<b>MetroRef</b>
Journey Planner Stop Names, 77	NptgLocality, 32	Identifier, 116
Use Case, 28	Plusbus zones, 98	<b>MKD</b>
Journey Planning Suppliers, 15	Point of Interest, 132	Bus Stop Type, 54
JourneyWeb Adjacent Regions, 82	Rail Stations, 115	Marked Bus Stop Type, 76
NaPTAN, 15	Stop Area, 128	<b>Mobile device</b>
Reference, 212 Standards, 22	StopPoint, 75	NaptanCode, 26
Kizoom NaPTAN Development, 15	LocationSystem, 145	MobilityImpairedAccess
Landmark NaPTAN descriptor element, 104	Attribute, 186	Stop Accessibility, 120
	Discovery Schema, 134	<b>Mode</b>
	NaPTAN Schema, 100	NaPTAN Model, 52
	NPTG Schema, 90	<b>Model</b>
	Longitude Location, 146	NaPTAN, 48
	LongName Coach Station, 117	NaPTAN UML, 51
	LowFloor Accessibility, 123	NPTG Discovery, 82
	IusbusZones.csv Table, 220	NPTG UML, 31, 32, 34
	Main Point of Access, 49	modes of transport, 75
	Main points of access	<b>Modification</b>
	NaPTAN Model, 49	Attribute, 185, 186
	MainStopForNptgLocalityRef Change Attributes, 193	Change Attribute, 190, 194
	Map Coordinates, 76	Discovery Schema, 134
		NaPTAN Schema, 100
		NPTG Schema, 90
		Schema attribute, 189
		Versioning, 190
		<b>ModificationDateTime</b>
		Attribute, 185, 186
		Change Attribute, 190, 194
		Discovery Schema, 134
		NaPTAN Schema, 99
		NPTG Schema, 90
		Schema attribute, 189
		Versioning, 195
		<b>ModificationNumber</b>
		Schema attribute, 189
		Name

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

Administrative Area, 92	Data exchange, 27	NaPTAN element, 107, 131
Airport, 114	NaPTAN	Stop Naming, 70
CallCentre, 140	Data Model, 48	NPTG
Coach Station, 117	NaPTAN	Components, 14
Ferry Port, 114	Populating Guidance, 64	CSV, 25
Metro Station, 116	NaPTAN	CSV, 14
Network, 129, 130	Stop Areas, 69	CSV 1.2, 216
NPTG District, 97	NaPTAN	Database, 25
Plusbus Zone, 98	Stop Names, 69	Database, 14
Stop Area, 128	NaPTAN	Database Exchange. <i>See</i>
<b>TrunkLocality</b> , 144	Schema, 99	Integrity checks, 206
Venue, 132	NaPTAN	Introduction, 14
Name Changes	Element, 99	Model, 31
Release 2.x, 18	NaPTAN 1.1	Populating Guidance, 43
Names	CSV, 227	Purpose, 25
Alternative, 105	NaPTAN 2.1	Schema, 25, 90
Of Stops, 69	CSV, 228	Schemas, 14, 25
StopPoint Descriptors, 104	NaPTAN Database	Topographical Model, 31
Naming conventions	IPR, 17	UML Diagram, 34
NaPTAN & NPTG, 184	NaPTAN Prefix	NPTG & NaPTAN
Naming Conventions	Discovery Model, 82	Packages, 198, 200
Identifiers, 87	NaPTAN.xsd	NPTG & NaPTAN Schema Guide
NaPT_accessibility.xsd	Package, 202	Organisation, 16
Package, 202	Schema, 202	NPTG & NaPTAN XML Schema
NaPT_dates.xsd	NaptanCode	Guide
Package, 202	Identifiers, 26	Motivation, 15
NaPT_location.xsd	NaPTAN element, 102, 131	NPTG CSV
Package, 202	Prefix range, 93	1.2, 217
NaPT_modes.xsd	NaptanCoe	2.1, 218
Package, 202	Identifiers, 87	Discovery 2.1, 219
NaPT_operator.xsd	National	NPTG Database
Package, 202	Administrative Areas, 64	IPR, 17
NaPT_stopAccessibility.xsd	Element, 93	NPTG Discovery
package, 202	Stop Point Area, 108	CSV, 223
NaPT_stopAreas.xsd	National Coach	Integrity checks, 207
Package, 202	Code, 66	Model, 82
NaPT_stops.xsd	National Code, 65	Purpose, 25
Package, 202	national language	Schema, 134
NaPT_tariffZones.xsd	ISO639-1, 213	NPTG District
Package, 202	Rfc1766, 214	Choosing, 43
NaPT_utility.xsd	National Language support	NPTG Locality
mark, 202	NaPTAN, 18	Choosing, 43
NaPT_utilityTypes.xsd	National Languages, 204	CSV, 221
package, 202	National Public Transport	Geocoding, 47
NaPT_versioningAttributes.xsd	Gazetteer. <i>See</i> NPTG	Hierarchy, 44
mark, 202	NationalPublicTransportGazetteer	Naming, 44
NaPTAN	Schema, 90	Qualifier, 44
CSV, 14	NaturalLanguageString	NPTG Locality Name
Database, 14	Data Type, 204	Stop Names, 71, 77
Integrity checks, 208	NaturalLanguageStringStructure	NPTG Locality Names
Process, 14	Data type, 185	Abbreviations, 47
Schema, 14	NeTEX	Acronyms, 47
NaPTAN	Standards, 22	Apostrophes, 47
Components, 14	Network	Articles, 47
Introduction, 14	Element, 58	Brackets, 46
NaPTAN	NaPTAN element, 129	Hyphenation, 46
IPR, 17	NaPTAN Element, 100	NPTG.xsd
NaPTAN	NaPTAN Integrity, 208	Package, 202
Release 2.x changes, 18	NetworkCode	Schema, 202
NaPTAN	Network identifier, 129	NPTG_Discovery.xsd
Purpose, 25	New	Package, 202
NaPTAN	Modification, 190	Schema, 202
Identifiers, 25	Northing	NptgDiscovery
NaPTAN	Location, 146	element, 135
Database, 26	Note	Element, 134
NaPTAN	CallCentre Availability, 141	NptgDistrict
Schema, 26	Stop Accessibility, 122	Administrative Area, 93
NaPTAN	Stop Validity Status, 119	Change Attributes, 194
CSV, 26	Notes	Element, 97
NaPTAN	CallCentre, 140	

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

NPTG Model, 34	Example, 149	Position
NptgLocality, 32	ParentAreaRef	WGS 84, 213
Uniqueness, 207	Stop Area, 127	Precision
NptgDistrictCode	ParentLocalityRef	Attribute, 186
Element, 97	Change Attributes, 194	Principal Point
NptgDistrictRef	ParentLocalityRef	Stop Classification, 111
Element, 95, 97	Cyclic references, 207	PrivateCode
NptgLocality	ParentNptgLocalityRef	Identifiers, 87
Change Attributes, 194	Element, 95	NaPTAN element, 103, 131
Definition, 31	ParentRef	Stop Area, 127
Element, 95	NaPTAN Integrity, 210	PTAN
Hierarchy, 31	Passenger Transport Executives	See Stop point, 64
NaPTAN Integrity, 209	NaPTAN, 15	PTP
NaPTAN Model, 49	Pending, 191	Principal Timing Point, 110
Overview, 90	Status, 191	PublicTelephone
Primary, 75	Period	CallCentre, 140
Stop Areas, 49, 128	In Stop Names, 73	Qualifier
Stop Points, 105	Place	NPTG Locality, 44, 97
Topographical Model, 31	NaPTAN element, 103, 105	Stop Names, 71
Uniqueness, 207	NaPTAN Model, 48	QualifierName
NptgLocalityCode	Place Of Interest	NPTG Element, 97
<i>NPTG</i> Element, 95	NPTG Settlement, 95	Rail
NptgLocalityRef	Places of Interest	Off-Street Stop Classification, 115
<i>TrunkLocality</i> , 144	NPTG Locality, 44	Rail, 52
NptgLocalityRef	PlateCode	Rail station
Element, 97	NaPTAN element, 103	Stop areas, 69
Stop Point, 105	Platform	Rail Station
WebApplication, 137	Metro, 116, 118	Example, 166
NptgLocalityRef	NaPTAN Model, 52	Rail Station
NaPTAN Integrity, 209	Rail, 115	Stop Area, 69
NptgStopPointRef	PLT	Stop Point, 115
<i>TrunkLocality</i> , 145	Example, 172	Stop Points, 65
NptgStopPointRef	Stop Point Type, 54	Rail Station Entrance
WebApplication, 137	Stop Point Type Allocation, 66	Stop Type, 76
NumberOfSteps	Tram Metro Underground	Rail Stations
Element, 123	Platform Stop Type, 76	Names, 74
Off-street	Underground or Metro Platform	Ramp
Entrance points, 76	Stop Type, 108	Accessibility, 123
OffStreet	Plusbus zones	RampBearingCapacity
NaPTAN Model, 52	CSV, 223	Element, 123
Stop Classification, 108	PlusbusZone	Real Time Information System
Stop Point, 109	Element, 98	NaPTAN, 15
On-street	Identifiers, 87	Region
Stops, 76	NPTG Model, 34	AdjacentRegionPoints, 139
OnStreet	Overview, 90	Change Attributes, 194
NaPTAN Model, 52	Stop points, 107	Element, 92
Stop Classification, 108	Uniqueness, 207	NPTG Model, 34
Stop Point, 109	PlusbusZoneRef	Overview, 90
On-street Bus	NaPTAN element, 107	Uniqueness, 207
<i>MKD</i> , 76	NaPTAN Integrity, 209	RegionApplications
On-street Cluster Bus	Point of interest	CSV, 225
Stop Area, 69	NaPTAN, 15	RegionCode
On-street Pair	Point of Interest	Element, 92
Stop Area, 69	Element, 59	Uniqueness, 206
OperatorRef	Point of Interest	RegionRef
Stop Accessibility, 122	NPTG Locality, 44	<i>NPTG</i> Discovery, 208
OperatorRef	<i>PointOfInterest</i>	WebApplication, 137
Element, 117	NaPTAN element, 131	Regions
OS Grid	NaPTAN Integrity, 208	CSV, 220
Location, 106, 145	<i>PointOfInterest</i>	Discovery Model, 85
Location Schema, 90	Element, 59	Regions.csv
OS Grid coordinates	PointOfInterest Types	Table, 219
NaPTAN database, 75	NaPTAN Model, 60	Relationships
OS TOID	<i>PointOfInterestClassification</i>	Implementation, 186
Annotation, 87	NaPTAN PointOfInterest, 131	Revise
OSGR	Point of Interest Classification,	Modification, 190
Standards, 23	132	RevisionNumber
Packages	<i>PointX</i>	Attribute, 186
BPTG & NaPTAN, 198	NPTG Locality, 44	Change Attribute, 191, 195
Paired On-Street Bus	Port. <i>See Ferry</i>	

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

Discovery Schema, 134	In Stop Names, 74	NaPTAN Stop Point, 120
NaPTAN Schema, 100	SMS	StopAccessibilityGroup
NPTG Schema, 90	NaPTAN code, 102	Stop Accessibility, 120
Versioning, 191	NaptanCode, 26	
Rfc 1766	SourceLocalityType	StopArea
national language, 214	Element, 95	Air, 65
RLY	South East region	Change Attributes, 193
Stop Point Type, 54, 65	Journey Planner, 77	Ferry, 65
RPL	Spatial Location. <i>See</i> Location	Hierarchy, 69
Rail Platform Stop Type, 76	Staging	Location, 49
Stop Point Type, 54, 65	NPTG Discovery	NaPTAN element, 127
RSE	WebApplication, 136	NaPTAN Element, 100
Rail Entrance Stop Type, 108	Stance. <i>See</i> BCS	NaPTAN Integrity, 209
Station Entrance Stop Type, 76	Standards	NaPTAN Model, 48
Stop Point Type, 54, 65	Govtalk, 214	NptgLocality, 49, 128
Schema	ISO Time, 213	Rail, 65
Copyright, 17	TransXChange, 212	Stop points, 106
NaPTAN, 26	W3C schema, 213	Types, 54
NPTG, 25	WGS 84, 213	StopAreaCode
Versioning, 18	StartPoint	NaPTAN Integrity, 208
XML, 14, 15	Hair & Ride Section, 112	Stop Area identifier, 127
Schemas	StartTime	StopAreaParentRef
W3C reference, 213	Element, 125	NaPTAN Integrity, 209
SchemaVersion	StationName	StopAreaRef
Attribute, 186	Rail Stop Point, 115	Change Attributes, 193
Discovery Schema, 134	Status	NaPTAN Integrity, 209, 210
NaPTAN Schema, 100	Attribute, 186	StopAreaRef
NPTG Schema, 90	Change Attribute, 191, 195	NaPTAN element, 106
Schema attribute, 189	In Associations, 192	StopAreaType
Season	NaPTAN Integrity, 209	NaPTAN Model, 54
Call Centres, 141	Stop Point, 119	Stop Area Classification, 128
Separators	StepFreeAccess	StopAvailabilities
Stop Names, 79	Stop Accessibility, 121	CSV, 231
ServerCode	Stop area	StopAvailability
TrustedServer, 138	Choosing names, 68	NaPTAN element, 107
Service	Stop Area	NaPTAN Stop Point, 119
Discovery, 82	Airport Example, 181	Statuses, 191
ServicesAtStopAreNormallyAccessible	Bus Station Example, 177	StopClassification
Stop Accessibility, 122	Example Rail Station, 166	NaPTAN Stop Point, 101
Severity	Naming, 75	StopClassification
Errors, 206	Stop Area Types	NaPTAN Model, 48, 52
Shared	NaPTAN Model, 54	StopClassification
Taxi Rank Stop Type, 108	Stop Classification	NaPTAN element, 108
Shared Taxi	UML Diagram, 56	StopFurtherDetailsGroup
Stop Type, 76	Stop finder	NaPTAN Stop Point, 102
SharedTaxiRank	Stop names, 77	StopIdentifierGroup
On-Street Stop Classification,	Stop Name	NaPTAN Stop Point, 101
113	Maximum Length, 93	StopPoint element, 102
Shire	Stop Names	StopPoint
NptgLocality, 32	Capitalization, 72	TrunkLocality, 145
ShortCommonName	Hyphenation, 72	StopPoint
Maximum length, 93	Permitted Characters, 72	Model, 82
NaPTAN Integrity, 210	Presentation, 70	NaPTAN element, 100
Stop Point Descriptor, 104	Separators, 79	NaPTAN Model, 48
ShortName	Use of Abbreviations, 74	Types, 52
Network, 129, 130	Use of Ampersand, 74	StopPoint
ShortName	Use of spaces, 74	Change Attributes, 193
Administrative Area, 92	Stop Point	StopPoint
NPTG Locality, 97	Accessibility, 120	Change Attributes, 194
SiteAccessibility	Discovery, 82	StopPoint
NaPTAN Stop Point, 122	NaPTAN, 64	CSV, 229
SiteAccessibility	Types, 108	StopPointRef
NaPTAN element, 131	Validity Periods, 119	AdjacentRegionPoints, 139
SiteAccessibilityGroup	Stop Points	NaPTAN Integrity, 210
NaPTAN Stop Point, 121	Naming, 69	NPTG Discovery, 208
Stop Accessibility, 120	StopAccessibility	StopReferencesGroup
SiteDescriptionGroup	Change Attributes, 194	NaPTAN Stop Point, 101
NaPTAN Stop Point, 101, 131	Element, 57	StopType
Slash	NaPTAN element, 107	NaPTAN element, 108
	StopAccessibility	NaPTAN Model, 52
		Stop Areas, 54

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

StopValidity	Rail identifier, 115	Stop Point Type, 54
Change Attributes, 193		Taxi Rank Type, 108
StopValidity	NaPTAN Integrity, 210	Taxi Stop Type, 76
NaPTAN Stop Point, 119		<i>UkOS</i>
Versioning, 192, 193		NaPTAN Root, 90, 100
STR		UML Diagram
Guidance, 64		NaPTAN Model, 49
Shared Taxi Rank Stop Type,		Notations, 20
76		NPTG Discovery Model, 82
Stop Point Type, 54		NPTG Model, 34
Street		<b>Stop Classification</b> , 56
NaPTAN descriptor element,		Underground. <i>See</i> Metro, <i>See</i> Off-Street Stop Classification,
104		116
Stop Naming, 70		Underground Entrance
Suburb		Stop Type, 76
NaPTAN place element, 105		Underground Platform
NPTG Settlement, 95		Stop Type, 76
StopPoint		Unified Modelling Language
75		(UML). <i>See</i> UML
SuitableFor		Unique name
Element, 123		Locality, 97
Suspended		Uniqueness
Stop Validity Status, 119		NPTG, 206
TariffZone		Unitary Authority
Element, 58		NptgLocality, 32
NaPTAN element, 130		UnmarkedPoint
NaPTAN Integrity, 208		Bus Stop Classification, 112
Stop points, 107		Unmarked Point Bus Stop Type, 108, 110
TariffZone		Uppercase
Network, 129		NPTG Locality, 45
TariffZOne		URL
Change Attributes, 194		WebApplication Element, 136
<b>TariffZone</b> Code		Use Cases
Network identifier, 130		NaPTAN & NPTG, 27
TariffZoneRef		NaPTAN Compilation and
NaPTAN element, 107		Distribution, 27
NaPTAN Integrity, 209		NaPTAN Gathering and
TariffZoneRef		Distribution, 27
Change Attributes, 194		NaPTAN Place Finder, 28
Taxi		NaPTAN Stop Finder, 29
NaPTAN Model, 52		NaPTAN TransXChange use, 28
On-Street Stop Classification,		UsedBy
113		WebApplication, 137
Stop Point, 64		User interface
Stop Type, 76		Stop Names, 77
TaxiRank		Validation
Stop Type, 108		XML, 29
TelCountryCode		Variable Bus & Coach
Element, 144		Stop Type, 77
TelephoneContactStructure		VariableBay
Structure, 144		Bus & Coach, 117
TelExtensionNumber		Stop Type, 108
Element, 144		VenueClassification
TelNationalNumber		NaPTAN Model, 49
Element, 144		VenueRef
Time Formats		Element, 132
ISO 8601, 213		Version
Standards, 213		NaPTAN Schema, 100
Time Info Point		Schema, 90
Stop Classification, 111		WebApplication Element, 136
Timeband		Version numbering, 188
Element, 125		Versioning
Times		NaPTAN & NPTG, 18
CallCentre Availability, 141		Revision number, 90
Timing point		Versions
Bus Stop, 75		Overview, 188
TimingStatus		Vertical bar
Bus & Coach point, 117		
Stop Point, 110		
TIPLOC		
NaPTAN Codes, 66		

# Department for Transport

## NPTG and NaPTAN Schema Guide

### Annex

### Appendices

In Stop Names, 74	Change Attributes, 194	World Geodetic Standard. <i>See</i> WGS
Village	WebApplicationRegionRef	84
NPTG Settlement, 95	Change Attributes, 194	WSAtkins
W3C	WebApplications	NaPTAN development, 15
reference, 213	Discovery Model, 82	XML
Schemas, 15	WebApplicationStopPointRef	Correctness, 29
Web Services	Change Attributes, 194	Naming Conventions, 20
Discovery Model, 82	Welsh	Notations, 21
WebAppCapabilities	NaPTAN, 204	Validation, 29
CSV, 225	WGS 84	Well-formedness, 29
WebApplication	Location, 75, 145	XML.xsd
Change Attributes, 194	Location System, 90	Package, 202
Element, 135	NaPTAN, 18	xml:lang
NPTG Discovery Element, 136	NaPTAN Root, 100	Attribute, 186
Uniqueness, 207	NPTG Discovery Root, 134	xml:lang:
WebApplicationAdminAreaRef	reference, 213	NaPTAN Schema, 100
Change Attributes, 194	Standards, 23	NPTG Schema, 90
WebApplicationClassification	WheelchairAccess	xsd
NPTG Discovery Element, 136	Stop Accessibility, 121	files, 202
WebApplicationCode	WidthOfAccessArea	NaPTAN, 15
NPTG Discovery Element, 136	Element, 123	
WebApplicationLocalityRef		